



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Kings

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 0.12

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 2.1.11

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	11
1 Kings	11
Introduction to 1 Kings	12
1 Kings 1	14
1 Kings 2	68
1 Kings 3	116
1 Kings 4	146
1 Kings 5	181
1 Kings 6	200
1 Kings 7	239
1 Kings 8	291
1 Kings 9	358
1 Kings 10	387
1 Kings 11	417
1 Kings 12	461
1 Kings 13	496
1 Kings 14	532
1 Kings 15	564
1 Kings 16	599
1 Kings 17	635
1 Kings 18	660
1 Kings 19	707
1 Kings 20	729
1 Kings 21	773
1 Kings 22	803
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	857
Abstract Nouns	858
Active or Passive	860
Apostrophe	863
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	865
Background Information	868
Biblical Distance	871
Biblical Volume	874
Biblical Weight	878
Direct and Indirect Quotations	880
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding	882
Double Negatives	885
Doublet	887
Ellipsis	889
Euphemism	891
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	893
First, Second or Third Person	895
Forms of You	897

Generic Noun Phrases	898
Hebrew Months	900
Hendiadys	903
How to Translate Names	906
Hyperbole	910
Hypothetical Situations	914
Idiom	917
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	919
Introduction of a New Event	921
Litotes	924
Merism	926
Metaphor	928
Metonymy	934
Nominal Adjectives	936
Numbers	938
Ordinal Numbers	941
Parallelism	943
Personification	946
Pronouns	948
Proverbs	950
Reflexive Pronouns	952
Rhetorical Question	955
Simile	958
Symbolic Action	961
Synecdoche	963
Translate Unknowns	965
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	968
abomination, abominable	969
Abraham, Abram	970
adversary, enemy	971
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	972
afflict, affliction, distress	973
alien, foreign, foreigner	974
altar	975
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...	976
amen, truly	977
Ammon, Ammonite	978
Amorite	979
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	980
appoint, appointed	982
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	983
Bashan	984
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	985
Benjamin, Benjamite	987
bless, blessed, blessing	988
blood	990

Boaz	991
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	992
bread	993
bronze	994
brother	995
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	996
burnt offering, offering by fire	997
bury, buried, burial	998
call, call out	999
camel	1001
Canaan, Canaanite	1002
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	1003
cedar, cedarwood	1004
chariot, charioteers	1005
chief	1006
children, child, offspring	1007
column, pillar	1009
command, commandment	1010
confess, confession	1011
confirm, confirmation, legal	1012
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1013
consume, devour	1014
covenant	1015
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1017
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1018
cry, cry out, outcry	1019
curse, cursed, cursing	1020
cut off	1021
David	1022
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions	1023
declare, proclaim, announce	1024
decree, decreed	1025
delight	1026
descend, descendant	1027
desert, wilderness	1028
devour	1029
die, dead, deadly, death,	1030
dominion	1032
donkey, mule	1033
dream	1034
drunk, drunkard	1035
earth, earthen, earthly	1036
Egypt, Egyptian	1037
elder, older, old	1038
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1039
Ephrath, Ephrathah	1040

evil, wicked, unpleasant	1041
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1043
face, facial	1044
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	1045
famine	1047
fast, fasting	1048
favor, favorable, favoritism	1049
fear, afraid, dread	1050
feast, feasting	1051
fig	1052
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1053
firstborn	1054
flesh	1055
flock, herd	1056
fool, foolish, folly	1057
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	1058
forsake, forsaken, leave	1060
found, founder, foundation	1061
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1062
Gibeon, Gibeonite	1063
Gilead, Gileadite	1064
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	1065
glory, glorious, glorify	1066
God	1068
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1070
gold, golden	1072
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	1073
govern, government, governor, proconsul	1075
grace, gracious	1076
grain offering	1077
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1078
hand	1079
head	1081
heart	1082
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1083
Hittite	1084
Hivite	1085
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1086
horse, warhorse, horseback	1088
horseman	1089
house	1090
house of God, Yahweh's house	1091
household	1092
inherit, inheritance, heir	1093
iniquity	1094
innocent	1095

Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1096
Israel, Israelites	1097
Jebus, Jebusite	1099
Jehoshaphat	1100
Jericho	1101
Jerusalem	1102
Jesse	1104
Jordan River, Jordan	1105
Joseph (OT)	1106
Joshua	1107
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1108
Judah	1110
Judea	1111
judge, judgment	1112
king, kingdom, kingship	1114
kingdom	1116
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1118
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1119
Lebanon	1121
Levi, Levite, Levitical	1122
life, live, living, alive	1123
lion, lioness	1125
lord, Lord, master, sir	1126
love, beloved	1128
mercy, merciful	1130
messenger	1132
might, mighty, mighty works	1133
miracle, wonder, sign	1134
Mizpah	1136
Moab, Moabite	1137
Moses	1138
name	1139
nation	1140
new moon	1141
noble, nobleman, royal official	1142
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1143
olive	1144
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor	1145
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1146
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1147
people, people group,	1148
Perizzite	1150
Philistines	1151
pomegranate	1152
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	1153
pray, prayer	1154

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1155
priest, priesthood	1157
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1159
promise, promised	1160
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1161
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1163
prostrate, worship	1164
proud, pride, prideful	1165
province, provincial	1166
Ramah	1167
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1168
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1169
reign, rule	1170
repent, repentance	1171
rest, rested, restless	1172
restore, restoration	1173
return	1174
reward, prize, deserve,	1175
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	1176
sackcloth	1178
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1179
Samaria, Samaritan	1181
save, saved, safe, salvation	1182
scribe	1184
seal, sealed, unsealed	1185
seed, semen	1186
seek, search, look for	1187
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1188
shield	1190
silver	1191
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1192
slaughter, slaughtered	1194
Solomon	1195
son	1196
spirit, spiritual	1198
statute	1200
storehouse	1201
strength, strengthen, strong	1202
sword, swordsmen	1204
Tamar	1205
temple	1206
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1208
throne, enthroned	1210
to minister, ministry	1211
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1212
tribute, contribution, fined	1213

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	1214
true, truth	1215
trumpet, trumpeters	1217
Tyre, Tyrians	1218
understand, understanding, thinking	1219
vine	1220
vineyard	1221
virgin, virginity	1222
voice	1223
walk, walked	1224
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1225
wheat	1226
will of God	1227
wise men, advisor	1228
wise, wisdom	1229
Yahweh	1230
zeal, zealous	1232
Zion, Mount Zion	1233
Contributors	1234
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1234
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1240
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1241
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1241
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1242



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Kings

Introduction to 1 Kings

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 1 Kings

1. David dies and Solomon begins to reign (1:1-2:46)
2. Solomon reigns (3:1-11:43)
3. Solomon becomes wise and wealthy (3:1-4:43)
4. Solomon's temple (5:1-8:66)
5. Rise and fall of Solomon (9:1-11:43)
6. The kingdom divides (12:1-14:31)
7. Rehoboam succeeds Solomon (12:1-24)
8. Jeroboam rules the northern kingdom of Israel (12:25-33)
9. Ahijah prophesies against Jeroboam (13:1-14:20)
10. Rehoboam's end (14:21-31)
11. Kings and events in Israel and Judah (15:1-22:53)
12. Abijah and Asa in Judah (15:1-24)
13. Nadab in Israel (15:25-32)
14. Baasha in Israel (15:33-16:7)
15. Elah in Israel (16:8-14)
16. Zimri in Israel (16:15-22)
17. Omri in Israel (16:23-28)
18. Ahab in Israel (16:29-22:40)
19. Jehoshaphat in Judah (22:41-50)
20. Ahaziah in Israel (22:51-53)

What are the Books of 1 and 2 Kings about?

These books are about what happened to the people of Israel, from the time of King Solomon to the time both the northern and southern kingdoms were destroyed. These books describe how Israel split into two kingdoms after Solomon died. It also tells about all the kings that ruled over each kingdom after Solomon died.

In the southern kingdom, some kings did what Yahweh judged to be right. For example, King Josiah repaired the temple and reformed the worship of Yahweh. He responded to the high priest finding a copy of the Law of Yahweh in Jerusalem (2 Kings 22-23). However, all of the kings of the northern kingdom were wicked.

The Assyrians destroyed the northern kingdom in 722 B.C. The Babylonians destroyed the southern kingdom in 586 B.C.

How should the title of this book be translated?

The Books of 1 and 2 Kings were originally one book in Hebrew. They were separated into two books when translated into Greek. Translators might choose more meaningful titles such as "The First Book about the Kings" and "The Second Book about the Kings." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the purpose of 1 and 2 Kings?

These books were probably finished during the exile, after the Babylonians had destroyed the temple. They show how being faithful to Yahweh results in his blessing and prospering his people. Worshipping idols and not being faithful result in their being punished and destroyed.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why do the Books of 1 and 2 Kings refer to someone being addressed indirectly?

In the Bible, people often referred to themselves as “your servant” when speaking to anyone in a superior position to themselves. Indirectly addressing people in this way was intended to honor the one addressed. English sometimes uses the address “sir” in this way. But a translator should use whatever expressions that are natural in the project language in order to honor someone in a superior position.

What does the king “did what was right (or evil) in the eyes of Yahweh” mean?

The writer repeats this kind of expression throughout the Books of 1 and 2 Kings. Here “in the eyes of Yahweh” represents what Yahweh thinks about someone. If a king was faithful and obeyed the covenant, he did what was right according to Yahweh. If he was not faithful and disobeyed the covenant, he did what was evil according to Yahweh.

What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed his name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#))

Can I translate the Book of 1 Kings before I translate the Books of 1 and 2 Samuel?

The Books of 1 and 2 Samuel should be translated before 1 Kings, since 1 Kings continues from where 2 Samuel ends.

1 Kings 1

1 Kings 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

1 Kings is a continuation of 2 Samuel.

This chapter records the beginning of the reign of Solomon (chapters 1-11) after the death of David.

Special concepts in this chapter

== The next king == David did not announce who was to succeed him. Because of this, there was fighting between David's sons over who should be king. Adonijah invited guests to a banquet and declared himself king. Then those favoring Solomon told David and he declared Solomon the new king.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

Several times in this chapter, the people use the idiom "sit on the throne" to mean "be king." Solomon assures Adonijah that if he behaves himself "not a hair of his will fall to the earth," meaning "he will not be harmed." (See: [Idiom](#))

1 Kings 1:1

covered him with blankets

They put many blankets on King David to try to keep him warm.

old and advanced in years

“very old.” The two phrases are similar in meaning and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#).)

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Now King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

¹ [Now King David](#) was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him.

UST

¹ When [King David](#) was very old, even though his servants put many blankets on top of him at night, he was unable to keep warm.

1 Kings 1:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- the king
- They are searching for
- a virgin
- his servants
- a young woman

Translation Words - UST

- Majesty
- allow us
- Your
- to search for
- virgin
- So they
- a young

ULT

² So [his servants](#) said to him, "[They are searching for a young woman, a virgin,](#) for my lord [the king](#), and she will stand before [the king](#). Thus she may be a caregiver for him, and she will lie in your bosom so that it will be warm for my master [the king](#)."

UST

² [So they](#) said to him, "[Your Majesty, allow us to search for a young virgin](#) who can stay with you and take care of you. She can sleep close to you and make you warm."

1 Kings 1:3

So they searched

“So the king’s servants searched”

within all the borders of Israel

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “all over the land of Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Abishag

This is a woman’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shunammite

a person from the city of Shunem (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the king

“King David”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [to the king](#)
- [They searched for](#)
- [a...young woman](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [king](#)
- [The king gave them permission, so they searched](#)
- [young woman](#)

ULT

³ [They searched for](#) a beautiful [young woman](#) within all the territory of [Israel](#). They found Abishag the Shunammite and they brought her [to the king](#).

UST

³ [The king gave them permission, so they searched](#) throughout [Israel](#) for a beautiful [young woman](#). They found a woman named Abishag, from the town of Shunem, and brought her to the [king](#).

1 Kings 1:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the king](#)
- [but the king](#)
- [did...know her](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king](#)
- [but the king](#)
- [sexual relations](#)

ULT

⁴ The girl was very, exceptionally, beautiful. She became a caregiver [for the king](#) and she served him, [but the king](#) did not [know her](#).

UST

⁴ She was truly very beautiful. She took care of the [king](#), [but the king](#) did not have [sexual relations](#) with her.

1 Kings 1:5

Adonijah son of Haggith

Haggith was a wife of David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

exalted himself

“began to boast”

horsemen

These are men who drive chariots pulled by horses.

fifty men to run ahead of him

These men would go ahead of the chariots to clear the way for them and protect them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [along with teams of horses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [horseman](#)

ULT

⁵ Then Adonijah, [the son of](#) Haggith, exalted himself, saying, “I, myself, will be king.” So he prepared for himself a chariot [along with teams of horses](#) and fifty men to run in front of him.

UST

⁵⁻⁶ After Absalom died, David’s oldest son was Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith. He was a very handsome man. But David had never rebuked him about anything he did. After Absalom died, he thought that he would become king. So he started to boast, saying, “I will become king now.” Then he provided for himself some chariots, and men to drive them, and horses to pull them, and fifty men to run as his bodyguards in front of those chariots wherever he went.

1 Kings 1:6

had never troubled him, saying

“had never troubled him. He had never even asked him” or “had never wanted to make him angry, so he never even asked him”

Why have you done this or that?

This is a rhetorical question that a father would ask to discipline his son. Alternate translation: “You should know that what you have done is wrong.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

born next after Absalom

David was the father of both Absalom and Adonijah, but they had different mothers. Absalom was born, then Adonijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- was...good-looking in
- His father

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁶ [His father](#) did not rebuke him in his days, saying, “Why have you done so?” Also, he was very [good-looking in](#) appearance. She had borne him after Absalom.

UST

⁵⁻⁶ After Absalom died, David's oldest son was Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith. He was a very handsome man. But David had never rebuked him about anything he did. After Absalom died, he thought that he would become king. So he started to boast, saying, “I will become king now.” Then he provided for himself some chariots, and men to drive them, and horses to pull them, and fifty men to run as his bodyguards in front of those chariots wherever he went.

1 Kings 1:7

He conferred with Joab

“Adonijah discussed his plans with Joab”

Joab...Zeruiah...Abiathar...Adonijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

followed Adonijah and helped him

“supported and helped Adonijah” or “promised to support and help Adonijah”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the priest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab, David's army commander](#)
- [the priest](#)

ULT

⁷ His discussions were with Joab, [the son of](#) Zeruiah, and with Abiathar, [the priest](#). They helped, following after Adonijah.

UST

⁷ One day he conferred with [Joab](#), [David's army commander](#), and Abiathar [the priest](#), and they promised to help Adonijah.

1 Kings 1:8

Zadok...Benaiah...Jehoiada...Nathan...Shimei...Rei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [the priest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benaiah](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [who was also a priest](#)

ULT

⁸ But Zadok [the priest](#), Benaiah, [the son of](#) Jehoiada, Nathan [the prophet](#), Shimei, Rei, and the mighty men who were for David were not with Adonijah.

UST

⁸ But other important people refused to help him. These included Zadok, [who was also a priest](#), [Benaiah](#) who had supervised David's bodyguards, Nathan [the prophet](#), Shimei and Rei, and David's most capable soldiers.

1 Kings 1:9

fattened calves

“calves that were given plenty of food so that they would be fat” or “young cows that were specially prepared for sacrifice”

stone of Zoheleth

This is a rocky area near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

En Rogel

This was the name of a spring where people got water. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all his brothers...all the men

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

all his brothers, the king's sons

These two phrases refer to the same people.

men of Judah, the king's servants

These two phrases refer to the same people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [his brothers](#)
- [sons of the](#)
- [the...Judah](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [the...king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the servants of](#)
- [He invited](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brothers](#)
- [David's other sons, to come](#)
- [from Judah](#)
- [some sheep](#)
- [of the king's](#)
- [King](#)
- [officials](#)
- [He invited](#)

ULT

⁹ Adonijah sacrificed [sheep](#), oxen, and fattened steer by the stone of Zoheleth, which is beside En Rogel. [He invited](#) all of [his brothers](#), the [sons of the king](#), and all the men of [Judah](#), [the servants of the king](#).

UST

⁹ One day Adonijah went to the stone of Zoheleth near En Rogel, which is near Jerusalem, to sacrifice [some sheep](#) and oxen and fattened cattle. [He invited](#) most of his [brothers](#), [King David's other sons, to come](#). He also invited all [of the king's officials from Judah](#) to come to the celebration.

1 Kings 1:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- He did...invite
- his brother
- the prophet
- or...Solomon
- the mighty men

Translation Words - UST

- invite
- or his younger brother
- Nathan
- Solomon
- or the king's most capable soldiers

ULT

¹⁰ [He did](#) not [invite](#) Nathan [the prophet](#), Benaiah, [the mighty men](#), [or his brother Solomon](#).

UST

¹⁰ But he did not [invite](#) [Nathan](#), Benaiah, [or the king's most capable soldiers](#), [or his younger brother Solomon](#).

1 Kings 1:11

Have you not heard...it?

The purpose of this question is to introduce the information that Nathan wants to tell Bathsheba. Alternate translation: “You do not seem to have heard...it.” or “Have you heard...it?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that Adonijah son of Haggith has become king

“that Haggith’s son Adonijah is trying to become king”

Haggith

Adonijah’s mother and a wife of David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [does...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Haggith’s son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon’s](#)
- [does...know about it](#)

ULT

11 Then Nathan said to Bathsheba the mother of [Solomon](#), saying, “Have you not heard that Adonijah [the son of](#) Haggith has become king, and [David](#) our master does not [know](#)?”

UST

11 Nathan found out what they were doing, so he went to [Solomon’s](#) mother Bathsheba and asked her, “Have you not heard [that Haggith’s son](#) Adonijah is making himself king? And King [David](#) does not [know about it](#)!”

1 Kings 1:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- your soul
- the soul of
- your son
- Solomon
- please let me offer you
- come

Translation Words - UST

- to save yourself
- from being killed
- and your son
- Solomon
- to tell
- you want

ULT

¹² Now therefore, [come](#), [please let me offer you](#) counsel! Save [your soul](#) and [the soul of your son Solomon](#)!

UST

¹² So if [you want to save yourself and your son Solomon from being killed](#), allow me [to tell](#) you what you should do.

1 Kings 1:13

General Information:

The prophet Nathan continues to speak to Bathsheba.

did you not swear to your servant...throne?

The purpose of this question was to remind David of what he had promised Bathsheba. Alternate translation: "you swore to your servant...throne." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to your servant

Bathsheba speaks to David as if she were someone else to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "to me, your servant" (See: [Pronouns](#))

he will sit on my throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. Alternate translation: "he will be king just as I was" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Why then is Adonijah reigning?

Bathsheba was to use a question so David would pay attention. Alternate translation: "So then, Adonijah should not be reigning." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- my lord
- your son
- David
- Solomon
- my throne
- King
- the king
- Go
- Have...sworn

Translation Words - UST

- Your Majesty
- that my son
- David
- Solomon
- your throne
- King
- Your Majesty
- Go
- promised

ULT

¹³ [Go](#), enter in before [King David](#), and you should say to him, 'Have you not, [my lord the king](#), [sworn](#) to your maidservant, saying, "Surely [Solomon your son](#) will reign as king after me, and he will sit on [my throne](#)?"' So why has Adonijah become king?'

UST

¹³ [Go](#) right away to [King David](#). Say to him, '[Your Majesty](#), you solemnly [promised](#) me [that my son Solomon](#) would become the king after you die and that he would sit on [your throne](#) and rule. So why are people saying that Adonijah is now king?'

1 Kings 1:14

confirm your words

“tell him that what you have said is true”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)

ULT

14 Look, while you are yet speaking there with [the king](#), I will come in after you and I will confirm your words.”

UST

14 Then, Bathsheba, while you are still talking to [the king](#), I will come in and tell him that what you are saying to him about Adonijah is true.”

1 Kings 1:15

the king's room

"the room in which the king slept"

Abishag the Shunammite

This is the young virgin that King David's servants had brought to care for him. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Now the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [was serving](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He](#)
- [his](#)
- [king](#)
- [was taking care of him](#)

ULT

¹⁵ So Bathsheba went to [the king](#) in the bed chamber. [Now the king](#) was very old, and Abishag the Shunammite [was serving the king](#).

UST

¹⁵ So Bathsheba went to see the [king](#) in [his](#) bedroom. [He](#) was very old, and Abishag [was taking care of him](#).

1 Kings 1:16

bowed and prostrated herself before the king

"bowed close to the ground in front of the king"

What do you desire?

"What can I do for you?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [and she prostrated herself](#)
- [before...the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [bowed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bowed very low](#)
- [and the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in front of](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Bathsheba [bowed and she prostrated herself before the king](#). Then [the king](#) said, "What concerns you?"

UST

¹⁶ Bathsheba [bowed very low in front of the king, and the king](#) asked her, "What do you want?"

1 Kings 1:17

you swore to

The form of “you” here is emphatic. Alternate translation: “you yourself swore to”

your servant

Bathsheba speaks as if she were another person to show David that she respects him. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “me, your servant”

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

he shall sit on my throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “he will be king just as I was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [My master](#)
- [your son](#)
- [your God](#)
- [by Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [my throne](#)
- [have sworn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Your Majesty](#)
- [that my son](#)
- [our God was listening](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [your throne](#)
- [promised...knowing that](#)

ULT

17 She said to him, “[My master](#), you [have sworn](#) to your maidservant [by Yahweh your God](#), saying, ‘Surely [Solomon your son](#) will become king after me, and he will sit on [my throne](#).’

UST

17 She replied, “[Your Majesty](#), you solemnly [promised](#) me, [knowing that Yahweh our God was listening](#), [that my son Solomon](#) would become king after you die and that he would sit on [your throne](#) and rule.

1 Kings 1:18

General Information:

Bathsheba continues speaking to King David.

see

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and you](#)
- [king](#)
- [do...know anything about it](#)

ULT

18 But now, look, Adonijah is king, yet now, [my master the king](#), you do not [know](#).

UST

18 But now, Adonijah has made himself [king](#), [and you](#) do not [know anything about it](#).

1 Kings 1:19

oxen, fattened calves, and sheep in abundance

"many oxen, fattened calves, and sheep"

Translation Words - ULT

- he has...invited
- the sons of
- the priest
- and sheep
- the king
- the captain of
- your servant
- and has invited

Translation Words - UST

- he did...invite
- sons
- the priest
- and sheep
- He
- the commander of your army
- your son
- and he has invited

ULT

19 He has sacrificed oxen, fattened calves, [and sheep](#) in abundance, [and has invited](#) all [the sons of the king](#), Abiathar [the priest](#), and Joab [the captain of](#) the army, but [he has](#) not [invited](#) Solomon [your servant](#).

UST

19 He has sacrificed a lot of oxen and fattened cattle [and sheep](#), [and he has invited](#) all of your other [sons](#) to the celebration. [He](#) has also invited Abiathar [the priest](#) and Joab [the commander of your army](#), but [he did](#) not [invite your son](#) Solomon.

1 Kings 1:20

General Information:

Bathsheba continues to speak to King David.

the eyes of all Israel are on you, waiting

Here “eyes” refers to the people. Here “the eyes...are on you” is an idiom that means the people are waiting expectantly. Alternate translation: “all the people of Israel are waiting expectantly” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

will sit on the throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “will be king”

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Your Majesty](#)
- [you are no longer with us](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [become](#)
- [is the one who will](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁰ As for you, [my master the king](#), the eyes of all [Israel](#) are on you, to tell them who will sit on [the throne of my master the king](#) after him.

UST

²⁰ [Your Majesty](#), all the people of [Israel](#) are expecting you to tell them who [is the one who will become king](#) after [you are no longer with us](#).

1 Kings 1:21

when my master the king sleeps with his fathers

Bathsheba speaks to King David as if she were speaking about him to show that she respects him. Alternate translation: “when you sleep with your fathers” (See: [Pronouns](#))

sleeps with his fathers

This is a polite way of saying “dies.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

I and my son Solomon will be regarded as criminals

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the new king will regard my son Solomon and me as criminals” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [and my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you](#)
- [that my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [what will happen is that after](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²¹ Otherwise it will happen, when [my master the king](#) sleeps with [his fathers](#), that I [and my son Solomon](#) will be regarded as criminals.”

UST

²¹ If you do not do that, [what will happen is that after you](#) die people will consider [that my son Solomon](#) and I are rebelling, and they will execute us because we did not help Adonijah to become [king](#).”

1 Kings 1:22

General Information:

Nathan the prophet speaks to King David.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the prophet](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Nathan](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²² While she was still speaking with [the king](#), Nathan [the prophet](#) came in.

UST

²² While she was still talking to [the king](#), [Nathan](#) came to the palace.

1 Kings 1:23

prostrated himself

"bowed very low"

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophet
- he prostrated himself
- the king
- the king
- before the king
- to the ground

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet
- and knelt down
- The king's servants
- the king
- his
- the ground

ULT

²³ They told [the king](#) saying, "Behold, Nathan [the prophet](#)." When he came in before [the king](#), [he prostrated himself before the king](#) with his nose [to the ground](#).

UST

²³ [The king's servants](#) told David, "Nathan [the prophet](#) has come." So Bathsheba left, and Nathan went into where [the king](#) was [and knelt down](#), with [his](#) face on [the ground](#).

1 Kings 1:24

General Information:

Nathan the prophet continues to speak to King David.

have you said, 'Adonijah will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne?'

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "have you said that Adonijah will reign after you, and he will sit on your throne?" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

he will sit on my throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: "he will be king just as I was"

Translation Words - ULT

- [My master](#)
- [my throne](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Your Majesty](#)
- [will](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁴ Nathan said, "[My master the king](#), have you said, 'Adonijah will reign after me, and he will sit on [my throne](#)'?"

UST

²⁴ Then Nathan said, "[Your Majesty](#), have you declared that Adonijah [will](#) become [king](#) after you?"

1 Kings 1:25

eating and drinking before him

Adonijah probably sat at a table where he could watch all those he had invited as they ate and drank. The main idea is that the people Nathan named were with Adonijah and they were celebrating together. Alternate translation: “eating and drinking with him” or “eating and drinking where he can see them” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Long live
- the sons of
- the priest
- they are eating
- and sheep
- the king
- King
- and has invited

Translation Words - UST

- We hope that...will live a long time
- sons
- the priest
- eating
- and sheep
- he
- King Adonijah
- And he has invited

ULT

²⁵ For he has gone down today and sacrificed oxen, fatted calves, [and sheep](#) in abundance, [and has invited](#) all [the sons of the king](#), the captains of the army, and Abiathar [the priest](#). Behold, [they are eating](#) and drinking before him, and saying, ‘[Long live King Adonijah!](#)’

UST

²⁵ I say that because today [he](#) has gone down to En Rogel and has sacrificed a lot of oxen, fattened cattle, [and sheep](#). [And he has invited](#) all of your other [sons](#), Joab the army commander, and Abiathar [the priest](#). They are all [eating](#) and drinking with him and saying, ‘[We hope that King Adonijah will live a long time!](#)’

1 Kings 1:26

General Information:

Nathan the prophet continues to speak to King David.

Translation Words - ULT

- he has...invited us
- son of
- the priest
- your servant
- your servant

Translation Words - UST

- invite
- But he did...or Benaiah
- the priest
- me
- or Solomon

ULT

²⁶ But as for me, [your servant](#), Zadok [the priest](#), Benaiah [son of](#) Jehoiada, and [your servant](#) Solomon, [he has](#) not [invited us](#).

UST

²⁶ [But he did](#) not [invite me](#) or Zadok [the priest or Benaiah or Solomon](#).

1 Kings 1:27

Has my master the king done this without telling us, your servants, who should sit on the throne after him?

Nathan refers to David in the third person. This is a way of showing respect to the king. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: "Have you, my master the king, done this without telling us, your servants, who should sit on the throne after you?" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

who should sit on the throne

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: "who would be king after him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [my lord](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [your servants](#)
- [informing us](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Did you say that](#)
- [you](#)
- [become](#)
- [king](#)
- [king](#)
- [your other officials](#)
- [you want to](#)

ULT

²⁷ Has [my master the king](#) done this thing without [informing us](#), [your servants](#), who should sit on [the throne of my lord the king](#) after him?"

UST

²⁷ [Did you say that](#) they should do this without telling [your other officials](#) who [you want to become king](#) after [you](#) are no longer the [king](#)?"

1 Kings 1:28

General Information:

King David makes a promise to Bathsheba.

came into the king's presence

"came before the king" or "came back to the king"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to me](#)
- [David](#)
- [King](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [here](#)
- [David](#)
- [Then King](#)
- [So someone went and told her, and she came in](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁸ Then [King David](#) answered and said, "Call Bathsheba back [to me](#)." She came into the presence of [the king](#) and stood before [the king](#).

UST

²⁸ [Then King David](#) said, "Tell Bathsheba to come in [here](#) again." [So someone went and told her, and she came in](#) and stood in front of the [king](#).

1 Kings 1:29

made an oath

“made a solemn promise”

Translation Words - ULT

- As...lives
- my life
- has redeemed
- Yahweh
- trouble
- The king
- made an oath

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

²⁹ [The king made an oath](#) and said, “As [Yahweh lives](#), who [has redeemed my life](#) out of all [trouble](#),

UST

²⁹⁻³⁰ Then the king said, “Yahweh has rescued me from all my troubles. I promised you, with Yahweh the God whom we Israelites worship listening, that your son Solomon would be king after I am no longer the king. Today, as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly declare that I will do what I promised.”

1 Kings 1:30

he will sit on my throne in my place

Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “he will take my place and be king just as I was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your son](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [by Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [my throne](#)
- [I vowed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

ULT

30 as indeed [I vowed](#) to you [by Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), saying, ‘[Solomon your son](#) will reign after me, and he will sit on [my throne](#) in my place,’ for surely I will do this today.”

UST

29-30 Then the king said, “Yahweh has rescued me from all my troubles. I promised you, with Yahweh the God whom we Israelites worship listening, that your son Solomon would be king after I am no longer the king. Today, as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly declare that I will do what I promised.”

1 Kings 1:31

May my master King David live forever

Bathsheba knew David would not live forever; this is a way of saying that he is a good king. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- May...live
- my master
- and prostrated herself
- David
- before the king
- King
- to the ground
- Then...bowed

Translation Words - UST

- I hope you will live
- Your
- knelt down with her face on
- Your
- Majesty
- Your
- the ground
- Bathsheba

ULT

³¹ Then Bathsheba [bowed](#) with her nose [to the ground and prostrated herself before the king](#) and said, "May [my master King David live](#) forever!"

UST

³¹ [Bathsheba knelt down with her face on the ground](#) and said, "Your [Majesty, I hope you will live](#) forever!"

1 Kings 1:32

General Information:

King David anoints Solomon king.

Translation Words - ULT

- to me
- son of
- the prophet
- the priest
- David
- King
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- to a servant
- and Benaiah
- the prophet
- the priest
- David
- Then King
- When they came in

ULT

³² [King David](#) said, "Call [to me](#) Zadok [the priest](#), Nathan [the prophet](#), and Benaiah [son of](#) Jehoiada." So they came before [the king](#).

UST

³² [Then King David](#) said [to a servant](#), "Summon Zadok [the priest](#), Nathan [the prophet](#), [and Benaiah](#)." So a servant went and summoned them. [When they came in](#),

1 Kings 1:33

the servants of your master

David speaks of himself as if he were speaking of someone else so Zadok, Nathan, and Benaiah would remember that David is still king. Alternate translation: “my servants” (See: [Pronouns](#))

Gihon

This is the name of a water spring. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your master](#)
- [my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [The king](#)
- [and have...ride](#)
- [the servants of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my](#)
- [my son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [he](#)
- [Put](#)
- [officials](#)

ULT

³³ [The king](#) said to them, “Take with you [the servants of your master](#), [and have Solomon my son ride](#) on my own mule and bring him down to Gihon.

UST

³³ [he](#) said to them, “[Put my son Solomon](#) on my mule. Take him with [my officials](#) down to the spring at Gihon.

1 Kings 1:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Long live
- the prophet
- Israel
- the priest
- Solomon
- the trumpet
- king
- King

Translation Words - UST

- We hope that...will live for many years
- and Nathan
- Israel
- Zadok
- Solomon
- trumpets
- the king
- King

ULT

³⁴ Have Zadok [the priest](#) and Nathan [the prophet](#) anoint him there [king](#) over [Israel](#) and blow [the trumpet](#) and say, ' [Long live King Solomon!](#)'

UST

³⁴ There, you two, [Zadok and Nathan](#), must anoint him with olive oil to appoint him to be [the king](#) of [Israel](#). Then you two must blow [trumpets](#), and all the people there must shout, '[We hope that King Solomon will live for many years!](#)'

1 Kings 1:35

General Information:

King David continues to speak on behalf of Solomon as the one who will become king.

he will come and sit on my throne

The words “sit on the throne” are used as a metonym for being king in [1 Kings 1:13](#), [1 Kings 1:17](#), and [1 Kings 1:30](#). Here David speaks of Solomon literally sitting on a physical throne.

Translation Words - ULT

- [I have appointed](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [my throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I have appointed him](#)
- [all the people of Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [my throne](#)

ULT

35 Then you will come up after him, and he will come and sit on [my throne](#); for he will be king in my place. [I have appointed](#) him to be ruler over [Israel](#) and over [Judah](#).”

UST

35 Then follow him back here, and he will come and sit on [my throne](#). He will then become king instead of me. [I have appointed him](#) to be the ruler of [all the people of Israel](#) and of [Judah](#).”

1 Kings 1:36

So let it be!

They agree and will do what King David said.

May Yahweh, the God of my master the king, confirm

Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. Alternate translation: "My master and king, may Yahweh your God confirm" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [son of](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [let it be](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who is your](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [God and our God](#)
- [We hope that Yahweh](#)
- [We hope that Yahweh](#)
- [We will do that](#)
- [who is your](#)

ULT

³⁶ Benaiah [son of](#) Jehoiada answered [the king](#), and said, "So [let it be](#)! May [Yahweh](#), [the God of my master the king](#), say."

UST

³⁶ [Benaiah](#) replied, "[We will do that!](#) [We hope that Yahweh, who is your God and our God](#), will cause it to happen!"

1 Kings 1:37

has been with my master the king, so

Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. Alternate translation: “has been with you, my master the king, so” (See: [Pronouns](#))

make his throne greater than the throne of my master King David

The word “throne” is a metonym for either 1) the person who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: “make the one who sits on the throne greater than my master King David” or 2) the kingdom over which the one who sits on the throne rules. Alternate translation: “make his kingdom greater than the kingdom of my master King David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the throne of my master King David

Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. Alternate translation: “your throne, my master King David” (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [his throne](#)
- [the king](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you](#)
- [you](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [King David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [and enable him](#)
- [We hope that he will also help](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

³⁷ As [Yahweh](#) has been with [my master the king](#), so may he be with [Solomon](#), and make [his throne](#) greater than the throne of [my master King David](#).”

UST

³⁷ [King David](#), [Yahweh](#) has helped [you](#). [We hope that he will also help Solomon and enable him](#) to become an even greater [king](#) than [you](#) have been.”

1 Kings 1:38

General Information:

The people of Israel anoint Solomon as king over Israel.

Kerethites...Pelethites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gihon

This is the name of a spring, where fresh water comes out of the ground. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- the prophet
- the priest
- David
- Solomon
- King
- and had...ride

Translation Words - UST

- Benaiah
- Nathan
- So Zadok
- David's
- Solomon
- King
- put

ULT

³⁸ So Zadok [the priest](#), Nathan [the prophet](#), Benaiah [son of](#) Jehoiada, and the Kerethites and the Pelethites went down [and had Solomon ride](#) upon the mule of [King David](#); they brought him to Gihon.

UST

³⁸ [So Zadok](#), [Nathan](#), [Benaiah](#), and the two groups of men who were the king's bodyguards went and [put Solomon](#) on [King David's](#) mule and escorted him down to the spring at Gihon.

1 Kings 1:39

took the horn of oil out of the tent

This means the priest took the special animal horn filled with olive oil that was kept in Yahweh's special tent.

took the horn of oil

Possible meanings are 1) the horn of an animal filled with olive oil or 2) a container that had replaced the original horn, but the people still called it a horn. Alternate translation: "took a container of oil"

all the people

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Long live
- the priest
- Solomon
- Solomon
- the people
- the trumpet
- King

Translation Words - UST

- We hope that...will live for many years
- There Zadok
- Solomon
- Solomon
- the people
- trumpets
- King

ULT

³⁹ Zadok [the priest](#) took the horn of oil out of the tent and anointed [Solomon](#). Then they blew [the trumpet](#), and all [the people](#) said, "[Long live King Solomon!](#)"

UST

³⁹ [There Zadok](#) took the container of olive oil from the sacred tent and anointed [Solomon](#). Then two of them blew [trumpets](#), and all [the people](#) shouted, "[We hope that King Solomon will live for many years!](#)"

1 Kings 1:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- and the people
- with their sound
- with...joy
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- and playing
- shouting
- joyfully
- so that the ground

ULT

⁴⁰ Then all [the people](#) went up after him, [and the people](#) played the flutes and rejoiced with great [joy](#), and [the earth](#) shook [with their sound](#).

UST

⁴⁰ Then all [the people](#) followed him back up to the city, [shouting joyfully and playing](#) flutes. They shouted very loudly, [so that the ground](#) shook.

1 Kings 1:41

General Information:

Adonijah hears the loud noise and waits for the news.

Translation Words - ULT

- the trumpet
- they finished

Translation Words - UST

- of the trumpets
- his guests were finishing

ULT

⁴¹ Adonijah and all the guests who were with him heard it as [they finished](#) eating. When Joab heard the sound of [the trumpet](#), he said, "Why is the sound of the city an uproar?"

UST

⁴¹ When Adonijah and all [his guests](#) [were finishing](#) eating at their celebration, they heard the noise. When Joab heard the sound [of the trumpets](#), he asked, "What is the meaning of all that noise in the city?"

1 Kings 1:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [worthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [whom we can trust](#)

ULT

⁴² While he was still speaking, Jonathan [son of](#) Abiathar [the priest](#) came. Adonijah said, "Come in, for you are a [worthy](#) man and bring good news."

UST

⁴² While he was still speaking, Jonathan [son](#) of Abiathar [the priest](#), arrived. Adonijah said, "Come in! You are a man [whom we can trust](#), so you must be bringing us good news!"

1 Kings 1:43

General Information:

Adonijah learns that Solomon is the new king.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Our master](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [His Majesty](#)
- [David](#)
- [has made Solomon](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

⁴³ Jonathan answered and said to Adonijah, "No! [Our master King David](#) has made [Solomon](#) the king,

UST

⁴³ Jonathan replied, "No, I do not have good news! [His Majesty](#), [King David](#), [has made Solomon](#) to be the king!

1 Kings 1:44

Kerethites...Pelethites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- the prophet
- the priest
- the king
- the king
- They have had...ride

Translation Words - UST

- Benaiah
- Nathan
- Zadok
- He
- King David's
- They put Solomon

ULT

⁴⁴ and [the king](#) has sent with him Zadok [the priest](#), Nathan [the prophet](#), Benaiah [son of](#) Jehoiada, and the Kerethites and the Pelethites. [They have had](#) him [ride](#) on the mule of [the king](#).

UST

⁴⁴ [He](#) sent [Zadok](#), [Nathan](#), [Benaiah](#), and the his own groups of bodyguards to go with Solomon. [They put Solomon](#) on [King David's](#) mule.

1 Kings 1:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophet
- the priest
- rejoicing
- king

Translation Words - UST

- and Nathan
- Zadok
- joyfully
- king

ULT

⁴⁵ Zadok [the priest](#) and Nathan [the prophet](#) have anointed him [king](#) at Gihon, and have come up from there [rejoicing](#), so that the city is in an uproar. This is the noise that you have heard.

UST

⁴⁵ They went down to the spring at Gihon, and there [Zadok and Nathan](#) have anointed him to become the [king](#). Now they have returned from there to the city, shouting [joyfully](#). That is why there is that great noise that you are hearing.

1 Kings 1:46

General Information:

Jonathan continues to speak to Adonijah about Solomon.

is sitting on the throne of the kingdom

Possible meanings are 1) that these words are a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:35](#). Alternate translation: "is now king" or 2) that Solomon was physically sitting on the physical throne. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the throne of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Solomon is now our king](#)
- [So Solomon is now our king](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ Also, [Solomon](#) sits on [the throne of](#) the kingdom.

UST

⁴⁶ [So Solomon is now our king.](#)

1 Kings 1:47

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- our master
- May...make...better
- God
- the name of
- Then...bowed down
- David
- Solomon
- his throne
- the king
- King
- the king
- the servants of

Translation Words - UST

- His Majesty
- will make...even more famous than you have been
- God
- Solomon
- lying
- David, to tell him that they approved of
- Solomon
- and enable him
- what he had done
- King
- When they said that, the king
- Furthermore, the palace officials

ULT

⁴⁷ Moreover, the servants of the king came to bless our master King David, saying, 'May your God make the name of Solomon better than your name, and make his throne greater than your throne.' Then the king bowed down on the bed.

UST

⁴⁷ Furthermore, the palace officials came to His Majesty, King David, to tell him that they approved of what he had done. They said, 'We wish that God will make Solomon even more famous than you have been and enable him to be an even better king than you have been.' When they said that, the king, lying on his bed, bowed his head to worship Yahweh.

1 Kings 1:48

a person to sit on my throne this day

Possible meanings are 1) that these words are a metonym for being king. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 1:35](#). Alternate translation: "a person to be king today as I was" or 2) that Solomon was physically sitting on the physical throne. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed be](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [my throne](#)
- [The king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worship](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh, the...whom we](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [to become](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ [The king](#) also said, 'Blessed be [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), who has given one to sit on [my throne](#) this day, and that my own eyes see it.'

UST

⁴⁸ Then he said, 'I praise [Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship](#), because he has allowed one of my sons [to become the king](#) today and has permitted me to see it happen.'

1 Kings 1:49

General Information:

Adonijah becomes terrified of King Solomon.

They stood up

Another possible meaning is "They began to act quickly" (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

⁴⁹ Then all the guests of Adonijah were terrified. They arose and each man went his way.

UST

⁴⁹ Then all of Adonijah's guests trembled, so they all immediately got up and left and scattered.

1 Kings 1:50

Adonijah...took hold of the horns of the altar

The “horns of the altar” symbolized the strength and protection of Yahweh, but because Adonijah literally went into the area of the physical tent to take literal hold of the physical horns, you should translate this literally.

Adonijah...rose up, went

Another possible meaning is “Adonijah...quickly went” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the altar](#)
- [was afraid](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the altar](#)
- [was afraid of what...would do](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ Adonijah [was afraid](#) of the face of [Solomon](#) and rose up, went, and took hold of the horns of [the altar](#).

UST

⁵⁰ Adonijah [was afraid of what Solomon would do](#), so he went to the sacred tent and grabbed the projections at the corners [of the altar](#), because he thought that no one would kill him there.

1 Kings 1:51

is afraid of King Solomon

The servants speak to King Solomon as if they were speaking of someone else to show that they respected King Solomon. Alternate translation: "is afraid of you, King Solomon" (See: [Pronouns](#))

he will not kill his servant

Adonijah speaks of himself as if he were speaking of another person so people will think that he respects King Solomon. Alternate translation: "he will not kill me" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar
- is afraid of
- Solomon
- Solomon
- with the sword
- King
- King (2)
- his servant
- Let...swear

Translation Words - UST

- and is holding on to the altar
- is afraid of
- Solomon
- Solomon
- that...be executed
- so he has gone
- King (2)
- that...be executed
- to solemnly promise that he will not command

ULT

51 Then it was told Solomon, saying, "See, Adonijah [is afraid of King Solomon](#), for he has laid hold on the horns of [the altar](#), saying, 'Let [King Solomon swear](#) to me today that he will not kill [his servant with the sword](#).'"

UST

51 But someone told [Solomon](#), "See, Adonijah [is afraid of](#) you, [so he has gone](#) to the sacred tent [and is holding on to the altar](#). He is saying, 'Before I leave, I want [King Solomon to solemnly promise that he will not command](#) that I [be executed](#).'"

1 Kings 1:52

General Information:

Solomon spares the life of Adonijah.

not a hair of his will fall to the earth

This is an exaggeration to say that Solomon will keep Adonijah safe. Alternate translation: “not a hair of his head will fall” or “I will keep him safe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

wickedness is found in him

The abstract noun “wickedness” can be translated as a verb. It is spoken of as if it were an object that could be found in a container. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “he does what is evil” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a son of
- evil
- Solomon
- virtue
- he will die
- to the earth

Translation Words - UST

- he proves that he is loyal to me, I will
- does anything that is wrong
- Solomon
- he proves that he is loyal to me, I will
- will be executed
- at all

ULT

⁵² [Solomon](#) said, “If he will be [a son of virtue](#), not a hair of his will fall [to the earth](#), but if [evil](#) is found in him, [he will die](#).”

UST

⁵² [Solomon](#) replied, “If [he proves that he is loyal to me, I will](#) not harm him [at all](#). But if he [does anything that is wrong](#), he [will be executed](#).”

1 Kings 1:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar
- and bowed down
- Solomon
- Solomon
- Solomon
- King
- to King
- Go
- to your house

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- and bowed down in front
- Solomon
- Solomon
- Then Solomon
- So King
- He came to
- Go
- home

ULT

⁵³ So [King Solomon](#) sent, and they brought him down from [the altar](#). He came [and bowed down to King Solomon](#), and [Solomon](#) said to him, "[Go to your house](#)."

UST

⁵³ [So King Solomon](#) sent some men to Adonijah, and they brought him back from [the altar](#). [He came to Solomon and bowed down in front](#) of him. [Then Solomon](#) said to him, "[Go home](#)."

1 Kings 2

1 Kings 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories: David's last advice to Solomon and Solomon's punishment of those who supported Adonijah and also Shimei, who had cursed David when David was fleeing from Absalom. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Exalting oneself

Exalting oneself can lead to disaster as when Adonijah made himself king. (See: [exalt](#), [exalted](#), [exaltation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Euphemism

David spoke of his impending death using a euphemism: "I am going the way of all the earth." (See: [Euphemism](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Parallelism

David wanted to emphasize the importance of obeying God to his son Solomon. He used parallelism, saying the same thing seven times using different words: "Keep the commands of Yahweh your God to walk in his ways, to obey his statutes, his commandments, his decisions, and his covenant decrees, being careful to do what is written in the law of Moses." Some languages have other ways of emphasizing an idea. (See: [Parallelism](#))

1 Kings 2:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [he commanded](#)
- [his son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [of the death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [these final instructions](#)
- [to his son](#)
- [When David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [knew that he was...die](#)

ULT

¹ As the day [of the death](#) of [David](#) approached, [he commanded Solomon his son](#), saying,

UST

¹ [When David knew that he was](#) about to [die](#), he gave [these final instructions to his son Solomon](#):

1 Kings 2:2

I am going the way of all the earth

This is a polite way of saying "I am going to die." (See: [Euphemism](#))

show yourself a man

The ellipsis can be filled in. Alternate translation: "show everyone that you are a man" or "live so that everyone can see you are a good man" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I
- am going
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- I
- does
- on earth

ULT

² "I am going the way of all the earth.
Be strong, therefore, and be a man.

UST

² "I am about to die, as everyone else on earth does. Be courageous and conduct yourself as man should.

1 Kings 2:3

walk in his ways

Walking on a path is a metonym for the way a person lives. Alternate translation: "live the way he commands" (See: [Idiom](#))

so you may prosper

"so you may succeed" or "so you may do well"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his commandments](#)
- [your God](#)
- [in the law of](#)
- [prosper in](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [his decisions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees](#)
- [our God](#)
- [in the laws that](#)
- [you will prosper](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses gave us](#)
- [Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees](#)

ULT

³ Keep the charge of [Yahweh your God](#) to walk in his ways, to obey his statutes, [his commandments, his decisions](#), and his decrees, as written [in the law of Moses](#), in order to [prosper in](#) all that you do and wherever you turn.

UST

³ Do what [Yahweh our God](#) tells you to do. Conduct yourself as he wants you to do. [Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees](#) and instructions that are written [in the laws that Moses gave us](#). Do this in order that [you will prosper](#) in all that you do and wherever you go.

1 Kings 2:4

may fulfill his word

“do everything he promised he would do”

If your sons...you will never cease

Yahweh is talking to David, so the words “you” and “your” refer to David.

to walk before me faithfully

Yahweh is talking to David, so the word “me” refers to Yahweh.

with all their heart and with all their soul

The idiom “with all...heart” means “completely” and “with all...soul” means “with all...being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. Alternate translation: “with all their being” or “with all their energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

you will never cease to have a man on the throne of Israel

The word “throne” is a metonym for the king who sits on the throne. The litotes “will never cease to have” can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “your descendants will never cease to be kings of Israel” or “one of your descendants will always be the king of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their soul](#)
- [your sons](#)
- [their heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [will...be cut off](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [guard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be the ones](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [their inner beings](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [obey my commands](#)
- [who will rule](#)
- [continually do](#)

ULT

⁴ so that the promise of [Yahweh](#) may stand which he spoke unto me, saying, ‘If [your sons guard](#) their way, to walk before me in truth with all [their heart](#) and with all [their soul](#), a man will never [be cut off](#) from you on [the throne of Israel](#).’

UST

⁴ If you [continually do](#) that, [Yahweh](#) will do what he promised me. He said, ‘If your [descendants](#) do what I tell them to do, and faithfully [obey my commands](#) with all [their inner beings](#), they will always [be the ones who will rule Israel](#).’

1 Kings 2:5

General Information:

King David continues to tell Solomon how to lead Israel.

what Joab...did to me, and what he did

David is referring to the same thing twice. Alternate translation: "what Joab...did to me—that is, what he did"

shed the blood of war in peace

Possible meanings are 1) "killed those men during a time of peace as if he were killing them in war" or 2) "took revenge on those men during a time of peace because they had killed people in war" (See: [Metonymy](#))

put the blood of war on the belt around his waist and on the shoes on his feet

Possible meanings are 1) Joab was close enough to these men when he killed them that their blood spattered on his belt and on his sandals or 2) the word "blood" is a metonym for guilt of murder, and the belt and the shoes are metonyms for Joab's authority as commander, so David is saying that because Joab is guilty of murder, he should not be commander of the army. Either way, it is best to translate this literally. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [son of](#) (2)
- [son of](#)
- [war](#)
- [the blood of](#)
- [He shed](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [commanders of](#)
- [know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joab](#)
- [Abner](#) (2)
- [and Amasa](#)
- [violently](#)
- [guilty](#)
- [He killed](#)
- [army](#)
- [army](#)
- [want](#)

ULT

⁵ You [know](#) also what Joab [son of](#) Zeruiah did to me, and what he did to the two [commanders of](#) the armies of [Israel](#), to Abner [son of](#) Ner, and to Amasa [son of](#) Jether, whom he killed. [He shed](#) the blood of [war](#) in peace and put [the blood of](#) war on the belt around his waist and on the shoes on his feet.

UST

⁵ There is something else that I [want](#) you to do. You know what [Joab](#) did to me. [He killed](#) my two [army](#) commanders, [Abner and Amasa](#). He murdered them [violently](#). He is [guilty](#) of murder.

1 Kings 2:6

do not let his gray head go down to the grave in peace

Here being old is represented by having gray hair, that is, a “gray head.” Alternate translation: “make sure Joab dies a violent death before he grows old” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁶ So act in your wisdom, but do not let his gray head go down to the grave in peace.

UST

⁶ Because you are wise, do to him what you think is best for you to do, but do not allow him to become old and die peacefully.

1 Kings 2:7

General Information:

King David continues to tell Solomon how to lead Israel.

Barzillai

a man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

let them be among those who eat at your table

The table is a metonym for the home where the table is. Alternate translation: "welcome them to eat at your home" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your brother](#)
- [However...to the sons of](#)
- [kindness](#)
- [the Gileadite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your older brother](#)
- [the sons](#)
- [But act kindly](#)
- [the man from the region of Gilead](#)

ULT

⁷ [However](#), show [kindness to the sons of](#) Barzillai [the Gileadite](#), and let them be partakers at your table, for this: they came near to me in my flight from the face of Absalom [your brother](#).

UST

⁷ [But act kindly](#) toward [the sons](#) of Barzillai, [the man from the region of Gilead](#), and be sure that they always have enough food to eat. Do that because Barzillai helped me when I was running away from [your older brother](#) Absalom.

1 Kings 2:8

General Information:

King David continues to tell Solomon how to lead Israel.

Shimei...Gera

men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Benjamite

descendant of Benjamin

Bahurim...Mahanaim

place names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- by Yahweh
- the Jordan
- the Benjamite (2)
- with the sword
- I went
- I swore

Translation Words - UST

- son
- while Yahweh listened
- when I was crossing the Jordan River
- in the area where the descendants of Benjamin live (2)
- that I would not cause...to be executed
- and went
- solemnly promised

ULT

⁸ Look, there is with you Shimei [son of](#) Gera, [the Benjamite](#) of Bahurim. He cursed me with a violent curse on the day [I went](#) to Mahanaim. But when he came down to meet me at [the Jordan](#), [I swore](#) to him [by Yahweh](#), saying, 'I will not put you to death [with the sword](#).'

UST

⁸ Also, you remember Gera's [son](#) Shimei from the town of Bahurim [in the area where the descendants of Benjamin live](#). You know what he did to me. He cursed me terribly on the day I left Jerusalem [and went](#) to the town of Mahanaim. But when he later came down to see me [when I was crossing the Jordan River](#), I [solemnly promised, while Yahweh listened, that I would not cause him to be executed](#).

1 Kings 2:9

do not let him go free from punishment

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "be sure to punish him" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

bring his gray head down to the grave with blood

Blood is a metonym for violent death, and the head is synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "make sure he dies a violent death" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)
- [and...will know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are a wise](#)
- [know](#)

ULT

⁹ Now therefore do not let him go free from punishment. You are a [wise](#) man, and you [will know](#) what you ought to do to him. You will bring his gray head down to the grave with blood."

UST

⁹ But now you must surely punish him. You [are a wise](#) man, so you will [know](#) what you should do to him. He is an old man, but be sure that his blood flows when he dies."

1 Kings 2:10

General Information:

David dies and Solomon takes his place as the new king of Israel.

slept with his ancestors

David dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: "died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

David...and was buried

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "David...and they buried him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then David](#)
- [David](#)
- [in that part of Jerusalem which was called](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then [David](#) slept with [his fathers](#) and was buried in the city of [David](#).

UST

¹⁰ [Then David](#) died and was buried [in that part of Jerusalem which was called](#) the city of [David](#).

1 Kings 2:11

The days that David reigned over Israel were

“The time that David reigned over Israel was” or “David reigned over Israel for”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [and...in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹¹ The days that [David](#) reigned over [Israel](#) were forty years. He had reigned seven years in Hebron and reigned thirty-three years [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹¹ [David](#) had been king of [Israel](#) for forty years. He ruled for seven years in Hebron and for thirty-three years [in Jerusalem](#).

1 Kings 2:12

sat on the throne of his father David

The throne represents the authority of the king. Alternate translation: “became king, as his father David had been” (See: [Metonymy](#))

his rule was firmly established

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh firmly established Solomon’s rule” or “Yahweh caused Solomon to take complete control of the kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [his father](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [his rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [his father](#)
- [to take the place of](#)
- [became the ruler](#)

ULT

¹² Then Solomon sat on [the throne of his father David](#), and [his rule](#) was firmly established.

UST

¹² Solomon [became the ruler to take the place of his father David](#) and took control of all of the kingdom.

1 Kings 2:13

General Information:

Adonijah comes to speak to Bathsheba.

peacefully

with no desire to cause harm

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- the...Solomon
- Peacefully

Translation Words - UST

- One day Adonijah
- Solomon's
- She said to him...because you want things to go well

ULT

¹³ Then Adonijah [son of](#) Haggith came to Bathsheba the mother of [Solomon](#). She said, "Do you come peacefully?" He replied, "[Peacefully](#)."

UST

¹³ [One day Adonijah](#) came to [Solomon's](#) mother Bathsheba. [She said to him](#), "Have you come [because you want things to go well](#)?" He replied, "Yes."

1 Kings 2:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

14 Then he said, "I have something to say to you." So she replied, "Speak."

UST

14 But then he said, "I have something to request you to do." She said, "Tell me what you want me to do."

1 Kings 2:15

all Israel

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

things changed

“what we expected to happen did not happen”

the kingdom was given to my brother

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave the kingdom to my brother” or “my brother became king” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- reign, rule
- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- my younger brother
- the Israelite people
- became king, because
- Instead
- know that

ULT

¹⁵ Adonijah said, “You know that the kingdom was mine, and that all Israel expected me to be king. But things changed, and the kingdom was given to my brother, for it was his from Yahweh.

UST

¹⁵ He said, “You [know that](#) all [the Israelite people](#) expected me to be their king because I am David’s oldest son. But that did not happen. [Instead, my younger brother became king, because](#) that is what Yahweh wanted.

1 Kings 2:16

General Information:

Adonijah shares his request with Bathsheba.

do not turn away from my face

Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. Alternate translation: “do not refuse to do what I request” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tell me what](#)
- [I](#)
- [Please do not refuse to do it](#)

ULT

16 Now I have one request of you, and do not turn away from my face.” Bathsheba said to him, “Speak.”

UST

16 Now I have one thing that [I](#) request you to do. [Please do not refuse to do it.](#)” She replied, “[Tell me what](#) you want me to do.”

1 Kings 2:17

he will not turn away from your face

Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. Alternate translation: "he will not refuse to do what you request" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Abishag the Shunammite

See [1 Kings 1:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), restoration
- [face](#), facial
- [king](#), kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- [refuse](#)
- [I am sure that he will](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

17 He said, "Please speak to Solomon the king, for he will not turn away from your face, so that he may give me Abishag the Shunammite as my wife."

UST

17 He said, "Please ask [King](#) Solomon to give to me Abishag, the woman from the town of Shunem, to be my wife. [I am sure that he will](#) not [refuse](#)."

1 Kings 2:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- for you
- I
- the king

ULT

18 Bathsheba said, "Very well, I will speak to the king."

UST

18 Bathsheba replied, "Very well, I will speak to the king for you."

1 Kings 2:19

General Information:

Bathsheba goes to King Solomon with Adonijah's request.

The king rose

"The king stood up" from where he was sitting on his throne.

had a throne brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "told someone to bring a throne" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the king's mother

Bathsheba

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- prostrate, worship
- Solomon
- throne, enthroned
- throne, enthroned
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- and asked someone to bring
- and bowed down
- Solomon
- King...s
- a chair
- The king
- he
- king

ULT

19 Bathsheba therefore went to King Solomon to speak to him for Adonijah. The king rose to meet her and bowed down to her. Then he sat down on his throne and had a throne brought for the king's mother. She sat at his right hand.

UST

19 So Bathsheba went to [King Solomon](#) to tell him what Adonijah wanted. [The king](#) got up from his throne and went to greet her [and bowed down](#) to her. Then [he](#) sat on his throne again [and asked someone to bring a chair](#) for her. So she sat down at the [king's](#) right side.

1 Kings 2:20

you will not turn away from my face...I will not turn away from your face

Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 2:16](#) and [1 Kings 2:17](#). Alternate translation: “you will not refuse to do what I request...I will not refuse to do what you request” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- pray, prayer
- face, facial
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Please do not say that...will not do it
- I will not refuse
- I
- replied
- I will not refuse
- The king

ULT

²⁰ Then she said, “I wish to ask one small request of you, for you will not turn away from my face.” The king answered her, “Ask, my mother, for I will not turn away from your face.”

UST

²⁰ Then she said, “[I](#) have one small thing that I want you do. [Please do not say that you will not do it.](#)” [The king replied,](#) “Mother, what do you want? [I will not refuse](#) you.”

1 Kings 2:21

Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah...as his wife

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Allow Adonijah...to marry Abishag the Shunammite" or "Give Abishag the Shunammite to Adonijah...as his wife" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your older brother](#)

ULT

²¹ She said, "Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah your brother as his wife."

UST

²¹ She said, "Allow Abishag to be given to [your older brother](#) Adonijah to be his wife."

1 Kings 2:22

General Information:

King Solomon gives an answer to Adonijah's request.

Why do you ask...Adonijah? Why do you not ask the kingdom for him also...Zeruiah?

King Solomon was angered by his mother's request. Alternate translation: "You are wrong to ask...Adonijah! This is the same as asking the kingdom for him also...Zeruiah!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- priest, priesthood
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- and that Joab should be the army commander
- the priest instead of Zadok
- The king
- Does he want me to allow him to rule the kingdom, too

ULT

²² King Solomon answered and said to his mother, "Why do you ask Abishag the Shunammite for Adonijah? Why do you not ask the kingdom for him also, for he is my elder brother—for him, for Abiathar the priest, and for Joab son of Zeruiah?"

UST

²² [The king](#) replied angrily, "What? Are you requesting me to give Abishag to Adonijah? [Does he want me to allow him to rule the kingdom, too?](#) Because he is my older [brother](#), does he think that he should be the king? Does he think that Abiathar should be [the priest instead of Zadok, and that Joab should be the army commander](#) instead of Benaiah because they supported him when he tried to become the king?"

1 Kings 2:23

May God do so to me, and more also, if Adonijah has not spoken this word against his own life

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “God will have every right to execute me—and to do even worse things to me—if I do not execute Adonijah because he has made this request” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heart
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- God
- to strike me and kill
- Yahweh to listen...wish
- Then Solomon
- Then Solomon
- solemnly promised

ULT

²³ Then King Solomon swore by Yahweh, saying, “May God do so to me, and more also, if Adonijah has not spoken this word against his own life.

UST

²³ [Then Solomon solemnly promised](#), requesting [Yahweh to listen](#), “I [wish God to strike me and kill](#) me if I do not cause Adonijah to be executed for requesting this!

1 Kings 2:24

General Information:

King Solomon executes Adonijah.

set me on the throne

The word “throne” refers to Solomon’s authority to rule that was given by Yahweh. (See: [Metonymy](#))

who has made me a house

Here “house” refers to descendants that Yahweh gave to King Solomon, who would continue to reign after him. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- throne, enthroned
- house

Translation Words - UST

- has appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- as my father
- king
- He has promised

ULT

²⁴ Now therefore as Yahweh lives, who has established me and set me on the throne of David my father, and who has made me a house as he promised, surely Adonijah will be put to death today.”

UST

²⁴ [Yahweh has appointed](#) me to be the [king](#) and placed me here to rule [as my father David](#) did. [He has promised](#) that my descendants will be the kings of Israel. So just as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly promise that Adonijah will be executed today!”

1 Kings 2:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Solomon
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- to Benaiah
- Solomon
- and Benaiah did that
- and kill
- So King

ULT

²⁵ So King Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and Benaiah found Adonijah and put him to death.

UST

²⁵ So King Solomon gave orders to Benaiah to go and kill Adonijah, and Benaiah did that.

1 Kings 2:26

General Information:

Solomon dismisses Abiathar from being priest.

suffered in every way my father suffered

Abiathar had suffered alongside King David before David became king.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- priest, priesthood
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh's
- the priest
- David
- father
- my father
- Then Solomon said to
- Go

ULT

²⁶ Then to Abiathar the priest the king said, "Go to Anathoth, to your own fields. You are worthy of death, but I will not at this time put you to death, because you carried the ark of the Lord Yahweh before David my father and suffered in every way my father suffered." ^[1]

UST

²⁶ Then Solomon said to Abiathar the priest, "Go to the town of Anathoth, to your land there. You deserve to be killed, but I will not execute you now, because you were the one who supervised the men who carried Yahweh's sacred chest for David my father, and you endured all the troubles that my father endured."

1 Kings 2:27

that he might fulfill

The word "he" refers to King Solomon.

the word of Yahweh

"the things that Yahweh had said"

which he had spoken

The word "he" refers to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the descendants](#)

ULT

²⁷ So Solomon dismissed Abiathar from being priest to Yahweh, that he might fulfill the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken concerning the house of Eli at Shiloh.

UST

²⁷ So [Solomon](#) dismissed Abiathar from being [the priest of Yahweh](#). By doing that he caused to happen what [Yahweh](#) had said many years previously at Shiloh, that some day he would get rid of [the descendants](#) of Eli.

1 Kings 2:28

General Information:

King Solomon orders Benaiah to execute Joab.

The news came to Joab

"Joab heard what Solomon did after he had become king"

the horns of the altar

The horns of the altar symbolized Yahweh's power and protection.
(See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- of the altar
- the sacred tent

ULT

²⁸ The news came to Joab, for Joab had supported Adonijah, though he had not supported Absalom. So Joab fled to the tent of Yahweh and took hold of the horns of the altar.

UST

²⁸ Joab had not supported Absalom when he tried to become the king, but he had supported Adonijah. So when Joab heard what had happened, he ran to [the sacred tent](#), and he took hold [of the altar](#) because he thought that no one would kill him there.

1 Kings 2:29

It was told King Solomon that Joab had fled

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told King Solomon that Joab had fled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- Benaiah
- the sacred tent
- When someone told Solomon
- Solomon
- When someone told Solomon
- Go

ULT

²⁹ It was told King Solomon that Joab had fled to the tent of Yahweh and was now beside the altar. Then Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada, saying, "Go, execute him."

UST

²⁹ [When someone told Solomon](#) that Joab had run to [the sacred tent](#) and was alongside [the altar](#), [Solomon](#) told [Benaiah](#), "[Go](#) and execute Joab."

1 Kings 2:30

General Information:

Benaiah goes to execute Joab.

Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Joab had replied
- the sacred tent
- The king commands that
- he (2)
- went back to the king and reported what
- went

ULT

³⁰ So Benaiah came to the tent of Yahweh and said to him, "The king says, 'Come out.'" Joab replied, "No, I will die here." So Benaiah returned to the king, saying, "Joab said he wanted to die at the altar."

UST

³⁰ So Benaiah went to the sacred tent and said to Joab, "The king commands that you come out." But Joab replied, "No, I will die here." So Benaiah went back to the king and reported what he had said to Joab, and what Joab had replied.

1 Kings 2:31

bury him so that you may take away from me and from my father's house the blood that Joab shed without cause

Here "house" stands for the descendants of David while "blood" represents guilt. Alternate translation: "bury him and so remove from me and my family the guilt for the murders Joab committed without cause" or "bury him. Do that so Yahweh will not hold me and my father's house guilty because Joab murdered people for no reason" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- for what Joab
- two men who were innocent
- The king
- two men who were innocent

ULT

³¹ The king said to him, "Do as he has said. Kill him and bury him so that you may take away from me and from my father's house the blood that Joab shed without cause.

UST

³¹ [The king](#) replied to him, "Do what he has requested. Kill him and bury his body. If you do that, I and my descendants will no longer be punished [for what Joab](#) did when he killed [two men who were innocent](#).

1 Kings 2:32

General Information:

King Solomon explains why Joab should die.

May Yahweh return his blood on his own head

The word "his" refers to Joab. "Blood" is a metonym for murder. And, the idiom "his blood on his own head" means the person should be considered guilty for murder. Alternate translation: "Joab has murdered people, and I want Yahweh to hold him guilty for what he has done" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

more righteous and better

These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Abner and Amasa were much better men than Joab. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- son
- son
- blood
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- sword, swordsmen
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility (2)
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- who were...much better...than he is
- Abner
- and Amasa
- for attacking and killing
- Yahweh
- of Israel
- Judah
- David
- My father
- the commander
- will punish Joab
- But I hope
- Abner

ULT

³² May Yahweh return his blood on his own head, because he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself and killed them with the sword, Abner son of Ner, the captain of the army of Israel, and Amasa son of Jether, the captain of the army of Judah, without my father David knowing it.

UST

³² [But I hope](#) that [Yahweh will punish Joab for attacking and killing Abner, the commander of the army of Israel, and Amasa, the commander of the army of Judah, who were both much better men than he is. My father David did not even know that Joab was planning to murder them.](#)

- the commander of (2)
- did...even know that Joab was planning to murder them

1 Kings 2:33

may their blood return on the head of Joab and on the head of his descendants

The word “blood” is a metonym for murder. And, the idiom “blood return on the head of” means the person should be considered guilty for murder. Alternate translation: “I want Yahweh to hold Joab and his descendants guilty” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

to his house, and to his throne

The words “house” and “throne” are metonyms for the family and the kingdom. Alternate translation: “to David’s descendants and to David’s kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Yahweh
- head
- seed, semen
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- return

Translation Words - UST

- will punish
- Yahweh
- Joab
- and his descendants
- But I hope that things will go well
- I hope that

ULT

³³ So may their blood return on the head of Joab and on the head of his descendants forever. But to David and his descendants, and to his house, and to his throne, may there be peace forever from Yahweh.”

UST

³³ [I hope that Yahweh will punish Joab and his descendants](#) forever for his murdering Abner and Amasa. [But I hope that things will go well](#) forever for David’s descendants who rule as he did.”

1 Kings 2:34

General Information:

Benaiah kills Joab and becomes the commander of King Solomon's army.

He was buried in his own house

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "They buried Joab in his own house"

in his own house

The house is a metonym for the land on which the house stood. The Israelites buried people out of doors in graves or tombs. Alternate translation: "where his family lived" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [temple](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Benaiah](#)
- [on his property in the wilderness of Judah](#)
- [on his property in the wilderness of Judah](#)
- [and killed Joab](#)

ULT

³⁴ Then Benaiah son of Jehoiada went up and attacked Joab and killed him. He was buried in his own house in the wilderness.

UST

³⁴ [So Benaiah](#) went into the sacred tent [and killed Joab](#). Joab was buried [on his property in the wilderness of Judah](#).

1 Kings 2:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Benaiah
- to be the priest
- and he
- Then the king

ULT

³⁵ The king put Benaiah son of Jehoiada over the army in his place, and he put Zadok the priest in Abiathar's place.

UST

³⁵ Then the king appointed Benaiah to be the commander of the army instead of Joab, and he appointed Zadok to be the priest instead of Abiathar.

1 Kings 2:36

General Information:

King Solomon tells Shimei to stay in Jerusalem or Shimei will die.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Then the king](#)
- [to summon](#)
- [a house for yourself](#)
- [and do...leave the city to go anywhere](#)

ULT

36 Then the king sent and called for Shimei, and said to him, "Build yourself a house in Jerusalem and live there, and do not go out from there to any other place.

UST

36 [Then the king](#) sent a messenger [to summon](#) Shimei, and the king said to him, "Build [a house for yourself](#) here [in Jerusalem](#). Remain there [and do](#) not [leave the city to go anywhere](#).

1 Kings 2:37

Your blood will be on your own head

Here “blood” is a metonym for guilt and the head is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: “You will be responsible for your own death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- your...fault
- and go across
- own
- leave Jerusalem
- you will be executed
- you will be executed

ULT

37 For on the day you go out, and pass over the Kidron Valley, know you for certain that you will surely die. Your blood will be on your own head.”

UST

37 Be sure that the day that you [leave Jerusalem and go across](#) the Kidron Brook, [you will be executed](#), and it will be your [own fault](#).”

1 Kings 2:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Your Majesty
- is good
- in Jerusalem
- is good
- Your Majesty
- I will

ULT

³⁸ So Shimei said to the king, "What you say is good. As my master the king has said, so your servant will do." So Shimei lived in Jerusalem for many days.

UST

³⁸ Shimei replied, "[Your Majesty](#), what you say [is good](#). [I will](#) do what you have said." So Shimei remained [in Jerusalem](#) for several years.

1 Kings 2:39

General Information:

Shimei leaves Jerusalem.

Achish...Maacah...Gath

men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gath

a Philistine city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [slaves](#)
- [They went](#)

ULT

39 But at the end of three years, two of the servants of Shimei ran away to Achish son of Maacah, the king of Gath. So they told Shimei, saying, "See, your servants are in Gath."

UST

39 But three years later, two of Shimei's [slaves](#) ran away. [They went](#) to stay with Maacah's [son](#) Achish, [the king of](#) the city of Gath. When someone told Shimei that they were in Gath,

1 Kings 2:40

Shimei arose

This is an idiom. "Shimei quickly" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- on his donkey
- found
- slaves
- them

ULT

⁴⁰ Then Shimei arose, saddled his donkey and went to Achish in Gath to seek his servants. He went and brought his servants back from Gath.

UST

⁴⁰ he put a saddle [on his donkey](#) and got on the donkey and went to Gath. He [found](#) his [slaves](#) staying with King Achish and brought [them](#) back home.

1 Kings 2:41

General Information:

King Solomon judges Shimei for leaving Jerusalem.

Solomon was told

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone told Solomon" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [had gone](#)
- [and had returned](#)

ULT

41 When Solomon was told that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath and had returned,

UST

41 But someone told King Solomon that Shimei [had gone from Jerusalem](#) to Gath [and had returned](#).

1 Kings 2:42

Did I not make you swear...saying, 'Know...die'?

Solomon is reminding Shimei of what Shimei had promised.
 Alternate translation: "You know very well that I made you swear... saying, 'Know...die!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- And you
- Yahweh
- is good
- the king
- to summon
- I told you to solemnly promise, knowing that...was listening
- that you must...leave Jerusalem
- Be sure that if you...leave Jerusalem
- Be sure that if you...leave Jerusalem

ULT

⁴² the king sent and called for Shimei and said to him, "Did I not make you swear by Yahweh and testify to you, saying, 'Know for certain that on the day you go out and go to any other place, you will surely die?' Then you said to me, 'What you say is good.'

UST

⁴² So [the king](#) sent a soldier [to summon](#) Shimei and said to him, "[I told you to solemnly promise, knowing that Yahweh was listening, that you must not leave Jerusalem](#). I told you, '[Be sure that if you ever leave Jerusalem](#), you will be executed.' [And you](#) replied to me, 'What you have said [is good](#); I will do what you have said.'

1 Kings 2:43

General Information:

King Solomon pronounces judgment upon Shimei for leaving Jerusalem.

Why then have you not kept your oath...you?

Possible meanings are 1) Solomon is asking for an answer or 2) Alternate translation: "You have done wrong by breaking your oath...you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [oath](#), [swear](#), [swearing](#), [swear by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disobey](#)
- [I commanded you](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [do what](#)
- [solemnly promised to](#)

ULT

⁴³ Why then have you not kept your oath to Yahweh and the command that I gave you?"

UST

⁴³ So why did you not [do what](#) you [solemnly promised to Yahweh](#)? Why did you [disobey](#) what [I commanded you](#)?"

1 Kings 2:44

will return your wickedness on your own head

Here the head represents the person, and wickedness is spoken of as if it were a solid or liquid that could be put on a person's head. Alternate translation: "will hold you responsible for all your wickedness" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- in your inner being
- So Yahweh
- the evil things
- the evil things
- my father
- you for
- The king
- will now punish
- know
- in your inner being

ULT

⁴⁴ The king also said to Shimei, "You know in your heart all the wickedness that you did to my father David. Therefore Yahweh will return your wickedness on your own head."

UST

⁴⁴ [The king](#) also said to Shimei, "You [know in your inner being](#) all [the evil things](#) that you did to [my father](#) David. [So Yahweh will now punish you for the evil things](#) that you did."

1 Kings 2:45

General Information:

King Solomon orders Shimei to be put to death.

the throne of David will be established before Yahweh forever

Here “throne of David” represents the authority and rule of David and all his descendants forever. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [will bless](#)
- [forever](#)
- [David's descendants](#)
- [me](#)
- [and he](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ But King Solomon will be blessed and the throne of David will be established before Yahweh forever.”

UST

⁴⁵ But Yahweh [will bless me, and he](#) will enable [David's descendants](#) to rule [forever](#).”

1 Kings 2:46

in Solomon's hand

This use of "hand" represents Solomon's power and authority. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gave a command](#)
- [He went out](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [complete control](#)
- [to death](#)
- [Then the king](#)

ULT

46 Then the king gave a command to Benaiah son of Jehoiada. He went out and put Shimei to death. So the rule was well established in Solomon's hand. 2:26 ^[1] Some versions have, *the ark of Yahweh* .

UST

46 [Then the king gave a command](#) to Benaiah [son](#) of Jehoiada. [He went out](#) and put Shimei [to death](#). So [Solomon](#) obtained [complete control](#) of the kingdom.

1 Kings 3

1 Kings 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories. Verses 1-15 is the story of Solomon's dream when God asked him what he wanted and he said he needed wisdom to be a good and fair ruler. Verses 16-28 is the story of a court case showing Solomon's wisdom. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Wisdom

God was very pleased with Solomon's request for wisdom. This is because wisdom was something that he could use to serve other people instead of himself. Because this was a noble request, God promised Solomon wisdom, wealth, and fame. (See: [promise](#), [promised](#))

Putting the needs of others first

There are two additional examples of people putting the needs of others in front of their own needs. God is pleased with people wanting to do their job well more than wanting to be blessed. A mother will put the life of her child above every other concern. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

1 Kings 3:1

General Information:

Solomon marries an Egyptian.

Solomon allied himself by marriage with Pharaoh king of Egypt

Solomon became the son-in-law of Pharaoh king of Egypt so the two kings would work together and fight together against their enemies.

until he had finished building

She was still in the city of David after he had finished building.

the house of Yahweh

“the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- consume, devour
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- of Yahweh
- David
- of Egypt
- Now Solomon
- live in the part of Jerusalem called
- the king
- Solomon's workers had finished
- his house, the temple
- his house, the temple

ULT

¹ Solomon allied himself by marriage with Pharaoh king of Egypt. He took Pharaoh's daughter and brought her into the city of David until he had finished building his own house, the house of Yahweh, and the wall around Jerusalem.

UST

¹ [Now Solomon](#) made an agreement to marry the daughter of Pharaoh, [the king of Egypt](#). Then Solomon brought the king's daughter to [live in the part of Jerusalem called](#) the city of [David](#). She lived there until [Solomon's workers had finished](#) building [his house, the temple of Yahweh](#), and the wall around Jerusalem.

1 Kings 3:2

no house had yet been built

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one had yet built a house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for the name” refers to worshiping the person. Alternate translation: “in which people would worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- house

Translation Words - UST

- of Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- were still offering sacrifices
- the temple

ULT

² The people were sacrificing at the high places, because no house had yet been built for the name of Yahweh.

UST

² At that time [the temple of Yahweh](#) had not yet been built, so [the Israelite people were still offering sacrifices](#) at many other places of worship.

1 Kings 3:3

walking in the statutes of David his father

How one lives one's life is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: "obeying the laws that David his father had made" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- Yahweh
- David
- Solomon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- loved
- Yahweh
- David
- Solomon
- his father
- But he also offered sacrifices

ULT

³ Solomon showed his love for Yahweh by walking in the statutes of David his father, except that he sacrificed and burned incense at the high places.

UST

³ [Solomon](#) [loved](#) [Yahweh](#), and he obeyed all the instructions that [his father David](#) had given him. [But he also offered sacrifices](#) and burned incense at various places.

1 Kings 3:4

General Information:

God asks Solomon what he can do for Solomon.

the great high place

“the most famous place for makings sacrifices” or “the most important altar”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- that was where a very famous place...worship was
- to the city of Gibeon
- went
- One day the king
- whole burnt sacrifices there

ULT

⁴ The king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there, for that was the great high place there. Solomon offered a thousand burnt offerings on that altar.

UST

⁴ [One day the king went to the city of Gibeon](#) to offer a sacrifice there, because [that was where a very famous place of worship was](#). He offered a thousand [whole burnt sacrifices there](#).

1 Kings 3:5

Ask! What should I give you?

"Ask me for whatever you want and I will give it to you." or "What do you want? Ask and I will give it to you."

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He asked him](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [me](#)

ULT

⁵ Yahweh appeared at Gibeon to Solomon in a dream by night; he said, "Ask! What should I give you?"

UST

⁵ That night, [Yahweh](#) appeared to him at Gibeon in a dream. [He asked him](#), "What would you like [me](#) to give to you?"

1 Kings 3:6

General Information:

Solomon responds to God's question.

You have shown great covenant faithfulness to your servant

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithful" or "faithfully." Alternate translation: "You have been very faithful to your covenant with your servant" or "You have greatly and faithfully loved your servant" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

because he walked before you in trustworthiness, in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart

Walking is a metaphor for the way one lives. The abstract nouns "trustworthiness," "righteousness," and "uprightness" can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "because he was trustworthy and righteous, and his heart was upright" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

in uprightness of heart

A sincere person is spoken of as one whose heart is upright. Alternate translation: "he was sincere" or "he spoke the truth and did what was good" (See: [Metaphor](#))

have given him a son

The "son" is Solomon. (See: [Pronouns](#))

to sit on his throne

Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: "to rule in his place" (See: [Metonymy](#))

today

Solomon is speaking of the years he had already been ruling, not of the time since the sun had last set.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [throne](#), [enthroned](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

⁶ So Solomon said, "You have shown great covenant faithfulness to your servant, David my father, because he walked before you in trustworthiness, in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart. You have kept for him this great covenant faithfulness and have given him a son to sit on his throne today.

UST

⁶ [Solomon](#) replied, "You always greatly [and faithfully loved my father David](#), [who served you well](#). You did that because he was faithful to you [and acted](#) righteously [and honestly](#) toward you. And you have shown how greatly and faithfully you loved him by giving me to him, [his son](#), and now I am ruling [as he did before he died](#).

Translation Words - UST

- his son
- and honestly
- and faithfully loved
- David
- Solomon
- my father
- as he did before he died
- and acted
- who served you well

1 Kings 3:7

General Information:

Solomon asks for wisdom.

your servant

Solomon speaks as if he is another person to show respect to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [Pronouns](#))

I am only a little child

Solomon is saying that he is like a child who does not know as much as a father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I do not know how to go out or come in

This is an idiom that means Solomon does not know how to govern as king. Alternate translation: “I do not know how to be the king” or “I do not know the right way to do things as king” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my God](#)
- [Now, Yahweh](#)
- [like my father was](#)
- [like my father was](#)
- [me](#)
- [I am very young, like a little child](#)
- [do...know](#)
- [how to](#)

ULT

⁷ Now Yahweh my God, you have made your servant king in the place of David my father, though I am only a little child. I do not know how to go out or come in.

UST

⁷ [Now, Yahweh my God](#), you have enabled [me](#) to be the king [like my father was](#). But [I am very young, like a little child](#). I do not [know how to](#) rule my people at all.

1 Kings 3:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- They
- I

ULT

⁸ Your servant is in the midst of the people whom you have chosen, a great people, too numerous to be numbered or counted.

UST

⁸ I live among [the people](#) whom you have chosen. [They](#) are a very large group of people. There are very, very many of them; no one can count them.

1 Kings 3:9

For who is able to judge this great people of yours?

Solomon asks a question to emphasize that he knows that no one can judge. Alternate translation: “No one is able to judge this great people of yours.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- to think clearly
- in order that I may rule
- rule
- good
- your people well
- group of people
- I will

ULT

⁹ So give your servant an understanding heart to judge your people, so that I may discern between good and evil. For who is able to judge this great people of yours?”

UST

⁹ So please enable me [to think clearly](#), [in order that I may rule your people well](#). Enable me to know what is [good](#) and what is evil. If you do not do that, [I will](#) never be able to [rule](#) this great [group of people](#) who belong to you.”

1 Kings 3:10

General Information:

God gives Solomon wisdom and more.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Solomon had requested

ULT

¹⁰ This request of Solomon pleased the Lord.

UST

¹⁰ [Yahweh](#) was very pleased that [Solomon had requested](#) that.

1 Kings 3:11

the life of your enemies

The “life” is a metonym for the power to kill. Alternate translation: “the power to kill your enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- judge, judgment
- adversary, enemy
- understand, understanding, thinking

Translation Words - UST

- be able to kill all
- God
- and to do what is right while you govern these people
- your enemies
- will be able to know

ULT

11 So God said to him, “Because you have asked this thing and have not asked for yourself long life or riches or the life of your enemies, but have asked for yourself understanding to discern justice.

UST

11 [God](#) said to him, “You did not request that you live for many years or that you become very rich or that you [be able to kill all your enemies](#). Instead, you have requested that I enable you to be wise, in order that you [will be able to know and to do what is right while you govern these people](#).

1 Kings 3:12

now I will do all you asked of me when you gave me your request

"I will do what you asked me to do when you spoke with me"

I give you a wise and an understanding heart

The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks and desires.
Alternate translation: "I make you able to be wise and to understand many things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be very wise](#)
- [be very wise](#)

ULT

¹² See, now I will do all you asked of me when you gave me your request. I give you a wise and an understanding heart, so that there has been no one like you before you, and no one like you will rise up after you.

UST

¹² So I will certainly do what you requested. I will enable you to [be very wise](#). The result will be that no one who has lived before you or who will live after you will be as wise as you are.

1 Kings 3:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- and honored
- king

ULT

¹³ I have also given you what you have not asked, both riches and honor, so that there will not be any among the kings like you all your days.

UST

¹³ I will also give you things that you did not request. I will enable you to become very rich and honored, all of the years that you live. You will be richer and more honored than any other king.

1 Kings 3:14

walk in my ways to keep

Living one's life is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: "live as I want you to live and obey" (See: [Metaphor](#))

lengthen your days

"make you live a long time"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- statute
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- obey all...laws and commandments
- as your...David did
- father
- as I want you to
- you conduct your life
- my

ULT

¹⁴ If you will walk in my ways to keep my statutes and my commandments, as your father David walked, then I will lengthen your days."

UST

¹⁴ If [you conduct your life as I want you to](#), and if you [obey all my laws and commandments, as your father David did](#), I will enable you to live for many years."

1 Kings 3:15

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Solomon saw something interesting.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- feast, feasting
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- dream

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- sacred chest was
- Then Solomon
- Then
- Then he made a feast for...his
- and he offered many sacrifices that were completely burned on the altar
- officials
- and he realized that God had spoken to him in a dream

ULT

¹⁵ Then Solomon awoke, and behold, it was a dream. He came to Jerusalem and stood before the ark of the covenant of the Lord. He offered up burnt offerings and peace offerings, and made a feast for all his servants.

UST

¹⁵ Then Solomon awoke, and he realized that God had spoken to him in a dream. Then he went to Jerusalem and stood in front of the sacred tent where the sacred chest was, and he offered many sacrifices that were completely burned on the altar and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh. Then he made a feast for all his officials.

1 Kings 3:16

General Information:

Two prostitutes ask Solomon to make a decision.

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- King Solomon

ULT

16 Then two women who were prostitutes came to the king and stood before him.

UST

16 One day two prostitutes came and stood in front of [King Solomon](#).

1 Kings 3:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- temple
- temple

Translation Words - UST

- Your Majesty
- in the same house
- while she was there in the house

ULT

¹⁷ One woman said, "Oh, my master, this woman and I live in the same house, and I gave birth to a child with her in the house.

UST

¹⁷ One of them said, "[Your Majesty](#), this woman and I live [in the same house](#). I gave birth to a baby [while she was there in the house](#).

1 Kings 3:18

General Information:

The two prostitutes tell Solomon their story.

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were in the house](#)
- [There was no one else there](#)

ULT

18 It happened on the third day after I gave birth that this woman also gave birth. We were together. There was no one else with us in the house, but only the two of us in the house.

UST

18 On the third day after my baby was born, this woman also gave birth to a baby. Only the two of us [were in the house](#). [There was no one else there](#).

1 Kings 3:19

lay on him

It may be helpful to state that this caused the baby to die. Alternate translation: "accidentally rolled on top of her baby and smothered him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [baby](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

19 Then this woman's son died in the night, because she lay on him.

UST

19 But one night this woman's [baby died](#) because she accidentally rolled on top of her baby and smothered it.

1 Kings 3:20

your servant

The woman speaks as if she were speaking of someone else to show that she respects Solomon. Alternate translation: "I" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- baby
- baby
- and brought her dead

ULT

²⁰ So she arose at midnight and took my son from beside me, while your servant slept, and laid him at her breast, and laid her dead son at my breast.

UST

²⁰ So she got up at midnight and took my [baby](#) boy who was lying beside me while I was sleeping. She carried him to her bed [and brought her dead baby](#) and put it in my bed.

1 Kings 3:21

General Information:

Two prostitutes continue to share their story with Solomon.

nurse my child

This means to feed her baby milk from her breast.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- my baby
- baby

ULT

21 When I rose in the morning to nurse my child, he was dead. But when I had looked at him carefully in the morning, he was not my son, whom I had borne."

UST

21 When I awoke the next morning and was ready to nurse [my baby](#), I saw that it was dead. But when I looked at it closely in the morning light, I saw that it was not my [baby](#)!"

1 Kings 3:22

before the king

"before Solomon" or "while Solomon could see and hear them"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- is alive is mine
- is alive is mine
- and the baby
- The baby
- baby is yours
- Then the first woman
- is dead is yours
- the dead
- king

ULT

²² Then the other woman said, "No, the living one is my son, and the dead one is your son." The first woman said, "No, the dead one is your son, and the living one is my son." This is how they spoke before the king.

UST

²² But the other woman said, "That is not true! The baby that is alive is mine, and the baby that is dead is yours!" Then the first woman said, "No, the dead baby is yours, and the one that is alive is mine!" And they continued to argue in front of the king.

1 Kings 3:23

General Information:

Solomon makes a decision for the two women.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- is alive
- that...is dead is yours
- Both of you
- My baby
- is the one...and the one that
- that...is dead is yours
- is the one...and the one that
- that...is dead is yours
- Then the king

ULT

²³ Then the king said, "One of you says, 'This is my son who is alive, and your son is dead,' and the other says, 'No, your son is the dead one, and my son is the living one.'"

UST

²³ Then the king said, "Both of you are saying, 'My baby is the one that is alive and the one that is dead is yours.'"

1 Kings 3:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- a sword
- So he
- king

ULT

²⁴ The king said, "Bring me a sword." So they brought a sword before the king.

UST

²⁴ [So he](#) said to one of his servants, "Bring me [a sword](#)." So the servant brought a sword to the [king](#).

1 Kings 3:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- children, child, offspring
- king, kingdom, kingship
- decree, decreed

Translation Words - UST

- is alive
- the baby that
- Then the king
- Cut

ULT

²⁵ Then the king said, "Divide the living child in two, and give half to this woman and half to the other."

UST

²⁵ Then the king said to the servant, "Cut the baby that is alive into two parts. Give one part to each of the women."

1 Kings 3:26

General Information:

The real mother asks the king to spare the child's life.

her heart was full of compassion for her son

This speaks of the woman having a lot of compassion as if her heart were a container and compassion were a solid object. Alternate translation: "she greatly loved her baby" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- decree, decreed

Translation Words - UST

- was alive
- is alive
- No, Your Majesty
- baby
- the baby
- Do not allow him to kill
- the king
- cut it in half. Then it will

ULT

²⁶ Then the woman whose son was alive spoke to the king, for her heart was full of compassion for her son, and she said, "Oh, my master, give her the living child, and by no means kill him." But the other woman said, "He shall be neither mine nor yours. Divide him."

UST

²⁶ But the woman whose [baby was alive](#) greatly loved her baby, so she said to [the king](#), "[No, Your Majesty! Do not allow him to kill the baby!](#)" Give her the child that [is alive!](#)" But the other woman said to the king, "No, [cut it in half. Then it will](#) not be her baby or my baby."

1 Kings 3:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Do...cut the baby in half
- Do...cut the baby in half
- the king

ULT

²⁷ Then the king answered and said, "Give the first woman the living child, and by no means kill him. She is his mother."

UST

²⁷ Then [the king](#) said to the servant, "Do not kill the baby. Give the baby to the woman who said, 'Do not [cut the baby in half](#),' because she is truly the baby's mother."

1 Kings 3:28

all Israel

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Translation Words - UST

- the king...and they had an awesome respect
- God had truly enabled him
- the Israelite people
- to judge people's matters fairly
- the king...and they had an awesome respect
- the king...and they had an awesome respect
- had decided...that

ULT

²⁸ When all Israel heard of the judgment which the king had rendered, they feared the king, because they saw that the wisdom of God was in him for giving judgments.

UST

²⁸ All [the Israelite people](#) heard about what [the king had decided](#), [and they had an awesome respect](#) for him. They realized [that God had truly enabled him](#) to be very wise, [to judge people's matters fairly](#).

1 Kings 4

1 Kings 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter names the important people in Solomon's government and shows the extent of his kingdom.

1 Kings 4:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a list of Solomon's officials. The list ends in 1 Kings 4:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- Solomon
- was king
- Solomon

ULT

¹ King Solomon was king over all Israel.

UST

¹ Now when [Solomon was king](#) over all [Israel](#),

1 Kings 4:2

Azariah...Zadok

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- Azariah
- was the priest
- were his most important officials

ULT

² These were his officials: Azariah son of Zadok was the priest.

UST

² these [were his most important officials](#): [Azariah](#), whose father was Zadok, [was the priest](#).

1 Kings 4:3

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of Solomon's officials.

Elihoreph...Ahijah...Shisha...Jehoshaphat...Ahilud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were the official secretaries](#)
- [sons](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

³ Elihoreph and Ahijah sons of Shisha, were secretaries. Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the recorder.

UST

³ Shisha's [sons](#) Elihoreph and Ahijah [were the official secretaries](#). Ahilud's [son Jehoshaphat](#) was the one who announced to the people the king's decisions.

1 Kings 4:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of Solomon's officials.

Benaiah...Jehoiada...Zadok...Abiathar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benaiah was](#)
- [were also priests](#)

ULT

⁴ Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the army. Zadok and Abiathar were priests.
[1]

UST

⁴ [Benaiah was](#) the army commander. Zadok and Abiathar [were also priests](#).

1 Kings 4:5

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of Solomon's officials.

Azariah...Nathan...Zabud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Azariah
- sons
- chief
- and the king's

ULT

⁵ Azariah son of Nathan was over the officers. Zabud son of Nathan was a priest and the king's friend.

UST

⁵ [Azariah](#), whose father was Nathan, was in charge of the governors. Another of Nathan's [sons](#), Zabud, was a priest [and the king's chief](#) advisor.

1 Kings 4:6

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list of Solomon's officials.

Ahishar...Adoniram...Abda

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the men who were subjected to forced labor

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the men whom Solomon forced to work for him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abda's son](#)
- [the servants who worked in the palace](#)

ULT

⁶ Ahishar was over the household.
Adoniram son of Abda was over the
men who were subjected to forced
labor.

UST

⁶ Ahishar supervised [the servants who worked in the palace](#). [Abda's son](#)
Adoniram supervised the men who
were forced to do work for the king.

1 Kings 4:7

General Information:

This begins a list of Solomon's 12 officers. The list ends in 1 Kings 4:19.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the districts in Israel
- king
- the others who lived and worked in the palace. Each man was required

ULT

⁷ Solomon had twelve officers over all Israel, who provided food for the king and his household. Each man had to make provision for one month in the year.

UST

⁷ Solomon appointed twelve men to govern [the districts in Israel](#). They also were required to provide food for the [king](#) and all [the others who lived and worked in the palace. Each man was required](#) to provide from his own district the food for one month in each year.

1 Kings 4:8

Ben-Hur

This is the name of a man. Note that “Ben” before a name means “son of” so “Ben-Hur” means “the son of Hur.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the hill country

“who was the officer in charge of the hill country

Ephraim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [names were](#)
- [of the tribe of Ephraim](#)

ULT

⁸ These were their names: Ben-Hur, in the hill country of Ephraim;

UST

⁸ Their [names were](#): Ben-Hur, for the hill area [of the tribe of Ephraim](#).

1 Kings 4:9

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Deker

This is the name of a man. Note that "Ben" before a name means "son of" so "Ben-Deker" means "the son of Deker." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Makaz

"who was the officer in charge of Makaz"

Makaz...Shaalbim...Beth Shemesh...Elon Beth Hanan

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ Ben-Deker in Makaz, Shaalbim, Beth Shemesh, and Elon Beth Hanan;

UST

⁹ Ben-Deker, for the cities of Makaz, Shaalbim, Beth Shemesh, and Elon Bethhanan,

1 Kings 4:10

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Hesed

This is the name of a man. Note that "Ben" before a name means "son of" so "Ben-Hesed" means "the son of Hesed." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Arubboth

"who was the officer in charge of Arubboth"

Arubboth...Sokoh...Hepher

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the area near](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Ben-Hesed, in Arubboth (to him belonged Sokoh and all the land of Hepher);

UST

¹⁰ Ben-Hesed, for the cities of Arubboth and Sokoh [and the area near](#) the city of Hepher,

1 Kings 4:11

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Abinadab

This is the name of a man. Note that "Ben" before a name means "son of" so "Ben-Abinadab" means "the son of Abinadab." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in all Naphoth Dor

"who was the officer in charge of all Naphoth Dor"

Naphoth Dor

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Taphath

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)

ULT

¹¹ Ben-Abinadab, in all Naphoth Dor (he had Taphath the daughter of Solomon as his wife);

UST

¹¹ Ben-Abinadab, who was married to [Solomon's](#) daughter Taphath, for all the district of Dor,

1 Kings 4:12

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Baana...Ahilud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Taanach

"who was the officer in charge of Taanach"

Taanach...Megiddo...Beth Shan...Zarethan...Jezreel... Beth Shan to Abel Meholah...Jokmeam

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹² Baana son of Ahilud, in Taanach and Megiddo, and all Beth Shan that is beside Zarethan below Jezreel, from Beth Shan to Abel Meholah as far as the other side of Jokmeam;

UST

¹² Ahilud's [son](#) Baana, for the cities of Taanach and Megiddo, for all the region near the city of Zarethan, and from the city of Beth Shan south of Jezreel as far as the cities of Abel Meholah and Jokmeam,

1 Kings 4:13

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ben-Geber...Jair...Manasseh

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Ramoth Gilead

"who was the officer in charge of Ramoth Gilead"

Ramoth Gilead...Argob...Bashan

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#) (2)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who was a descendant of](#) (2)
- [and bronze bars](#)

ULT

¹³ Ben-Geber, in Ramoth Gilead (to him belonged the towns of Jair son of Manasseh, that are in Gilead, and the region of Argob belonged to him, which is in Bashan, sixty great cities with walls and bronze gate bars);

UST

¹³ Ben-Geber, for the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead, for the villages in Gilead that belonged to Jair, [who was a descendant of](#) Manasseh, and for the area of Argob in the region of Bashan. There were sixty large cities in that region altogether, each city with a wall around it [and bronze bars](#) across the gates.

1 Kings 4:14

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ahinadab...Iddo

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Mahanaim

"who was the officer in charge of Mahanaim"

Mahanaim

This is the name of place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Ahinadab son of Iddo, in Mahanaim;

UST

¹⁴ Iddo's [son](#) Ahinadab, for the city of Mahanaim east of the Jordan River;

1 Kings 4:15

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Ahimaaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Naphtali

"who was the officer in charge of Naphtali"

Naphtali

This is a tribal land named after a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Basemath

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Ahimaaz, in Naphtali (he also married Basemath the daughter of Solomon as his wife);

UST

¹⁵ Ahimaaz, who had married [Solomon's](#) daughter Basemath, for the territory of the tribe of Naphtali,

1 Kings 4:16

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Baana...Hushai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Asher

"who was the officer in charge of Asher"

Asher

This is a tribal land named after a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bealoth

This is the name of a piece of land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Baana son of Hushai, in Asher and Bealoth;

UST

¹⁶ Hushai's [son](#) Baana, for the territory of the tribe of Asher and for the city of Aloth,

1 Kings 4:17

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Jehoshaphat...Paruah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Issachar

"who was the officer in charge of Issachar"

Issachar

This is a tribal land named after a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Jehoshaphat son of Paruah, in Issachar;

UST

¹⁷ Paruah's [son Jehoshaphat](#), for the territory of the tribe of Issachar,

1 Kings 4:18

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers continues.

Shimei...Ela

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Benjamin

"who was the officer in charge of Benjamin"

Benjamin

This is a tribal land named for a son of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Shimei son of Ela, in Benjamin;

UST

¹⁸ Ela's [son](#) Shimei, for the territory of the tribe of Benjamin,

1 Kings 4:19

Connecting Statement:

The list of Solomon's 12 officers ends.

Geber...Uri...Sihon...Og

These are men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Gilead

"who was the officer in charge of the land of Gilead"

Gilead...Bashan

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the country of Sihon

"the land that in earlier years belonged to Sihon"

Amorites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land

Here "the land" refers to the land of Judah; the previous officials presided over different parts of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Bashan](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [the Amor people group](#)
- [the region of Bashan](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [formerly ruled](#) (2)
- [the land](#)

ULT

¹⁹ and Geber son of Uri, in the land of Gilead, the country of Sihon king of the Amorites and of Og king of Bashan, and he was the only official who was in the land.

UST

¹⁹ Uri's [son](#) Geber, for the region of Gilead, [the land](#) that Sihon [the king of the Amor people group formerly ruled](#), and Og who formerly ruled [the region of Bashan](#). In addition to all these, Solomon appointed one governor for the territory of the tribe of Judah.

1 Kings 4:20

Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand by the sea

The speaker uses exaggeration to say that there were so many people that it would be impossible to count them all. The words “Judah” and “Israel” are metonyms for the people who lived in Judah and Israel. Alternate translation: “There were as many people in Judah and Israel as there are grains of sand by the sea” or “there were more people in Judah and Israel than a person could count” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Judah](#)
- [to eat](#)

ULT

²⁰ Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand by the sea. They were eating and drinking and were happy.

UST

²⁰ There were as many people [in Judah](#) and Israel as there are grains of sand on the seashore. They had plenty [to eat](#) and drink, and they were happy.

1 Kings 4:21

the River

“the Euphrates River”

Translation Words - ULT

- dominion
- Philistines
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon
- earth, earthen, earthly
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- dominion
- Philistines
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon
- earth, earthen, earthly
- grain offering

ULT

21 Solomon ruled over all the kingdoms from the River to the land of the Philistines and to the border of Egypt. They brought tribute and served Solomon all the days of his life.

UST

21 Solomon’s kingdom extended from the Euphrates River in the northeast to the region of Philistia in the west and to the border of Egypt in the south. The conquered people in those areas paid taxes and were under Solomon’s control all during his life.

1 Kings 4:22

thirty cors

A cor is a unit of dry measure. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

²² Solomon's provision for one day was thirty cors of fine flour and sixty cors of meal,

UST

²² The people whom Solomon ruled were required to bring to Solomon every day thirty donkey-loads of fine flour and sixty donkey-loads of wheat,

1 Kings 4:23

deer, gazelles, roebucks

four-legged animals that run fast (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

deer

more than one of these animals

fattened fowl

“birds that people fed so they would become fat”

Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

ULT

²³ ten fat oxen, twenty oxen out of the pastures, and one hundred sheep, besides deer, gazelles, roebucks, and fattened fowl.

UST

²³ ten head of cattle that had been raised in stalls, twenty head of cattle raised in pastures, one hundred sheep, grain-fed poultry—and wild game: deer, gazelle, and roebucks.

1 Kings 4:24

Tiphsah

name of a piece of land

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

24 For he had dominion over all the region on this side of the River, from Tiphsah as far as to Gaza, over all the kings on this side the River, and he had peace on all sides around him.

UST

24 Solomon ruled over all the area west of the Euphrates River, from the city of Tiphsah in the northeast to the city of Gaza in the southwest. He ruled over all the kings in that area. There was peace between his government and the governments of nearby countries.

1 Kings 4:25

Judah and Israel

The words “Judah” and “Israel” are metonyms for the people of Judah and Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

every man under his vine and under his fig tree

“each family had their own garden with grapevines and fig trees,”
This showed that the people lived in safety and peace, since they were not at war and had time to grow their gardens.

from Dan to Beersheba

This represents the whole land of Israel from Dan in the north to Beersheba in the south. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fig](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fig](#)

ULT

²⁵ Judah and Israel lived in safety, every man under his vine and under his fig tree, from Dan to Beersheba, all the days of Solomon.

UST

²⁵ All during the years that Solomon ruled, the people of Judah and Israel lived safely.

1 Kings 4:26

stalls of horses

A stall is a place where an animal such as a horse is kept and cared for.

Translation Words - ULT

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

ULT

²⁶ Solomon had forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen.

UST

²⁶ Solomon had forty thousand stalls for the horses that pulled his chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on horses.

1 Kings 4:27

who came to King Solomon's table

"who ate with King Solomon" or "whom King Solomon invited to eat with him"

every man in his month

Solomon had assigned 12 officers in [1 Kings 4:7](#) to bring him food in different months.

They let nothing be lacking

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "They provided everything that Solomon needed" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁷ Those officers provided food for King Solomon and for all who came to King Solomon's table, every man in his month. They let nothing be lacking.

UST

²⁷ His twelve district governors supplied the food that King Solomon needed for himself and for all those who ate in the palace. Each governor supplied food for one month each year. They provided everything that Solomon required.

1 Kings 4:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Translation Words - UST

- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

ULT

²⁸ They also brought to the proper place barley and straw for the chariot horses and riding horses, each one bringing in what he was able.

UST

²⁸ They also brought stalks of barley and wheat for the fast horses that pulled the chariots and for the other work horses. They brought this fodder to the places where the horses were kept.

1 Kings 4:29

God gave Solomon great wisdom and understanding

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “understanding” can be translated as verbs. God giving him these things means that God enabled him to have these qualities. Alternate translation: “God enabled Solomon to be wise and to understand many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Idiom](#))

wideness of understanding like the sand on the seashore

Solomon was able to understand many things about many different subjects. The abstract noun “wideness” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “Solomon was able to understand many things about a wide range of subjects” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [understand](#), [understanding](#), [thinking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [understand](#), [understanding](#), [thinking](#)

ULT

²⁹ God gave Solomon great wisdom and understanding, and wideness of understanding like the sand on the seashore.

UST

²⁹ God enabled Solomon to be extremely wise and to have great understanding. He enjoyed learning about a huge number of things.

1 Kings 4:30

Solomon's wisdom exceeded the wisdom of all the people

"Solomon was wiser than all the wise people"

the people of the east

This refers to people from countries east of Israel such as Arabia and Mesopotamia.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon

ULT

³⁰ Solomon's wisdom exceeded the wisdom of all the people of the east and all the wisdom of Egypt.

UST

³⁰ He was wiser than all the wise men in the regions east of Israel, and all the wise men in Egypt.

1 Kings 4:31

Ethan...Heman...Kalkol...Darda...Mahol

men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

³¹ He was wiser than all men—than Ethan the Ezrahite, Heman, Kalkol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol—and his fame reached all the surrounding nations.

UST

³¹ Ethan from Ezrah and Heman and Kalkol and Darda and the sons of Mahol were considered to be very wise, but Solomon was wiser than all of them. People in all the nearby countries heard about Solomon.

1 Kings 4:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³² He spoke three thousand proverbs and his songs were one thousand and five in number.

UST

³² He composed more than one thousand songs.

1 Kings 4:33

cedar...hyssop

These words form a merism that includes all plants. Alternate translation: “cedar tree...hyssop bush” or “the greatest of trees...least important of bushes” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

³³ He described the plants, from the cedar that is in Lebanon to the hyssop that grows out of the wall. He explained also about beasts, birds, creeping things, and fish.

UST

³³ He talked about various kinds of plants, from the huge cedar trees in Lebanon to the tiny hyssop plants that grow in cracks in walls. He also talked about wild animals, birds, reptiles, and fish.

1 Kings 4:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

³⁴ People came from all the nations to hear the wisdom of Solomon. They came from all kings of the earth who had heard of his wisdom.

4:4 ^[1] Some versions treat *Zadok and Abiathar were priests* as a later addition to the text.

UST

³⁴ People came from all over the world to hear the wise things that Solomon said. Many kings sent men to listen to him and then return and tell them what Solomon said.

1 Kings 5

1 Kings 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the description of the building of the temple. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Building the temple

Building the temple took a lot of work and cooperation. King Hiram of Tyre provided lumber for building the temple in exchange for wheat and olive oil. Solomon also had many people cutting rocks for the walls of the temple.

1 Kings 5:1

General Information:

Solomon talks with King Hiram about building the Temple.

Hiram had always loved David

"Hiram had always been a close friend of King David"

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹ Hiram king of Tyre sent his servants to Solomon for he had heard that they had anointed him king in place of his father; for Hiram had always loved David.

UST

¹ Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, had always been a close friend of King David. When he heard that Solomon had been appointed to become the king after his father was no longer king, he sent messengers to Solomon.

1 Kings 5:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)

ULT

² Solomon sent word to Hiram, saying,

UST

² Solomon gave those messengers this message to take back to Hiram:

1 Kings 5:3

Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet

To put an enemy under someone's foot means to conquer them. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was helping David to defeat his enemies" or "David was busy since Yahweh was giving him victory over his enemies" (See: [Idiom](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word "name" is a metonym for the person, and "for the name" refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "in which people would worship Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

because of the wars that surrounded him

Another possible meaning is "because of the wars with which his enemies surrounded him" or "because he was fighting enemies on all sides"

Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet

This speaks of Yahweh giving David complete control over his enemies as putting them under his feet. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was enabling David to completely defeat his enemies" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

³ "You know that David my father could not build a house for the name of Yahweh his God because of the wars that surrounded him, for during his lifetime Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet.

UST

³ "You know that my father David led his soldiers to fight many wars against his enemies in the nearby countries. So he could not try to build a temple in which we could worship Yahweh our God, until after Yahweh enabled the Israelite army to defeat all his enemies.

1 Kings 5:4

General Information:

Solomon continues to talk with King Hiram about building the Temple.

has given me rest on every side

Before Solomon became king, King David and the people of Israel had been at war, but now King Solomon and the people were at rest and in a time of peace.

There is neither adversary nor disaster

neither humans who cause harm nor natural events that cause harm. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "We are safe from our enemies and from natural disasters" (See: [Merism](#))

adversary

enemy

disaster

event that causes harm to people and their property

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

ULT

⁴ But now, Yahweh my God has given me rest on every side. There is neither adversary nor disaster.

UST

⁴ But now Yahweh our God has enabled us to have peace with all the surrounding countries. There is no danger that we will be attacked.

1 Kings 5:5

So

This is to emphasize the words that follow. "Listen! This is what I am going to do:" or "Because of what Yahweh has done for me, this is what I am going to do:"

for the name of Yahweh my God...for my name

The word "name" is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: "where Yahweh my God will live...where I will live" (See: [Metonymy](#))

set on your throne in your place

Here "throne" refers to ruling as king. Alternate translation: "make to be the king after you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- throne, enthroned
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- throne, enthroned
- house
- house

ULT

⁵ So I intend to build a temple for the name of Yahweh my God, as Yahweh spoke to David my father, saying, 'Your son, whom I will set on your throne in your place, will build the temple for my name.'

UST

⁵ Yahweh promised my father David, 'Your son, whom I will enable to be king after you are no longer king, will build a temple for me, Yahweh your God.'

1 Kings 5:6

General Information:

Solomon continues to talk with King Hiram about building the temple.

there is no one among us who knows how to cut timber like the Sidonians

“your workers know how to cut timber better than my men”

Sidonians

people of the city of Sidon

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Lebanon
- cut off
- cut off
- cedar, cedarwood
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Lebanon
- cut off
- cut off
- cedar, cedarwood
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁶ Now therefore command that they cut cedars from Lebanon for me. My servants will join your servants, and I will pay you for your servants so that you are paid fairly for everything you agreed to do. For you know there is no one among us who knows how to cut timber like the Sidonians.”

UST

⁶ So I am requesting that you command your workers to cut cedar trees for me. My men will work with them, and I will pay your workers whatever you decide. But my men cannot do the work alone, because they do not know how to cut down trees like your workers from the city of Sidon do.”

1 Kings 5:7

General Information:

King Hiram answers Solomon.

the words of Solomon

"what Solomon said"

May Yahweh be blessed today

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I praise Yahweh today" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- wise men, advisor
- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- wise men, advisor
- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

ULT

⁷ When Hiram heard the words of Solomon, he rejoiced greatly and said, "May Yahweh be blessed today, who has given to David a wise son over this great people."

UST

⁷ When Hiram heard the message from Solomon, he was very happy and said, "I praise Yahweh today for giving David a very wise son to rule that great nation!"

1 Kings 5:8

cypress

Cypress is another kind of valuable wood that would be used for building the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- cedar, cedarwood

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- cedar, cedarwood

ULT

⁸ Hiram sent word to Solomon, saying, "I have heard the message that you have sent to me. I will provide all the wood of cedar and cypress that you desire.

UST

⁸ He sent this message back to Solomon, "I have heard the message that you sent to me, and I am ready to do what you ask. I will provide cedar and cypress logs.

1 Kings 5:9

General Information:

King Hiram continues to answer Solomon.

make them into rafts

"tie them together so they will float in groups"

them broken up there

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "my workers untie the logs from each other" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You will do what I desire

"You can do what I want" or "You can pay me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lebanon](#)
- [bread](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lebanon](#)
- [bread](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁹ My servants will bring the trees down from Lebanon to the sea, and I will make them into rafts to go by sea to the place that you direct me. I will have them broken up there, and you will take them away. You will do what I desire by giving food for my household."

UST

⁹ My workers will bring the logs down from the Lebanon mountains to the Mediterranean Sea. Then they will tie them together to make rafts to float them in the water along the coast to the place that you indicate. Then my workers will untie the logs, and your workers will take them from there. What I want you to do is to supply food for my men."

1 Kings 5:10

fir

The word “fir” refers to many kinds of trees, including cypress trees.

Translation Words - ULT

- cedar, cedarwood

Translation Words - UST

- cedar, cedarwood

ULT

10 So Hiram gave Solomon all the timber of cedar and fir that he desired.

UST

10 So Hiram arranged for his workers to supply all the cedar and cypress logs that Solomon wanted.

1 Kings 5:11

measures of wheat

This was a dry measurement whereas the oil was a liquid measurement. It was not clear which measure was intended. The measurement in the UST is an educated guess. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

year by year

"every year"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [olive](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [olive](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

11 Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand measures of wheat for food to his household and twenty measures of pure oil. Solomon gave this to Hiram year by year.

UST

11 Each year Solomon gave Hiram 3,520 cubic meters of wheat and 416,350 liters of pure olive oil to feed his workers.

1 Kings 5:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- cut off
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- cut off
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

¹² Yahweh gave Solomon wisdom, as he promised him. There was peace between Hiram and Solomon, and the two of them made a covenant.

UST

¹² Yahweh enabled Solomon to be wise, just like he had promised. Solomon and Hiram made a treaty.

1 Kings 5:13

General Information:

Solomon forces men to build the Temple.

conscripted labor out of all Israel

“forced men from all over Israel to work”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- tribute, contribution, fined
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- tribute, contribution, fined
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

¹³ King Solomon conscripted labor out of all Israel. The forced laborers numbered thirty thousand men.

UST

¹³ King Solomon forced thirty thousand men from all over Israel to become his workers.

1 Kings 5:14

in shifts

That is, there were three groups that took turns spending one month in Lebanon and two months at home.

One month they were in Lebanon and two months at home

Each of the three groups spent one month working in Lebanon and then two months at home in Israel.

the men who were subjected to forced labor

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the men whom Solomon was forcing to work for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)

ULT

14 He sent them to Lebanon, ten thousand a month in shifts. One month they were in Lebanon and two months at home. Adoniram was over the men who were subjected to forced labor.

UST

14 Adoniram was their boss. Solomon divided the men into three groups. Each month ten thousand of them went to Lebanon and worked for a month there, and then they came back home for two months.

1 Kings 5:15

General Information:

Solomon continues to force men to build the Temple.

seventy thousand

"70,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

burdens

heavy things that people have to work hard to carry

eighty thousand

"80,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

stonecutters

men who dig stones out of the ground and cut them to the proper shape

ULT

¹⁵ Solomon had seventy thousand who carried burdens and eighty thousand who were stonecutters in the mountains,

UST

¹⁵ Solomon also forced eighty thousand men to cut stones in the hill country and seventy thousand men to haul the stones to Jerusalem.

1 Kings 5:16

3,300 chief officers

“three thousand three hundred chief officers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- chief

ULT

¹⁶ besides Solomon's 3,300 chief officers who were over the work and who supervised the workers.

UST

¹⁶ He also assigned 3,300 men to supervise their work.

1 Kings 5:17

General Information:

Solomon continues to force men to build the temple.

quarried large stones of high quality

“dug large, good stones out of the mountain and cut them to be the right shape”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

17 At the king's command they quarried large stones of high quality with which to lay the foundation of the temple.

UST

17 The king also commanded his workers to cut huge blocks of stones from the quarries and to smooth the sides of the stones. These huge stones were for the foundation of the temple.

1 Kings 5:18

Gebalites

men from the city of Gebal (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹⁸ So Solomon's builders and Hiram's builders and the Gebalites did the cutting and prepared the timber and the stones to build the temple.

UST

¹⁸ Solomon's workers and Hiram's workers and men from the city of Gebal shaped the stones and prepared the timber to build the temple.

1 Kings 6

1 Kings 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Building the temple

Solomon built the temple in seven years. The outside walls were made of rock. Solomon shaped the rocks for the wall in the quarry and then assembled them at the temple site. The inside was covered with wood. Inside the temple was a room covered by gold, which was the Most Holy Place where the ark was housed under statues of angels. It represented the presence of God.

1 Kings 6:1

General Information:

The narrator describes the temple and its dimensions. This description continues through 1 Kings 6:38.

Solomon began to build

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building. Alternate translation: “Solomon commanded his workers to begin building” (See: [Metonymy](#))

480th...fourth

These are the ordinal forms of 480 and 4. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the month of Ziv, which is the second month

“Ziv” is the name of the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon
- reign, rule
- new moon
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the temple
- the Israelite people
- Israel
- Egypt
- Solomon's workers
- ruled
- month
- the temple

ULT

¹ So Solomon began to build the temple of Yahweh. This happened in the 480th year after the people of Israel came out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv, which is the second month.

UST

¹ 480 years after [the Israelite people](#) left [Egypt](#), during the fourth year that Solomon [ruled Israel](#), in the second [month](#), that of Ziv, [Solomon's workers](#) began to build [the temple](#).

1 Kings 6:2

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high

“60 cubits long, 20 cubits wide, and 30 cubits high.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. This can be written used modern measures. Alternate translation: “27.6 meters long, 9.2 meters wide, and 13.8 meters high” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [household](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)
- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)
- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)
- [Inside, the main part of the temple](#)

ULT

² The temple that King Solomon built for Yahweh was sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high.

UST

² [Inside, the main part of the temple](#) was twenty-seven meters long, nine meters wide, and thirteen and one-half meters high.

1 Kings 6:3

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

portico

an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building's entrance door. This portico was probably attached to the front part of the wall that surrounded the temple.

twenty cubits...ten cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters...4.6 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The front portico](#)
- [The front portico](#)
- [just as wide](#)
- [as the main part of the temple](#)
- [The front portico](#)
- [deep and nine meters](#)
- [as the main part of the temple](#)

ULT

³ The portico in front of the temple's main hall was twenty cubits in length, equal to the width of the temple, and ten cubits deep in front of the temple.

UST

³ [The front portico](#) was four and one-half meters [deep and nine meters](#) wide, [just as wide as the main part of the temple](#).

1 Kings 6:4

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

he made windows

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "they made windows" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in the temple walls](#)

ULT

⁴ For the house he made windows with frames that made them more narrow at the outside than on the inside.

UST

⁴ There were openings like windows [in the temple walls](#). The openings were narrower on the outside than on the inside.

1 Kings 6:5

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

he built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: “they built” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he built rooms around it

He built rooms on the outside of the outside wall around the main chamber.

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁵ Against the walls of the main chamber he built rooms around it, around both the outer room and the inner room. He built rooms all around the sides.

UST

⁵ Against the two sides and the back of [the temple](#) walls, they built a structure that had rooms in it. This structure had three levels; each level was two and one-third meters high.

1 Kings 6:6

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

he made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "they made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

The lowest story...the middle...the third

This refers to the rooms in each story of the building.

five cubits...six cubits...seven cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 2.3 meters...about 2.8 meters...about 3.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

he made offsets in the wall of the house

They made ledges all around the main building to support the beams of the small rooms.

beams

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building.

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The wall of the temple](#)
- [the rooms](#)

ULT

⁶ The lowest story was five cubits wide, the middle was six cubits wide, and the third was seven cubits wide. For on the outside he made offsets in the wall of the house all around so that the beams would not be inserted in the walls of the house.

UST

⁶ Each room in the lowest level was two and one-third meters wide. Each room in the middle level was two and four-fifths meters wide. The rooms in the top level were three and one-tenth meters wide. [The wall of the temple](#) at the top level was thinner than the wall at the middle level, and the wall of the middle level was thinner than the wall at the bottom level. In this way, the rooms could rest on the wall underneath them; [the rooms](#) did not need wooden beams underneath to support them.

1 Kings 6:7

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple.

the house

Here "house" refers to God's house, the temple.

stones prepared at the quarry

A quarry is where people cut large stones from a mountain and shape them with tools so they are smooth. After they prepared the stones at the quarry, they brought them to the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [household](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the temple](#)
- [for the foundation of the temple](#)

ULT

⁷ The house was built of stones prepared at the quarry. No hammer, ax, or any iron tool was heard in the house while it was being built.

UST

⁷ The huge stones [for the foundation of the temple](#) were cut and shaped at the quarry to become very smooth. The result was that while the workers were building [the temple](#) there was no noise, because they did not use hammers or chisels or any other iron tools there.

1 Kings 6:8

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple.

ground level...middle level...third level

There were a total of three floors. Some languages call these "ground floor," "first floor," and "second floor."

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the temple](#)

ULT

⁸ On the south side of the temple there was an entrance at the ground level, then one went up by stairs to the middle level, and from the middle to the third level.

UST

⁸ The entrance to the bottom level of this attached structure was on the south side [of the temple](#). There were stairs from the bottom level to the middle and top levels.

1 Kings 6:9

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple.

Solomon built...he covered

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers built...they covered" (See: [Metonymy](#))

beams...of cedar

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:6](#).

planks...of cedar

A plank is a flat wooden board used for floors and walls.

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Solomon's workers finished](#)
- [the temple](#)

ULT

⁹ So Solomon built the temple and finished it; he covered the house with beams and planks of cedar.

UST

⁹ [So Solomon's workers finished](#) building the framework of [the temple](#). They made the ceiling from cedar beams and boards.

1 Kings 6:10

Connecting Statement:

The narrator continues to describe the temple and its dimensions.

He built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "They built" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He built the side rooms

These are the same rooms that are referred to in [1 Kings 6:5](#).

inner chambers

This phrase is a metonym for the walls that enclosed the chambers. Alternate translation: "exterior walls that enclosed the inner chambers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

five cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2.3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

timbers of cedar

The word "timbers" is a general term that refers to wood used for building, such as beams and planks.

Translation Words - ULT

- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cedar beams](#)
- [the rooms](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

10 He built the side rooms against the inner chambers of the temple, each side five cubits high; they were joined to the house with timbers of cedar.

UST

10 They built [the rooms](#) alongside the main chambers with three levels, each two and one-third meters high, and joined them to the [temple](#) with [cedar beams](#).

1 Kings 6:11

The word of Yahweh came to Solomon, saying,

The idiom "The word of Yahweh came to" is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave a message to Solomon. He said," or "Yahweh spoke this message to Solomon:" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

¹¹ The word of Yahweh came to Solomon, saying,

UST

¹¹ [Then Yahweh](#) said this to [Solomon](#),

1 Kings 6:12

which you are building

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "which you are having your workers build"
(See: [Metonymy](#))

walk in my statutes

The word "walk" is a metaphor for "live" or "obey." Alternate translation: "continually obey all my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

do justice

Possible meanings are 1) "carry out all of my laws" or 2) "treat the people whom you are ruling justly."

keep all my commandments and walk in them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the importance of obeying God's commandments. AT "carefully obey all I tell you to do" (See: [Parallelism](#))

I will confirm my promise with you that I had made to David your father

"I will do everything I promised David your father that I would do for you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [continually...all my statutes...and commands](#)
- [you...and decrees](#)
- [David](#)
- [father](#)
- [obey](#)
- [about this temple](#)

ULT

12 "Concerning this temple which you are building, if you walk in my statutes and do justice, keep all my commandments and walk in them, then I will confirm my promise with you that I had made to David your father.

UST

12 "I want to tell you [about this temple](#) that you are building. If you [continually obey all my statutes and decrees and commands](#), I will do for you what I promised to your [father David](#).

1 Kings 6:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite
- the Israelite
- people, in this temple, and I will
- abandon
- people, in this temple, and I will

ULT

¹³ I will live among the people of Israel and will not forsake them."

UST

¹³ I will live among the Israelite people, in this temple, and I will never abandon them."

1 Kings 6:14

Solomon

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)
- [the temple](#)

ULT

14 So Solomon built the house and finished it.

UST

14 [Solomon's](#) workers worked to finish building [the temple](#).

1 Kings 6:15

he built...he covered them...he covered the floor

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "they built...they covered them...they covered the floor" (See: [Metonymy](#))

interior walls

walls between the rooms on the inside

cypress

Cypress is a kind of wood that was used for building the temple.
(See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- cedar, cedarwood
- house
- house
- house
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- from cypress
- rooms
- On the inside, they lined the
- the ceiling
- boards
- from the floor to

ULT

15 Then he built the interior walls of the house with boards of cedar. From the floor of the house to the ceiling, he covered them on the inside with wood, and he covered the floor of the house with cypress boards.

UST

15 [On the inside, they lined the rooms from the floor to the ceiling.](#) They made the floor [from cypress boards.](#)

1 Kings 6:16

He built twenty cubits...He built this room

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do the building.
Alternate translation: "He commanded them to build twenty cubits...
He had them build this room" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He built twenty cubits

"He built a room twenty cubits long"

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the very holy place](#)
- [cedar boards](#)
- [Inside the back part of the temple](#)
- [the very holy place](#)

ULT

16 He built twenty cubits onto the rear of the house with boards of cedar from the floor to the ceiling. He built this room to be the inner room, the most holy place.

UST

16 [Inside the back part of the temple](#) they built an inner room, called [the very holy place](#). It was nine meters long. All the walls of this room were lined with [cedar boards](#).

1 Kings 6:17

forty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "18.4 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

main hall

"main room"

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [In front of the very holy place was](#)
- [In front of the very holy place was](#)

ULT

¹⁷ The main hall, that is, the holy place that was in front of the most holy place, was forty cubits long.

UST

¹⁷ [In front of the very holy place was](#) a room that was eighteen meters long.

1 Kings 6:18

gourds

a type of hard, round vegetable that grows on a vine on the ground

open flowers

“blooming flowers” or “flowers that were open”

Translation Words - ULT

- cedar, cedarwood
- house

Translation Words - UST

- The walls were completely covered with cedar boards
- inside the temple were decorated with...of gourds

ULT

18 There was cedar inside the house, carved in the shape of gourds and open flowers. All was cedar inside. No stonework was visible on the inside.

UST

18 The cedar boards on the walls [inside the temple were decorated with](#) carvings [of gourds](#) and flowers. [The walls were completely covered with cedar boards](#), with the result that the stones of the walls behind them could not be seen.

1 Kings 6:19

Solomon prepared

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They prepared" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chest](#)
- [sacred](#)
- [At the back of the temple they made the very holy place](#)

ULT

19 Solomon prepared the inner room inside the house in order to place the ark of the covenant of Yahweh there.

UST

19 [At the back of the temple they made the very holy place](#), in order to put the [sacred chest](#) there.

1 Kings 6:20

Solomon overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty cubits

"9.2 meters"

covered the altar with cedar wood

This altar would be used for burning incense.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- cedar, cedarwood
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- For burning incense they also made an altar
- of cedar boards
- They...the walls with...of pure gold

ULT

²⁰ The inner room was twenty cubits in length, twenty cubits in width, and twenty cubits in height. Solomon overlaid the walls with pure gold and covered the altar with cedar wood.

UST

²⁰ That room was nine meters long, nine meters wide, and nine meters high. [They](#) covered [the walls with](#) very thin sheets [of pure gold](#). [For burning incense they also made an altar of cedar boards](#).

1 Kings 6:21

Solomon overlaid...he placed

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "They overlaid...they placed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

"covered"

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- and to fasten...chains
- of pure gold
- and to fasten...chains
- gold...across the entrance to the very holy place
- told them to...the other walls inside the temple

ULT

21 Solomon overlaid the inside of the temple with pure gold, and he placed chains of gold across the front of the inner room, and overlaid the front with gold.

UST

21 [Solomon told them to](#) cover [the other walls inside the temple](#) with very thin sheets [of pure gold and to fasten gold chains across the entrance to the very holy place.](#)

1 Kings 6:22

He overlaid...He also overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They overlaid...They also overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

altar that belonged to the inner room

"altar of incense at the entrance to the inner room"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- altar that
- of gold
- very thin
- the temple and the
- all

ULT

²² He overlaid the entire interior with gold until all the temple was finished. He also overlaid with gold the whole altar that belonged to the inner room.

UST

²² They covered [all](#) the walls of [the temple and the altar that](#) was outside the very holy place with [very thin](#) sheets [of gold](#).

1 Kings 6:23

Solomon made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Solomon commanded them to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

olivewood

wood from an olive tree

ten cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "4.6 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [olive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [olive tree](#)

ULT

²³ Solomon made two cherubim of olivewood, each ten cubits high, for the inner room.

UST

²³ Inside the very holy place they made from [olive tree](#) wood large statues of two creatures with wings. Each one was four and one-half meters tall.

1 Kings 6:24

five cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “2.3 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

ULT

24 One wing of the first cherub was five cubits long and its other wing was also five cubits long. So from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other there was a distance of ten cubits.

UST

24-26 They each were the same size and had the same shape. They each had two wings which were spread out. Each wing was two and one-third meters long, with the result that the distance between the outer ends of the two wings was four and one-half meters across. The height of each cherub was four and one-half meters.

1 Kings 6:25

wingspan

the distance from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other wing

same dimensions

“same size”

ULT

²⁵ The other cherub also had a wingspan ten cubits. Both the cherubim were of the same dimensions and shape.

UST

1 Kings 6:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁶ The height of one cherub was ten cubits and the other cherub was the same.

UST

²⁴⁻²⁶ They each were the same size and had the same shape. They each had two wings which were spread out. Each wing was two and one-third meters long, with the result that the distance between the outer ends of the two wings was four and one-half meters across. The height of each cherub was four and one-half meters.

1 Kings 6:27

Solomon placed

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They placed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

innermost room

another name for the most holy place

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [so that the wing of the](#)
- [They put these statues next to](#)

ULT

²⁷ Solomon placed the cherubim in the innermost room. The wings of the cherubim were stretched out so that the wing of one touched one wall and the wing of the other cherub touched the other wall. Their wings touched one another in the middle of the most holy place.

UST

²⁷ [They put these statues next to](#) each other in the very holy place [so that the wing of the](#) one touched the one wing of the other in the center of the room, and the outer wings touched the walls.

1 Kings 6:28

Solomon overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

"covered." See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of gold](#)

ULT

28 Solomon overlaid the cherubim with gold.

UST

28 They covered the statues with very thin sheets [of gold](#).

1 Kings 6:29

He carved

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "He commanded them to carve" (See:

[Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [decorate the walls of the main room](#)

ULT

²⁹ He carved all the walls of the house around about with figures of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers, in the outer and inner rooms.

UST

²⁹ Solomon told them to [decorate the walls of the main room](#) and the very holy place by carving representations of winged creatures and palm trees and flowers.

1 Kings 6:30

Solomon overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "He had them overlay" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

covered

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of gold](#)
- [rooms](#)

ULT

³⁰ Solomon overlaid the floor of the house with gold, in both the outer and inner rooms.

UST

³⁰ They also covered the floor of both [rooms](#) with very thin sheets [of gold](#).

1 Kings 6:31

Solomon made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

lintel

beam across the top of a door frame

indented sections

toothlike notches on each of five sections

Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [olive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [indented sections](#)
- [a set of doors from olive tree](#)

ULT

³¹ Solomon made doors of olivewood for the entrance to the inner room. The lintel and doorposts had five indented sections.

UST

³¹ They made [a set of doors from olive tree](#) wood, and placed them at the entrance to the very holy place. The lintel and doorposts had five [indented sections](#).

1 Kings 6:32

he made...he made...He overlaid...he spread

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "they made...they made...They overlaid...they spread" (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlaid

"covered." See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [olive](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [trees, and flowers](#)
- [trees, and flowers](#)
- [very thin sheets of](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

³² So he made two doors of olivewood, and he made on them carvings of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers. He overlaid them with gold and he spread the gold on the cherubim and palm trees.

UST

³² The doors were decorated by carving on them representations of winged creatures, palm [trees, and flowers](#). All of these things were covered with [very thin sheets of gold](#).

1 Kings 6:33

In this way, Solomon also made for the temple entrance doorposts of olive wood having four indented sections

"In the same way, Solomon also made doorposts of olive wood for the temple entrance, with four indented sections"

Solomon also made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "they also made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

indented sections

tooth-like notches

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [olive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the main room](#)
- [olive tree](#)

ULT

³³ In this way, Solomon also made for the temple entrance doorposts of olive wood having four indented sections

UST

³³ They made a rectangular doorframe from [olive tree](#) wood, with four indented sections, and put it between the entrance room [and the main room](#).

1 Kings 6:34

The two leaves of the one door

This means each door had two sections connected by hinges so they could fold together.

Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to the doorframe](#)

ULT

³⁴ and two doors of cypress wood. The two leaves of the one door were folding and the two leaves of the other door were folding.

UST

³⁴ They made two folding doors from cypress wood and fastened them [to the doorframe](#).

1 Kings 6:35

He carved...he evenly overlaid

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They carved...they evenly overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#)

ULT

³⁵ He carved on them cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers, and he evenly overlaid gold on the carved work.

UST

³⁵ The doors were also decorated with wood carvings of winged creatures, palm trees, and flowers, and they were also covered evenly with very thin sheets of [gold](#).

1 Kings 6:36

He built the inner courtyard

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "They built the inner courtyard" (See:

[Metonymy](#))

cedar beams

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cedar, cedarwood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cedar beams they put down two layers of stone](#)

ULT

36 He built the inner courtyard with three rows of cut stone and a row of cedar beams.

UST

36 They built a courtyard in front of the temple. The walls around the courtyard were made of cedar and stone. To make the walls, between each layer of [cedar beams they put down two layers of stone](#).

1 Kings 6:37

the fourth year

The word “fourth” is the ordinal form of “four.” You may need to make explicit the event from which the writer counts the years. Alternate translation: “the fourth year after Solomon became king” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

house of Yahweh

“the temple”

in the month of Ziv

“Ziv” is the name of the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:1](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [found, founder, foundation](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Yahweh](#)
- [laid](#)
- [They...the foundation of the temple](#)

ULT

³⁷ The foundation of the house of Yahweh was laid in the fourth year, in the month of Ziv.

UST

³⁷ [They laid the foundation of the temple of Yahweh](#) in the month of Ziv, in the fourth year that Solomon ruled.

1 Kings 6:38

the eleventh year

The word “eleventh” is the ordinal forms of “eleven.” You may need to make explicit the event from which the writer counts the years.

Alternate translation: “the eleventh year after Solomon became king” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the month of Bul, which is the eighth month

“Bul” is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

the house was finished in all its parts and conforming to all its specifications

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “they finished building every part of the house. They built it exactly the way Solomon had told them to build it”

Solomon took

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work. Alternate translation: “It took Solomon’s workers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- new moon
- consume, devour
- house

Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- the month of...they...building the
- finished
- temple

ULT

38 In the eleventh year, in the month of Bul, which is the eighth month, the house was finished in all its parts and conforming to all its specifications. Solomon took seven years to build the temple.

UST

38 In the eleventh year that he ruled, in [the month of](#) Bul, [they finished building the temple](#) and all of its parts, doing exactly what Solomon’s told them to do. It required seven years to build it.

1 Kings 7

1 Kings 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has a description of the palace Solomon built and the materials used in the temple courtyard. It is the last chapter about the building of the temple. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Bronze

Solomon hired a man from Tyre who was good at casting things out of bronze. The bronze objects were made by hollowing out the shape of the object in clay and then pouring in the hot melted liquid bronze and letting it cool. He made two large pillars and a large water reservoir set on the backs of 12 bronze cows. He made all the instruments for use in the sacrifices outside the temple. He made the furnishing inside the temple out of gold.

The temple and the palace

Solomon spent 13 years building a palace for himself that was much bigger than the temple. It is significant that the house of Solomon was much larger than the house of God. (See: [house of God](#), [Yahweh's house](#))

1 Kings 7:1

General Information:

The author is writing about Solomon's palace.

Solomon took thirteen years to build his own palace

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "It took Solomon's workers thirteen years to build his palace" (See: [Metonymy](#))

palace

If your language does not have a word for "palace," you may translate this as "house" or "big house."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [a palace for](#)
- [but it required](#)

ULT

¹ Solomon took thirteen years to build his own palace.

UST

¹ They also built [a palace for Solomon](#), [but it required](#) thirteen years to build it.

1 Kings 7:2

General Information:

Some details are given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

He built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "He commanded them to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon

"the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest"

one hundred cubits...fifty cubits...thirty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "46 meters...23 meters...13.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

beams

A beam is a long piece of strong wood used to support walls and roofs.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lebanon](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lebanon](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [One of the buildings](#)

ULT

² He built the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon. Its length was one hundred cubits, its width was fifty cubits, and its height was thirty cubits. The palace was built with four rows of cedar pillars with cedar beams on the pillars.

UST

² [One of the buildings](#) they built was a large ceremonial hall. It was called the Palace of the Forest of [Lebanon](#). It was forty-six meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high. It was supported by four rows of [cedar](#) pillars. There were [cedar](#) beams across each row.

1 Kings 7:3

Connecting Statement:

Some details continue to be given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

The house was roofed with cedar that rested on beams

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The carpenters built a roof from cedar planks and attached them to beams" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

beams

long pieces of strong wood usually used to support a roof

ULT

³ The house was roofed with cedar that rested on beams. Those beams were supported by pillars. There were forty-five beams, fifteen in a row.

UST

³ The carpenters build a roof from cedar planks that were attached to beams. The carpenters made pillars to support the cedar beams. There were a total of forty-five pillars put in place, making fifteen pillars in each row to support the roof.

1 Kings 7:4

Connecting Statement:

Some details continue to be given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

ULT

⁴ There were beams in three rows, and each window was opposite another window in three sets.

UST

⁴ On each of the two side walls there were three sets of windows facing each other.

1 Kings 7:5

Connecting Statement:

Some details continue to be given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

were made square

“had rectangular frames”

ULT

⁵ All the doors and posts were made square with beams, and window was opposite window in three sets.

UST

⁵ All the windows and doorways had rectangular frames. The windows along the long wall on one side faced the windows on the other side.

1 Kings 7:6

General Information:

The author writes about the structure of the Hall of Pillars.

colonnade

a series of columns, all the same distance apart

fifty cubits...thirty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "23 meters...13.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

portico

an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building's entrance door. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:3](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [In front](#)
- [porch](#)
- [pillars](#)

ULT

⁶ There was a colonnade fifty cubits long and thirty cubits wide, with a portico in front and pillars and a roof.

UST

⁶ They also built a long room with pillars; it was twenty-three meters long and fourteen meters wide. [In front](#) of it was a covered [porch](#) whose roof was supported by [pillars](#).

1 Kings 7:7

General Information:

The author writes about the hall of the throne.

Solomon built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Solomon had them build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the hall of the throne

Possible meanings are 1) "the house in which he was going to place his throne" or 2) "a house named The King's Chair House"

It was covered with cedar

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The workers covered the floor with cedar wood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from floor to floor

This refers to the entire floor. Alternate translation: "from one wall to the other"

Translation Words - ULT

- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon decided about people's disputes](#)

ULT

⁷ Solomon built the hall of the throne where he was to judge, the hall of justice. It was covered with cedar from floor to floor. ^[1]

UST

⁷ Then they made a building called the Hall of the Throne. It was also called the Hall of Justice. That was where [Solomon decided about people's disputes](#). The entire floor was covered with cedar wood.

1 Kings 7:8

General Information:

The author continues to write about the palace area.

Solomon's house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, was similarly designed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Solomon had someone design the house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, in the same way" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He also built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work. Alternate translation: "He also commanded them to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- house
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- for Solomon
- Hall of Judgment
- a house
- They also built the same kind of

ULT

⁸ Solomon's house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, was similarly designed. He also built a house like this for Pharaoh's daughter, whom he had taken as a wife.

UST

⁸ In the courtyard behind the [Hall of Judgment](#) they built [a house for Solomon](#) to live in that was made like the other buildings. [They also built the same kind of](#) house for his wife, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt.

1 Kings 7:9

General Information:

The writer is writing about the stones used for the buildings.

These buildings were adorned with costly hewn stones

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The workers adorned the buildings with costly, hewn stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hewn stones, precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "hewn stones, that workers had precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

These stones were used

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The workers used these stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the foundation to the stones on top, and also on the outside to the great court

The author is emphasizing that the workers used expensive stones for the foundations and all the buildings.

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [buildings](#)

ULT

⁹ These buildings were adorned with costly hewn stones, precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed on all sides. These stones were used from the foundation to the stones on top, and also on the outside to the great court.

UST

⁹ All of these [buildings](#) and the walls around the palace courtyard were made from stones, from the foundations up to the eaves. The stones had been expensive for the workers to cut at the quarry, according to the sizes that were needed, and the sides of the stones were shaped and smoothed by cutting them with saws.

1 Kings 7:10

The foundation was constructed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The workers constructed the foundation" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

eight and ten cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 3.7 meters and 4.6 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [found](#), [founder](#), [foundation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The foundations were also made from](#)

ULT

¹⁰ The foundation was constructed with very large, costly stones of eight and ten cubits in length.

UST

¹⁰ [The foundations were also made from](#) huge blocks of expensive stones that had been prepared at the quarry. Some of them were about three and three-quarters meters long and others were about four and four-fifths meters long.

1 Kings 7:11

cedar beams

A beam is a long piece of wood used for structural support.

ULT

11 Above were costly hewn stones precisely cut to size, and cedar beams.

UST

11 On top of the foundation stones were other expensive stones that had been cut according to the sizes they needed, as well as cedar beams.

1 Kings 7:12

three rows of cut stone and a row of cedar beams

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:36](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- cedar, cedarwood
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- cedar beams
- the temple
- in front of the temple had walls made by putting down

ULT

¹² The great courtyard surrounding the palace had three rows of cut stone and a row of cedar beams like the courtyard of the temple of Yahweh and the temple portico.

UST

¹² The palace courtyard, the inner courtyard in front of [the temple](#), and the portico [in front of the temple had walls made by putting down](#) three layers of cut stones between each layer of [cedar beams](#).

1 Kings 7:13

brought him from Tyre

Huram accepted Solomon's invitation to come to Jerusalem. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

13 King Solomon sent for Hiram and brought him from Tyre.

UST

13-14 There was a man who lived in the city of Tyre whose name was Hiram. He was a craftsman. His father had also lived in Tyre and had also been very skilled at making things from bronze, but Hiram's father was no longer living. His mother was from the tribe of Naphtali. Hiram was very wise and intelligent and was very skilled at making things from bronze. Solomon invited him to come to Jerusalem and supervise all the work of making things from bronze, and Hiram agreed.

1 Kings 7:14

the son of a widow...his father was a man of Tyre

A widow is a woman whose husband has died, so we know that the father is dead. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Huram was filled with wisdom and understanding and skill

This can be stated in active form. The words “wisdom and understanding” mean basically the same thing and are used together for emphasis. Yahweh giving such things as wisdom is spoken of as if they were liquids that Yahweh had poured into a container, and Hiram is spoken of as if he were that container. Alternate translation: “Yahweh had given Hiram wisdom, understanding, and skill” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Doublet and Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

14 Hiram was the son of a widow of the tribe of Naphtali; his father was a man of Tyre, a craftsman in bronze. Hiram was filled with wisdom and understanding and skill to do great work with bronze. He came to King Solomon to work with bronze for the king.

UST

13-14 There was a man who lived in the city of Tyre whose name was Hiram. He was a craftsman. His father had also lived in Tyre and had also been very skilled at making things from bronze, but Hiram's father was no longer living. His mother was from the tribe of Naphtali. Hiram was very wise and intelligent and was very skilled at making things from bronze. Solomon invited him to come to Jerusalem and supervise all the work of making things from bronze, and Hiram agreed.

1 Kings 7:15

eighteen cubits...twelve cubits

A cubit is about 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “about 8.3 meters...5.5 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

in circumference

Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

ULT

15 Hiram fashioned the two pillars of bronze, each eighteen cubits high and twelve cubits in circumference.

UST

15 He made two [bronze](#) pillars. Each one was eight and one-third meters tall and eight and one-half around.

1 Kings 7:16

five cubits

A cubit is about 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2.3 meters"
(See: [Biblical Distance](#))

two capitals

decorations on top of each of the two pillars

polished bronze

They polished the bronze so that it would reflect sunlight. "gleaming bronze"

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [top](#)
- [gleaming bronze](#)

ULT

16 He made two capitals of polished bronze to set on the tops of the pillars. The height of each capital was five cubits.

UST

16 He also made two [gleaming bronze](#) tops to be put on [top](#) of the pillars. Each top was two and one-third meters tall.

1 Kings 7:17

Checker latticework and wreaths of chain work

“Crossed metal strips woven together and metal chains twisted together”

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [top](#)

ULT

17 Checker latticework and wreaths of chain work for the capitals decorated the top of the pillars, seven for each capital.

UST

17 Then he made bronze networks of chains like wreaths to decorate the [top](#) of each pillar. There were seven of these networks at the top of each pillar.

1 Kings 7:18

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram commanded his workers to make"
(See: [Metonymy](#))

two rows of pomegranates

A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. Hiram did not use real pomegranates to decorate the pillars. He made them out of bronze.

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [top](#)

ULT

18 So Hiram made two rows of pomegranates around the top of each pillar to decorate their capitals.

UST

18 Hiram also made bronze figures that resembled pomegranates. He put two rows of pomegranates over the [top](#) of each pillar.

1 Kings 7:19

The capitals...were decorated with lilies, four cubits high

Lilies are plants whose flowers are wide at one end and very narrow at the other end. These words can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Hiram decorated the capitals...with bronze lilies, four cubits high" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the tops of the portico

Translate "portico" as in [1 Kings 7:6](#).

four cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 1.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The top over](#)

ULT

¹⁹ The capitals on the tops of the portico pillars were decorated with lilies, four cubits high.

UST

¹⁹ [The top over](#) each pillar was shaped like a lily. Each lily leaf was one and four-fifths meters tall.

1 Kings 7:20

two hundred pomegranates

"200 pomegranates." A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:18](#) (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

20 The capitals on these two pillars also included, close to their very top, two hundred pomegranates in rows all around.

UST

20 These tops were placed on a bowl shaped section around which were two rows of two hundred figures of pomegranates around the top of each pillar.

1 Kings 7:21

He raised up

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "They raised up" (See: [Metonymy](#))

The pillar on the right was named Jakin

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The name of the pillar on the right side was Jakin" (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the pillar on the left was named Boaz

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The name of the pillar on the left side was Boaz" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Boaz](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was named](#)
- [was named](#)
- [of the temple](#)
- [Boaz](#)
- [was named](#)
- [was named](#)

ULT

²¹ He raised up the pillars at the temple portico. The pillar on the right was named Jakin, and the pillar on the left was named Boaz.

UST

²¹ His helpers set up the pillars in front of the entrance [of the temple](#). The pillar on the south side [was named](#) Jakin, and the pillar on the north side [was named](#) [Boaz](#).

1 Kings 7:22

The fashioning of the pillars was done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Hiram fashioned the pillars” or “Hiram’s men fashioned the pillars” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [top](#)

ULT

²² On the top of the pillars were decorations like lilies. The fashioning of the pillars was done in this way.

UST

²² The bronze tops that were shaped like lilies were placed on [top](#) of the pillars. So Hiram and his helpers completed the work of making the bronze pillars.

1 Kings 7:23

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram also commanded them to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the round sea

This refers to a bronze tank or basin that would hold water.

cast metal

Huram melted the bronze and formed it in a mold.

ten cubits...five cubits...thirty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "4.6 meters...2.3 meters...13.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

from brim to brim

"from one edge to the other"

in circumference

Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.

ULT

²³ Huram made the round sea of cast metal, ten cubits from brim to brim. Its height was five cubits, and the sea was thirty cubits in circumference.

UST

²³ Huram also made a very large round bronze basin called "The Sea" that was made of metal and cast in a clay mold. It was two and one-third meters tall, four and three-fifths meters across, and thirteen and three-quarters meters around.

1 Kings 7:24

encircling the sea were gourds

A gourd is a type of hard, round vegetable that grows on a vine on the ground.

when that basin was cast

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when Hiram cast that basin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁴ Under the brim encircling the sea were gourds, ten in each cubit, cast in one piece with “The Sea,” when that basin was cast.

UST

²⁴ Around the outer edge of the rim of the “The Sea” were two rows of figures that resembled gourds that were made of bronze. But the gourds were not cast separately. They were cast in the same mold as the rest of the tank. For each meter of length around the rim of the tank there were about eighteen gourds.

1 Kings 7:25

The Sea

This refers to the bronze tank or basin that held water for sacrifices.

stood on

"was on top of"

"The Sea" was set on top of them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Hiram's workers set 'The Sea' on top of the bronze oxen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hindquarters

This is the back quarter of the body of an animal with four feet.

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- house

Translation Words - UST

- He placed them to face outward
- oxen
- the backs of the statues of the oxen

ULT

²⁵ "The Sea" stood on twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, three looking toward the west, three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east. "The Sea" was set on top of them, and all their hindquarters were toward the inside.

UST

²⁵ Hiram also cast twelve bronze statues of [oxen](#). [He placed them to face outward](#). He placed three of them to face north, three to face west, three to face south, and three to face east. His helpers put the large bronze tank known as "The Sea" so that it sat on [the backs of the statues of the oxen](#).

1 Kings 7:26

its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Hiram forged the brim to look like the brim of a cup, to curve outward like a lily” (See: [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

two thousand baths

A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: “2,000 baths” or “44,000 liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

ULT

²⁶ The sea was as thick as the width of a hand, and its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom. The sea held two thousand baths of water.

UST

²⁶ The sides of the tank were eight centimeters thick. The rim was like the rim of a cup. It curved outward, like the petals of a lily. When the tank was full, it held about forty-four cubic meters of water.

1 Kings 7:27

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram also commanded them to make" or "They also made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

four cubits...three cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 1.8 meters... about 1.4 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

ULT

²⁷ Huram made the ten stands of bronze. Each stand was four cubits long and four cubits wide, and the height was three cubits.

UST

²⁷ Huram also made ten [bronze](#) carts. Each was one and four-fifths meters long, one and four-fifths meters wide, and one and one-third meters tall.

1 Kings 7:28

The work of the stands was like this

This means the author will describe the stands in the words that follow.

ULT

²⁸ The work of the stands was like this. They had panels that stood between frames,

UST

²⁸ On the sides of the carts there were panels set in frames.

1 Kings 7:29

on the panels and on the frames were lions, oxen, and cherubim

There were decorative pieces in the shapes of lions, oxen, and cherubim fastened to the sides of the stands.

wreaths of hammered work

Here the word “wreaths” refers to spiral-shaped pieces of bronze.

Translation Words - ULT

- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [oxen](#)

ULT

²⁹ and on the panels and on the frames were lions, oxen, and cherubim. Above and below the lions and oxen were wreaths of hammered work.

UST

²⁹ On those panels were bronze figures of lions, [oxen](#), and winged creatures. Below and above the lions and bulls there were decorations of bronze wreaths.

1 Kings 7:30

four bronze wheels and axles

There was one axle for each pair of wheels. Alternate translation: "four bronze wheels and two axles" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

its four corners

"the four corners of each stand"

The supports were cast with wreaths

Each support was cast as one piece with the wreaths. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Hiram cast the supports with spiral-shaped pieces" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)
- [made of bronze](#)

ULT

³⁰ Every stand had four bronze wheels and axles, and its four corners had supports beneath for the basin. The supports were cast with wreaths on the side of each one.

UST

³⁰ Each cart had four [bronze](#) wheels and two axles [made of bronze](#). At the top corners of each cart were bronze supports to hold up a basin. On these supports were also decorations of bronze wreaths.

1 Kings 7:31

a cubit and a half...a cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “about 70 centimeters...about 50 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a crown that rose up

Here the word “crown” refers to the circular piece at the top of the stand’s opening that held the basin.

their panels were square

“the panels of the stands were square.” This phrase returns to the description of the panels that began in [1 Kings 7:28](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [each cart, under each basin, was a frame](#)

ULT

³¹ The opening was round like a pedestal, a cubit and a half wide, and was within a crown that rose up a cubit. On the opening were engravings, and their panels were square, not round.

UST

³¹ On top of [each cart, under each basin, was a frame](#) that resembled a circular collar. The top of each circular frame was forty-six centimeters above the top of the cart, and the bottom of it was twenty-three centimeters below the top of the cart. There were also engravings within square panels.

1 Kings 7:32

their housings

Here the word "their" refers to the axles. The word "housings" refers to the casings into which the axles were inserted.

a cubit and a half

A cubit was 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 70 centimeters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The wheels](#)

ULT

³² The four wheels were underneath the panels, and the axles of the wheels and their housings were in the stand. The height of a wheel was a cubit and a half.

UST

³² The wheels were sixty-nine centimeters high. They were below the panels. [The wheels](#) were connected to axles that had been cast in the same mold as the rest of the cart.

1 Kings 7:33

The wheels were forged like chariot wheels

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Hiram made the wheels like small chariot wheels" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Their housings, rims, spokes, and hubs

Here the word "Their" refers to the wheels.

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The axles, the rims](#)

ULT

³³ The wheels were forged like chariot wheels. Their housings, rims, spokes, and hubs were all cast metal.

UST

³³ The wheels of the carts were like the wheels of chariots. [The axles, the rims](#), the spokes, and the hubs were all cast from bronze.

1 Kings 7:34

There were four handles at the four corners of each stand

“There was a handle at each of the four corners of each stand”

ULT

³⁴ There were four handles at the four corners of each stand, forged into the stand itself.

UST

³⁴ At the top corners of each cart there were handles. These were molded into the cart itself.

1 Kings 7:35

half a cubit deep

A cubit was 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “twenty-three centimeters wide” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

on the top of the stand its supports and panels were attached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Hiram attached the supports and panels to the top of each stand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- head

Translation Words - UST

- The bands and the braces were cast in the same mold
- The bands and the braces were cast in the same mold

ULT

³⁵ In the top of the stands there was a round band half a cubit deep, and on the top of the stand its supports and panels were attached.

UST

³⁵ There was a bronze band of twenty-three centimeters around the top of each cart. There were braces attached to the corners of each cart. [The bands and the braces were cast in the same mold](#) as the rest of the cart.

1 Kings 7:36

Huram engraved

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "they engraved" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they were surrounded

Here the word "they" refers to the cherubim, lions, and palm trees.

they were surrounded by wreaths

The word "wreaths" refers to spiral-shaped pieces of bronze. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "there were wreaths all around them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The braces and the panels on the sides of the carts...of](#)

ULT

³⁶ On the surfaces of the supports and on the panels Hiram engraved cherubim, lions, and palm trees that covered the space available, and they were surrounded by wreaths.

UST

³⁶ [The braces and the panels on the sides of the carts](#) were also decorated with figures [of](#) winged creatures, lions, and palm trees, whenever there was space for them, and there were bronze wreaths all around them.

1 Kings 7:37

He made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "He commanded them to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

All of them were cast in the same molds

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Hiram cast all of the stands in the same mold" or "They cast all of the stand in the same mold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they had one size, and the same shape

"all of the stands were the same size and shape"

ULT

37 He made the ten stands in this manner. All of them were cast in the same molds, and they had one size, and the same shape.

UST

37 That is how Hiram made the ten carts. They were all cast in the same mold, so they were all alike. They all were the same size and had the same shape.

1 Kings 7:38

Huram made ten

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Huram had them make ten" (See: [Metonymy](#))

forty baths

A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "about 88 liters" or "about 90 liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

four cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 1.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

ULT

³⁸ Huram made ten basins of bronze. One basin could hold forty baths of water. Each basin was four cubits across and there was one basin on each of ten stands.

UST

³⁸ Huram also made ten [bronze](#) basins, one basin for each of the ten stands. Each basin was one and four-fifths meters across and held 880 liters of water.

1 Kings 7:39

He made five...He set

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Hiram had them make five...Hiram commanded them to set" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the south-facing side...the north-facing side

"the south side...the north side"

on the east corner, facing toward the south of the temple

"near the southeast corner of the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the temple](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [on the corner that was toward the east and in the direction of the south](#)

ULT

³⁹ He made five stands on the south-facing side of the temple and five on the north-facing side of the temple. He set "The Sea" on the east corner, facing toward the south of the temple.

UST

³⁹ Hiram placed five of the carts on the right side of [the temple](#) and five on the left side of [the temple](#). He put the large tank known as "The Sea" [on the corner that was toward the east and in the direction of the south](#).

1 Kings 7:40

Huram made...he finished

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
 Alternate translation: "Huram had them make...they finished" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- for the temple. This is a list of the bronze things he made
- Solomon requested him
- King
- for the temple. This is a list of the bronze things he made

ULT

⁴⁰ Huram made the basins and the shovels and the sprinkling bowls. Then he finished all the work that he did for King Solomon in the temple of Yahweh:

UST

⁴⁰ Huram also made pots, shovels for carrying ashes, and bowls for carrying the blood of the animals that would be sacrificed. He completed all the work that [King Solomon requested him](#) to do [for the temple. This is a list of the bronze things he made:](#)

1 Kings 7:41

the bowl-like capitals

The capitals were shaped like bowls. (See: [Simile](#))

decorative latticework

"crossed metal strips woven together"

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [head](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [two...top of the pillars...the two wreaths...the tops of](#)
- [two...top of the pillars...the two wreaths...the tops of](#) (2)

ULT

⁴¹ the two pillars, and the bowl-like capitals that were on top of the two pillars, and the two sets of decorative latticework to cover the two bowl like capitals that were on top of the pillars.

UST

⁴¹ the two pillars, the [two](#) tops to be put on [top of the pillars](#), [the two wreaths](#) of chains to decorate [the tops of](#) the pillars,

1 Kings 7:42

He made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

four hundred pomegranates

"400 pomegranates." A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:18](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [face, facial](#)
- [pomegranate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of](#)
- [one hundred in each row](#)

ULT

⁴² He made the four hundred pomegranates for the two sets of decorative latticework (two rows of pomegranates for each set of latticework to cover the two bowl-like capitals that were on the pillars);

UST

⁴² the four hundred figures of pomegranates in four rows, with [one hundred in each row](#); two of these rows were placed over the head [of](#) each pillar,

1 Kings 7:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴³ the ten stands, and the ten basins on the stands.

UST

⁴³ the ten carts, the ten basins,

1 Kings 7:44

He made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁴⁴ He made the large basin called "The Sea" with its twelve oxen under it;

UST

⁴⁴ the big tank known as "The Sea," the twelve statues of oxen on whose backs the tank was placed,

1 Kings 7:45

Huram made

Huram would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "They made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the other implements

"all the other tools"

polished bronze

bronze that was polished so that it would reflect light

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and put them outside...temple](#)
- [for...Solomon](#)
- [King](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [and put them outside...temple](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ also the pots, shovels, basins, and all the other implements. Hiram made them out of polished bronze, for King Solomon, for the temple of Yahweh.

UST

⁴⁵ the pots, shovels for the ashes of the altar, and bowls. Hiram and his workers made all these things for [King Solomon and put them outside](#) the [temple](#). They were all made of [bronze](#) that the workmen polished for it to gleam brightly.

1 Kings 7:46

The king had cast them

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "The king had his workers cast them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

plain of the Jordan

"flat land near the Jordan River"

Succoth...Zarethan

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Jordan River valley](#)
- [that Hiram](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ The king had cast them in the plain of the Jordan, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zarethan.

UST

⁴⁶ They made them by pouring melted bronze into the clay molds [that Hiram](#) had set up near [the Jordan River valley](#), between the cities of Succoth and Zarethan.

1 Kings 7:47

Solomon did not weigh

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.
Alternate translation: "Solomon did not have them weigh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the weight of the bronze could not be measured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one could measure the weight of the bronze" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ Solomon did not weigh all the utensils because there were too many to weigh, because the weight of the bronze could not be measured.

UST

⁴⁷ [Solomon](#) did not tell his workers to weigh those [bronze](#) objects, because there were many items. So no one ever knew what they weighed.

1 Kings 7:48

Solomon had made

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do this work.

Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers had made" (See:

[Metonymy](#))

on which the bread of the presence was to be placed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "on which the priests were to place the bread of the presence" (See: [Active or](#)

[Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- bread
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- Yahweh
- Solomon's
- where the bread...presence was kept before God
- the gold items
- where the bread...presence was kept before God
- for...temple of

ULT

⁴⁸ Solomon had made all the furnishings that were in the temple of Yahweh out of gold: the golden altar and the table on which the bread of the presence was to be placed;

UST

⁴⁸ [Solomon's](#) workers also made all [the gold items](#) for the [temple of Yahweh](#): [the altar](#), the table [where the bread](#) of the [presence was kept before God](#),

1 Kings 7:49

the flowers, the lamps

The “flowers” and “lamps” were part of the lampstands.

Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- the decorations that resembled flowers
- the tongs to grasp the hot coals

ULT

⁴⁹ the lampstands, five on the right side and five on the left, in front of the inner room, were of pure gold, and the flowers, the lamps, and the tongs were of gold.

UST

⁴⁹ the ten lampstands that were put in front of the very holy place, five on the south side and five on the north side, the decorations that resembled flowers, the lamps, the tongs to grasp the hot coals,

1 Kings 7:50

had made the cups...all of which were made of pure gold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “had his workers make all the cups...out of pure gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sockets of gold made for the doors

Here “sockets” may refer to either 1) the sockets in which the door pegs turned, or 2) the hinges on which the doors hung.

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [temple](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the very holy place](#)
- [of the temple](#)
- [Those things were all made of gold](#)
- [of the temple](#)
- [at the entrance to](#)
- [the entrance to the main room](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ Solomon also had made the cups, lamp trimmers, basins, spoons, and incense burners, all of which were made of pure gold; he had sockets of gold made for the doors of the inner room (which was the most holy place), and for the doors of the main hall of the temple.

UST

⁵⁰ the cups, the gold lamp wick snuffers, the small lamp bowls, the dishes for incense, the pans for carrying the hot coals, and the sockets for the doors [at the entrance to the very holy place](#) and for the doors at [the entrance to the main room of the temple](#). [Those things were all made of gold](#).

1 Kings 7:51

the work that King Solomon directed for the house of Yahweh was finished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the workers finished the work that King Solomon had them do for the house of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [silver](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then they placed in](#)
- [for the temple](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [David had dedicated](#)
- [So Solomon's](#)
- [Then they placed in](#)
- [his father](#)
- [all the silver](#)
- [So Solomon's](#)
- [and gold, and the other valuable items](#)
- [for the temple](#)
- [the temple](#)

ULT

⁵¹ In this way, all the work that King Solomon directed for the house of Yahweh was finished. So Solomon brought in the things that were set apart by David, his father, and the silver, the gold, and the furnishings, and put them into the storerooms of the house of Yahweh.

7:7 ^[1] Some versions have, *It was covered with cedar from the floor to the rafters* .

UST

⁵¹ [So Solomon's](#) workers finished all the work [for the temple](#). [Then they placed in the temple](#) storerooms all the things that [his father David had dedicated to Yahweh—all the silver and gold, and the other valuable items](#).

1 Kings 8

1 Kings 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The ark is placed in the new temple. This is a very significant event in the history of the Israelites. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Celebration of the temple's completion

When the temple was finished, Solomon told all of the people to come to Jerusalem. They took the ark out of the tent and brought it to the temple. Then Solomon prayed that God would hear and answer prayers made to him when they faced towards the temple.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

Solomon prayed that God would respond to people's prayers using an idiom: "that your eyes may be open to the request of your servant." (See: [Idiom](#))

1 Kings 8:1

assembled the elders of Israel

“called together the leaders of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Zion, Mount Zion
- David
- Solomon
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- head
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- of the clans
- sacred chest
- Yahweh's
- of Israel
- of the clans
- from Mount Zion
- David
- Solomon
- the temple
- then
- and the leaders
- summoned to Jerusalem
- the leaders
- all the elders
- He arranged for them to join

ULT

¹ Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, all the heads of the tribes, and the leaders of the families of the people of Israel, before himself in Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David, that is, Zion.

UST

¹ Solomon then summoned to Jerusalem all the elders of Israel, all the leaders of the tribes and the leaders of the clans. He arranged for them to join in bringing to the temple Yahweh's sacred chest from Mount Zion, where it was in the part of the city called the city of David.

1 Kings 8:2

All the men of Israel

This may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in 8:1 or 2) generally to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every male person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

at the feast

This is a reference to the Feast of Succoth, also known as the Feast of Tabernacles or Feast of Shelters .

in the month of Ethanim, which is the seventh month

“Ethanim” is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [new moon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Festival of Shelters](#)
- [King](#)
- [month](#)

ULT

² All the men of Israel assembled before King Solomon at the feast, in the month of Ethanim, which is the seventh month.

UST

² So all [the Israelite](#) leaders came to [King Solomon](#) during the [Festival of Shelters](#), in the [month](#) of Ethanim.

1 Kings 8:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- When they had
- the priests
- When they had

ULT

³ All the elders of Israel came, and the priests took up the ark.

UST

³ [When they had](#) all arrived, [the priests](#) lifted up the sacred chest

1 Kings 8:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- had been
- the sacred things
- the priests
- Then the descendants of Levi
- to the temple

ULT

⁴ They brought up the ark of Yahweh, the tent of meeting, and all the holy furnishings that were in the tent. The priests and the Levites brought these things up.

UST

⁴ and brought it to the temple. Then the descendants of Levi who assisted the priests helped them to carry to the temple the sacred tent and all the sacred things that had been in the tent.

1 Kings 8:5

all the assembly of Israel

This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

sheep and oxen that could not be counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “more sheep and oxen than anyone would ever be able to count” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- flock, herd
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite
- Solomon
- a huge amount of sheep
- And they sacrificed
- Then King

ULT

⁵ King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen that could not be counted.

UST

⁵ [Then King Solomon](#) and many of [the Israelite](#) people gathered in front of Yahweh's sacred chest. [And they sacrificed a huge amount of sheep](#) and oxen. No one was able to count the sacrifices because there were very many.

1 Kings 8:6

into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under

“into the inner room of the house—that is, to the most holy place—under”

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- covenant
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- house

Translation Words - UST

- into the very holy place
- into the very holy place
- the sacred chest
- the sacred chest
- Then the priests
- the temple

ULT

⁶ The priests brought in the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to its place, into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under the wings of the cherubim.

UST

⁶ Then the priests brought the sacred chest into the very holy place in the temple, and they placed it under the wings of the statues of the winged creatures.

1 Kings 8:7

poles by which it was carried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “poles by which the priests carried it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁷ For the cherubim spread out their wings to the place of the ark, and they covered the ark and the poles by which it was carried.

UST

⁷ The wings of those statues spread out over the sacred chest and over the poles by which it was carried.

1 Kings 8:8

their ends were seen...they could not be seen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people could see their ends...people could not see them"

this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- head
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- the entrance to the very holy place
- the ends
- the entrance to the very holy place

ULT

⁸ The poles were so long that their ends were seen from the holy place in front of the inner room, but they could not be seen from outside. They are there to this day.

UST

⁸ The poles were very long, with the result that [the ends](#) of the poles could be seen by people who were standing at [the entrance to the very holy place](#), but they could not be seen by people standing outside the temple. Those poles are still there.

1 Kings 8:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- cut off

Translation Words - UST

- people
- Yahweh
- people
- Moses
- Egypt
- made a covenant

ULT

⁹ There was nothing in the ark except the two tablets of stone that Moses had put there at Horeb, when Yahweh made a covenant with the people of Israel when they came out of the land of Egypt.

UST

⁹ The only things that were in the sacred chest were the two stone tablets that [Moses](#) had put there at Mount Sinai, where [Yahweh made a covenant](#) with the [people](#) after they left [Egypt](#).

1 Kings 8:10

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the sacred chest
- in the temple
- The priests
- in the temple

ULT

¹⁰ It came about that when the priests came out of the holy place, the cloud filled the temple of Yahweh.

UST

¹⁰ [The priests](#) put [the sacred chest in the temple](#). When they came out of the holy place, suddenly it was filled with a cloud.

1 Kings 8:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- house

Translation Words - UST

- The glory
- The glory
- of Yahweh
- the priests
- the temple

ULT

¹¹ The priests could not stand to serve because of the cloud, for the glory of Yahweh filled his house.

UST

¹¹ The glory of Yahweh filled the temple, with the result that the priests were not able to continue their work.

1 Kings 8:12

Yahweh has said...darkness

Solomon speaks to Yahweh as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects Yahweh. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

¹² Then Solomon said, "Yahweh has said that he would live in thick darkness,

UST

¹² Then [Solomon](#) prayed this: "[Yahweh](#), you have placed the sun in the sky, but you have decided that you would live in very dark clouds.

1 Kings 8:13

lofty residence

beautiful building in which someone very important lives

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a place for you](#)

ULT

13 But I have built you a lofty residence, a place for you to live in forever.”

UST

13 I have built for you a splendid temple, [a place for you](#) to live in forever.”

1 Kings 8:14

all the assembly of Israel

“all the people of Israel who were gathered there”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- and he asked God to bless them
- stood there
- the people
- the people
- the people
- the people
- and faced them
- the king

ULT

14 Then the king turned around and blessed all the assembly of Israel, while all the assembly of Israel was standing.

UST

14 Then, while all [the people stood there](#), [the king](#) turned around [and faced them](#), [and he asked God to bless them](#).

1 Kings 8:15

May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Praise Yahweh, the God of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with his own hands

The hand is a metonym for the power in the hand. Alternate translation: "by his own power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Praise
- God
- Yahweh
- Israelites
- David
- what he promised to my father
- By his own power he has done

ULT

¹⁵ He said, "May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised, who spoke to David my father, and has fulfilled it with his own hands, saying,

UST

¹⁵ He said, "[Praise Yahweh](#), the [God](#) to whom we [Israelites](#) belong! [By his own power he has done what he promised to my father David](#). What he promised was this:

1 Kings 8:16

in order for my name to be

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for...name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “so that people would worship me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- should be
- my people
- Israel
- my people
- out of Egypt
- my people
- my people
- Israel
- in which a temple
- that I brought

ULT

16 ‘Since the day that I brought my people Israel out of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house, in order for my name to be there. However, I chose David to rule over my people Israel.’

UST

16 From the time [that I brought my people out of Egypt](#), I have never chosen any city in [Israel in which a temple should be](#) built for my people to worship me there. But I chose you, David, to rule [my people](#).”

1 Kings 8:17

it was in the heart of David my father

What David desired is spoken of as if it were an item in a container and the heart as if it were a container. Alternate translation: “David my father desired” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for the name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people would worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

Translation Words - UST

- our God
- wanted
- Yahweh
- we Israelite people could worship...there
- David
- My father
- a temple

ULT

17 Now it was in the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

17 Then Solomon said, “[My father David wanted](#) to build [a temple](#) in order that [we Israelite people could worship Yahweh our God there](#).”

1 Kings 8:18

In that it was in your heart

What David desired is spoken of as if it were an item in a container and the heart as if it were a container. Alternate translation: "Because you desired" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for my name

The word "name" is a metonym for the person, and "for...name" refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "in which people will worship me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for it to be in your heart

What David desired is spoken of as if it were an item in a container and the heart as if it were a container. Alternate translation: "to desire to do that" or "by wanting to do that" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wanted](#)
- [you wanted](#)
- [But Yahweh](#)
- [him](#)
- [him](#)
- [a temple](#)

ULT

18 But Yahweh said to David my father, 'In that it was in your heart to build a house for my name, you did well for it to be in your heart.

UST

18 [But Yahweh](#) said to [him](#), 'You have [wanted](#) to build [a temple](#) for me, and what [you wanted](#) to do was good.

1 Kings 8:19

one who will be born from your loins

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “one who will be your own offspring” or “one whom you yourself will father” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [a temple](#)
- [it...build](#)

ULT

19 Nevertheless you will not build the house; instead, your son, one who will be born from your loins, will build the house for my name.'

UST

19 However, you are not the one who I want to build [it](#). It is one of your [sons](#) who I want to [build a temple](#) for me.'

1 Kings 8:20

has carried out the word that he had said

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “has done exactly what he said he would do” (See: [Idiom](#))

I have arisen in the place of David my father

Height is a metaphor for power. Alternate translation: “I have gained the power that David my father had” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: “I rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for the name of Yahweh

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for...name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people will worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [And now Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh promised](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [my father, and](#)
- [my father, and](#)
- [the king](#)
- [I have arranged for this temple](#)

ULT

²⁰ Yahweh has carried out the word that he had said, for I have arisen in the place of David my father, and I sit on the throne of Israel, as Yahweh promised. I have built the house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

²⁰ [And now Yahweh](#) has done what he promised to do. I have become [the king of Israel](#) to succeed [my father, and](#) I am ruling my people, as [Yahweh promised](#). [I have arranged for this temple](#) to be built for us [Israelites](#) to worship [Yahweh](#), the [God](#) to whom we Israelites belong.

1 Kings 8:21

is Yahweh's covenant, which

The stone tablets on which Yahweh had written the terms of the covenant are spoken of as if they were the covenant itself. Alternate translation: "are the tablets on which Yahweh wrote the terms of the covenant that" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cut off

Translation Words - UST

- I have also provided
- are the two stone tablets of the covenant
- Yahweh
- out of Egypt
- our ancestors
- made

ULT

²¹ I have made a place for the ark there, in which is Yahweh's covenant, which he made with our fathers when he brought them out of the land of Egypt."

UST

²¹ [I have also provided](#) a place in the temple for the sacred chest in which [are the two stone tablets of the covenant](#) that [Yahweh made](#) with [our ancestors](#) when he brought them [out of Egypt](#)."

1 Kings 8:22

all the assembly of Israel

“all the people of Israel who were gathered there”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- altar
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- hand
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST

- toward heaven
- the altar
- which was
- the Israelite
- Solomon
- spread out his arms
- people who had gathered there

ULT

²² Solomon stood before the altar of Yahweh, before all the assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands toward the heavens.

UST

²² Then [Solomon](#) stood in front of [the altar which was](#) in front of [the Israelite people who had gathered there](#). He [spread out his arms toward heaven](#),

1 Kings 8:23

who keeps his covenant faithfulness with your servants

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” Alternate translation: “who faithfully loves your servants” or “who is faithful to your covenant with your servants” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

walk before you with all their heart

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “live wholeheartedly the way that you want them to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- God
- heart
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- the God
- god...you
- for us who earnestly do
- And that is what you have done
- You solemnly promised that you would faithfully love us
- Yahweh
- whom we Israelite people worship
- the earth
- what you want us to do
- for us who earnestly do

ULT

²³ He said, “Yahweh, God of Israel, there is no God like you in the heavens above or on the earth below, who keeps his covenant faithfulness with your servants who walk before you with all their heart;

UST

²³ and he prayed, “[Yahweh, the God whom we Israelite people worship](#), there is no [god](#) like [you](#) up [in heaven](#) or down here on [the earth](#). [You solemnly promised that you would faithfully love us](#). [And that is what you have done for us who earnestly do what you want us to do](#).”

1 Kings 8:24

fulfilled it with your hand

The hand is a metonym for the power of the hand. Alternate translation: "by your power fulfilled what you said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [by your power you have done them](#)
- [You have done](#)
- [who served you very well](#)

ULT

²⁴ you who have kept with your servant David my father, what you promised him. Yes, you spoke with your mouth and have fulfilled it with your hand, as it is today.

UST

²⁴ [You have done](#) the things that you promised [my father David, who served you very well](#), that you would do. Truly, you promised to do these things for him, and today we see that [by your power you have done them](#).

1 Kings 8:25

to sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: "to rule over Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

walk before me...have walked before me

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "live as I want you to...have lived as I want you to" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cut off
- throne, enthroned
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- they would conduct their lives as he did
- the God
- So now, Yahweh
- whom we Israelites
- in Israel
- my father that you would do
- my father that you would do
- some of his descendants
- who would be kings
- they would conduct their lives as he did
- worship
- they would conduct their lives as he did
- I am requesting that

ULT

²⁵ Now then, Yahweh, God of Israel, carry out what you have promised to your servant David my father, when you said, 'You will not fail to have a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel, if only your descendants are careful to walk before me, as you have walked before me.'

UST

²⁵ So now, Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, I am requesting that you do the other things that you promised my father that you would do. You told him that there would always be some of his descendants who would be kings in Israel, if they would conduct their lives as he did.

1 Kings 8:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- of us Israelite people
- cause
- David
- for my father
- who served you well, to happen

ULT

²⁶ Now then, God of Israel, let your word be confirmed, which you have spoken to your servant David my father.

UST

²⁶ So now, God of us Israelite people, cause what you promised to do for my father David, who served you well, to happen.

1 Kings 8:27

But will God actually live on the earth?

Possible meanings of this question are 1) Solomon is asking a real question and expecting an answer or 2) the question is rhetorical and Solomon is emphasizing that God is too big and mighty to live on earth. Alternate translation: “But it surely cannot be that God will actually live on the earth!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But will God

Here Solomon speaks about God in the third person. It can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: “But will you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Look

“What I am about to say is important” or “The truth is that”

you—how much less can this temple that I have built

“you, so this temple that I have built certainly cannot contain you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [There is...enough space in heaven](#)
- [There is...enough space in heaven](#)
- [God](#)
- [the earth among people](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

²⁷ But will God actually live on the earth? Look, the entire universe and heaven itself cannot contain you—how much less can this temple that I have built!

UST

²⁷ But [God](#), will you really live on [the earth among people](#)? [There is](#) not [enough space in heaven](#) for you to have enough space to live there. So this [temple](#) that I have commanded my workers to build is certainly too small for you to live in.

1 Kings 8:28

respect this prayer of your servant and his request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “respect me, your servant, as I make this request” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))

listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you today

The words “cry” and “prayer” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he asks Yahweh to help him. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “listen to me, your servant, as I call today for you to help me” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [please](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [am praying](#)
- [me](#)
- [I](#) (2)

ULT

²⁸ Yet please respect this prayer of your servant and his request, Yahweh my God; listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you today.

UST

²⁸ But [Yahweh](#), my [God](#), [please](#) listen to [me](#) while [I am praying](#) to you this day.

1 Kings 8:29

May your eyes be open toward

The eye is a metonym for what the eye does. Alternate translation: "May you watch over" (See: [Metonymy](#))

night and day

This is a merism. Alternate translation: "all the time" or "continually" (See: [Merism](#))

My name and my presence

These two words together emphasize that Yahweh will dwell in the temple. (See: [Doublet](#))

that your servant will pray

Solomon speaks of himself as "your servant" to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "that I, your servant, will pray" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I will always be there](#)
- [me whenever I turn my face toward](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

²⁹ May your eyes be open toward this temple night and day, to the place about which you have said, 'My name and my presence will be there'—in order to listen to the prayers that your servant will pray toward this place.

UST

²⁹ I pray that you would protect this [temple](#) night and day. This is the place about which you have said, '[I will always be there](#).' I request that you listen to [me whenever I turn my face toward](#) this temple and pray.

1 Kings 8:30

listen to the request of your servant and of your people Israel

Solomon speaks of himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “listen to my request and the request of your people Israel” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [when I pray](#)
- [your home in heaven](#)
- [and your people pray](#)
- [while they](#)
- [when I pray](#)

ULT

³⁰ So listen to the request of your servant and of your people Israel when we pray toward this place. Yes, listen from the place where you live, from the heavens; and when you listen, forgive.

UST

³⁰ I request that [when I pray](#) to you [and your people pray](#) to you [while they](#) turn their faces toward this place, that in [your home in heaven](#) you will hear us and forgive us for the sins that we have committed.

1 Kings 8:31

is required to swear

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone requires him to swear” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- temple

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Suppose that people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person
- holy temple

ULT

31 If a man sins against his neighbor and is required to swear an oath, and if he comes and swears an oath before your altar in this house,

UST

31 [Suppose that people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person](#), and they bring him to your [altar](#) outside this [holy temple](#). And suppose that he says, ‘I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not telling the truth.’

1 Kings 8:32

upon his own head

Here “head” refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “on him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

give to him according to his righteousness

“to give him what he deserves because he is righteous”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- judge, judgment
- head
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- innocent
- who is...the truth
- that the other person is
- Then punish the person

ULT

³² listen from the heavens and act. Judge your servants, condemning the guilty and bringing what he has done upon his own head. Declare the innocent not guilty and give to him according to his righteousness.

UST

³² In that case, listen [from heaven](#) and decide [who is](#) telling [the truth](#). [Then punish the person](#) who is guilty as he deserves to be punished, and declare [that the other person is innocent](#).

1 Kings 8:33

your people Israel are defeated by an enemy

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “an enemy defeats your people Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

confess your name

Possible meanings are 1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or 2) “praise you” or 3) “say that they will obey you from now on.”

request forgiveness from you

The abstract noun “forgiveness” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “ask you to forgive them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [confess](#), [confession](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [temple](#)
- [adversary](#), [enemy](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have sinned against](#)
- [Then suppose that they stop acting in a sinful way](#)
- [and acknowledge](#)
- [Or suppose that your Israelite people](#)
- [and acknowledge](#)
- [this temple](#)
- [by](#)
- [they](#)
- [Suppose that they face in the direction of](#)

ULT

33 When your people Israel are defeated by an enemy because they have sinned against you, if they turn back to you, confess your name, pray, and request forgiveness from you in this temple—

UST

33 [Or suppose that your Israelite people](#) are defeated [by](#) their enemies in a battle because [they have sinned against](#) you. Suppose also that they are forced to go to some distant country. [Then suppose that they stop acting in a sinful way. Suppose that they face in the direction of this temple and acknowledge](#) you have justly punished them. And suppose that they plead that you will forgive them.

1 Kings 8:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- return

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- your Israelite people
- our ancestors
- that they have committed
- for the sins

ULT

³⁴ then please listen in the heavens and forgive the sin of your people Israel; bring them back to the land that you gave to their ancestors.

UST

³⁴ In that case, listen to them [from heaven](#), forgive [your Israelite people for the sins that they have committed](#), and bring them back to this land that you gave to [our ancestors](#).

1 Kings 8:35

the skies are shut up and there is no rain

The sky is spoken of as if it were a building in which God stores the rain. Alternate translation: “you do not allow rain to fall” (See: [Metaphor](#))

confess your name

Possible meanings are 1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or 2) “praise you” or 3) “say that they will obey you from now on.” See how you translated this in [1 Kings 8:33](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- confess, confession
- name
- restore, restoration
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- Or suppose that you do...allow
- have sinned against you
- you have justly punished them
- you have justly punished them
- they stop
- and admit that

ULT

³⁵ When the skies are shut up and there is no rain because the people have sinned against you—if they pray toward this place, confess your name, and turn from their sin when you have afflicted them—

UST

³⁵ [Or suppose that you do](#) not [allow](#) any rain to fall because your people [have sinned against you](#). Suppose that they face in the direction of this place [and admit that you have justly punished them](#). Suppose also that [they stop](#) acting sinfully and humbly pray to you.

1 Kings 8:36

in which they should walk

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "that they should live" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- your Israelite people
- right
- that they have committed
- to your people
- to conduct their lives
- this land
- that they have committed

ULT

³⁶ then listen in heaven and forgive the sin of your servants and of your people Israel, when you teach them the good way in which they should walk. Send rain on your land, which you have given to your people as an inheritance.

UST

³⁶ In that case, listen to them [in heaven](#) and forgive [your Israelite people](#) for the sins [that they have committed](#). Teach them the [right](#) way [to conduct their lives](#), and then send rain on [this land](#) that you have given [to your people](#) to belong to them permanently.

1 Kings 8:37

blight or mildew

These are agricultural terms that refer to the death of crops from either too little or too much rain, respectively.

locusts or caterpillars

A “locust” is a type of grasshopper that causes destruction by eating crops. The word “caterpillar” refers to an early growth stage of the locust.

Translation Words - ULT

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [famine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [by](#)
- [surround any of their cities](#)
- [experience famine](#)

ULT

³⁷ Suppose there is famine in the land, or suppose that there is disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars; or suppose that an enemy attacks the city gates in their land, or that there is any plague or sickness—

UST

³⁷ Suppose that the people of this land [experience famine](#), or suppose that there is a plague by mildew or [by](#) locusts or grasshoppers. Or suppose that their enemies [surround any of their cities](#) in order to attack them. Suppose that any of those bad things happen to them.

1 Kings 8:38

prayers and requests

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the person is sincere as he makes his request. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). Alternate translation: “requests” (See: [Doublet](#))

knowing the plague in his own heart

Possible meanings are 1) The person’s sin is spoken of as if it were a plague. Alternate translation: “knowing the sin in his own heart” or 2) The “plague” is a metonym for the sins that the disasters are a punishment for. Alternate translation: “knowing in his heart that the plague is the result of his own sin” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- grace, gracious
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- hand
- people, people group,
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- earnestly plead with you
- their inner beings
- your Israelite people
- and pray
- stretch out their arms toward
- they are
- temple
- because they know

ULT

³⁸ and suppose then that prayers and requests are made by a person or by all your people Israel—each knowing the plague in his own heart as he spreads out his hands toward this temple.

UST

³⁸ And suppose that [your Israelite people earnestly plead with you, because they know in their inner beings that they are suffering because they have sinned. Suppose that they stretch out their arms toward this temple and pray.](#)

1 Kings 8:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- son
- heart
- heart
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- person
- as he needs
- thinking
- only one who
- knows

ULT

³⁹ Then listen from heaven, the place where you live, forgive and act, and reward every person for all he does; you know his heart, because you and you only know the hearts of all human beings.

UST

³⁹ In that case, listen to them from your home in heaven, and forgive them, and help them. You are the only one who knows what people are thinking, so act toward each person as he needs,

1 Kings 8:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- fear, afraid, dread
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- live
- may then have an awesome respect
- our ancestors
- for you

ULT

⁴⁰ Do this so that they may fear you all the days that they live on the land that you gave to our ancestors.

UST

⁴⁰ in order that your people [may then have an awesome respect for you](#) all the years that they [live](#) in this land that you gave to [our ancestors](#).

1 Kings 8:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- alien, foreign, foreigner

Translation Words - UST

- name
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- alien, foreign, foreigner

ULT

⁴¹ In addition, concerning the foreigner who does not belong to your people Israel: When he comes from a distant country because of your name—

UST

⁴¹⁻⁴² There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who will have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great, and because they have heard about the great things that you have done for your people. Suppose that people like that come here to this temple to worship you and pray.

1 Kings 8:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- pray, prayer
- might, mighty, mighty works
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- name
- pray, prayer
- might, mighty, mighty works
- hand
- house

ULT

⁴² for they will hear of your great name, your mighty hand, and your raised arm —when he comes and prays toward this temple,

UST

⁴¹⁻⁴² There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who will have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great, and because they have heard about the great things that you have done for your people. Suppose that people like that come here to this temple to worship you and pray.

1 Kings 8:43

this house I have built is called by your name

The phrase “is called by your name” shows that God possesses and owns the house. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you own this house that I have built” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [alien, foreign, foreigner](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [your Israelite people](#)
- [they](#)
- [they](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [alien, foreign, foreigner](#)
- [temple](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁴³ then please listen from heaven, the place where you live, and do whatever the foreigner asks of you. Do this so that all the peoples on earth may know your name and fear you, as do your own people Israel. Do this so they might know that this house I have built is called by your name.

UST

⁴³ In that case, in your home [in heaven](#) listen to their prayer, and do for them what [they](#) request you to do. Do that in order that all the people groups in the world will know about you and revere you, as we [your Israelite people](#) do. Then [they](#) will know that this [temple](#) that I have caused to be built to honor you belongs to you and is where you should be worshiped.

1 Kings 8:44

Suppose that your people go out...suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

for your name

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for...name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people will worship you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [household](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you](#)
- [your people pray](#)
- [their enemies](#)
- [they are](#)
- [temple](#)
- [to go](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ Suppose that your people go out to battle against an enemy, by whatever way you may send them, and suppose that they pray to you, Yahweh, toward the city that you have chosen, and toward the house that I have built for your name.

UST

⁴⁴ Suppose that you send your people [to go](#) to fight against [their enemies](#). And suppose that [your people pray](#) to [you](#), wherever [they are](#), and that they turn toward this city that you have chosen and toward this [temple](#) that I have caused to be built for you.

1 Kings 8:45

their prayer and their request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people are sincere as they make their request. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). Alternate translation: “their request” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- grace, gracious
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- judge, judgment
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- to their prayers
- in heaven
- and assist them
- Listen to what they plead for

ULT

⁴⁵ Then listen in the heavens to their prayer and their request, and help their cause.

UST

⁴⁵ In that case, listen [in heaven to their prayers](#). [Listen to what they plead for](#) you to do, [and assist them](#).

1 Kings 8:46

Suppose that they sin...suppose that you are

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- adversary, enemy
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- sin against
- sins
- their enemies
- capture them
- their own countries, even to countries

ULT

⁴⁶ Suppose that they sin against you, since there is no one who does not sin, and suppose that you are angry with them and deliver them to the enemy, so that the enemy takes them away captive to their land, whether distant or near.

UST

⁴⁶ It is true that everyone [sins](#). So, suppose that your people [sin against](#) you and that you become angry with them. You might allow [their enemies](#) to defeat them, [capture them](#), and take them away to [their own countries, even to countries](#) that are far away.

1 Kings 8:47

suppose that they realize...suppose that they repent... Suppose that they say

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

where they have been exiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "where their enemies have taken them as exiles" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

captors

people who keep others as prisoners

We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly

These two sentences mean the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the people's actions were. (See: [Parallelism](#))

acted perversely and sinned

The words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how badly the people sinned. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- heart
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- return
- return

Translation Words - UST

- We have sinned
- sincerely
- and have done things that are very wicked
- there
- in those countries
- they...repent
- and plead with you

ULT

⁴⁷ Then suppose that they realize they are in the land where they have been exiled, and suppose that they repent and seek favor from you from the land of their captors. Suppose that they say, 'We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly.'

UST

⁴⁷ And suppose that, while your people are [in those countries](#) to which they had to go, [they sincerely repent and plead with you there](#) saying, '[We have sinned and have done things that are very wicked.](#)'

1 Kings 8:48

Suppose that they return...suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

with all their heart and with all their soul

The idiom “with all...heart” means “completely” and “with all...soul” means “with all...being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:4](#). Alternate translation: “with all their being” or “with all their energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

in the land

“while they are living in the land”

toward their land

“toward the land in which they belong.” This refers to Israel.

for your name

The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for...name” refers to worshiping the person. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “in which people will worship you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- pray, prayer
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- adversary, enemy
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- household
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Suppose that they very truly and sincerely
- Suppose that they very truly and sincerely
- they then pray to you
- our ancestors
- repent while in the land of their enemies
- who captured them
- temple
- place where we should worship you
- And they turn toward

ULT

48 Suppose that they return to you with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their enemies who captured them, and suppose that they pray to you toward their land, which you gave to their ancestors, and toward the city that you chose, and toward the house that I have built for your name.

UST

48 [Suppose that they very truly and sincerely repent while in the land of their enemies who captured them. And they turn toward](#) this land that you gave to [our ancestors](#). Suppose that they turn toward this city that you have chosen to be the [place where we should worship you](#), and toward this [temple](#) that I have caused to be built for you. Suppose that [they then pray to you](#).

1 Kings 8:49

their prayer and their request

The two words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize that the people were sincere as they made their request to Yahweh. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and help them](#)
- [in heaven](#)
- [and help them](#)
- [while they plead for your help](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ Then from heaven, the place where you live, listen to their prayer and their request for help, and you will make matters right for them.

UST

⁴⁹ In that case, from your home [in heaven](#) listen to them [while they plead for your help, and help them](#).

1 Kings 8:50

Forgive your people who have sinned against you, and all their transgressions that they have committed against you

Solomon twice requests Yahweh to forgive the people. This emphasizes the earnestness of his request. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [mercy](#), [merciful](#)
- [captive](#), [captivate](#), [captivity](#), [catch](#), [captured](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them](#)
- [and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them](#)
- [they](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ Forgive your people who have sinned against you, and all their transgressions that they have committed against you, and make them objects of compassion before their conquerors, and cause their conquerors to have compassion on them.

UST

⁵⁰ Forgive them for all the [sins](#) that [they](#) have committed against you [and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them](#).

1 Kings 8:51

a furnace where iron is forged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a furnace where people forge iron" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- are your special possession
- of Egypt
- They
- You brought our ancestors out

ULT

⁵¹ They are your people whom you have chosen, whom you rescued out of Egypt as if from the middle of a furnace where iron is forged.

UST

⁵¹ Do not forget that the Israelites are your people. [They are your special possession.](#) [You brought our ancestors out of Egypt](#) where they were greatly suffering as though they were in a blazing furnace.

1 Kings 8:52

May your eyes be open

The eye is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: "Please pay attention" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- grace, gracious
- grace, gracious
- call, call out
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- listen to
- their king, and heed their prayers whenever
- request that
- your Israelite people
- they call out
- I

ULT

⁵² May your eyes be open to the request of your servant and to the requests of your people Israel, to listen to them whenever they cry to you.

UST

⁵² [I request that](#) you always [listen to your Israelite people](#) and to [their king](#), and [heed their prayers whenever they call out](#) to you to help them.

1 Kings 8:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- you
- is what you told Moses to tell them when
- out of Egypt
- our ancestors
- chose them from
- people groups
- in the world
- is what you told Moses to tell them when

ULT

⁵³ For you separated them from among all the peoples of the earth to belong to you and receive your promises, just as you explained by Moses your servant, when you brought our fathers out of Egypt, Lord Yahweh.”

UST

⁵³ You chose them from all the other people groups in the world to belong to you, which is what you told Moses to tell them when you brought our ancestors out of Egypt.”

1 Kings 8:54

prayer and request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#). Alternate translation: “request” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lifted up](#)
- [of the altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [of the altar](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ So it was that when Solomon had finished praying all this prayer and request to Yahweh, he arose from before the altar of Yahweh, from kneeling on his knees with his hands spread out toward the heavens.

UST

⁵⁴ After [Solomon](#) had finished praying this and pleading to [Yahweh](#) for his help, he stood up in front [of the altar](#) where he had been kneeling. He [lifted up](#) his arms.

1 Kings 8:55

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then he asked God to bless](#)
- [the Israelite](#)
- [people](#)

ULT

⁵⁵ He stood and blessed all the assembly of Israel in a loud voice, saying,

UST

⁵⁵ [Then he asked God to bless](#) all [the Israelite people](#). He prayed loudly, saying,

1 Kings 8:56

May Yahweh be praised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Praise Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Not one word has failed out of all Yahweh's good promises

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has made every word of his good promises come true" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Moses
- hand
- people, people group,
- rest, rested, restless
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Praise
- Yahweh
- us his people
- good things
- Moses
- done
- us his people
- peace
- the man who served him very well

ULT

56 "May Yahweh be praised, who has given rest to his people Israel, keeping all his promises. Not one word has failed out of all Yahweh's good promises that he made with Moses his servant.

UST

56 "[Praise Yahweh](#), who has given [us his people peace](#), like he promised that he would do. He has [done](#) every one of the [good things](#) that he promised to [Moses, the man who served him very well](#).

1 Kings 8:57

leave us or forsake us

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize Solomon's desire for Yahweh to be present with the people. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [our ancestors](#)
- [and that he will never, never abandon us](#)

ULT

⁵⁷ May Yahweh our God be with us, as he was with our ancestors. May he never leave us or forsake us,

UST

⁵⁷ I pray that our [God](#) will be with us like he was with [our ancestors, and that he will never, never abandon us](#).

1 Kings 8:58

incline our hearts to him

Here their "hearts" refer to the people's desires and emotions. Desiring to please someone is spoken of as inclining the heart toward that person. Alternate translation: "make us want to please him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

live in all his ways

Here "in his ways" is an idiom that refers to the way he wants people to live. Alternate translation: "live as he requires us to live" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [statute](#)
- [statute](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandments](#)
- [and to obey all his](#)
- [to...to conduct our lives as he wants us to](#)
- [our ancestors](#)
- [and statutes and decrees](#)
- [and statutes and decrees](#)

ULT

58 that he may incline our hearts to him, to live in all his ways and keep his commandments and his regulations and his statutes, which he commanded our fathers.

UST

58 I pray that he will cause us to loyally serve him, [to conduct our lives as he wants us to, and to obey all his commandments and statutes and decrees](#) that he gave to [our ancestors](#).

1 Kings 8:59

day and night

This merism refers to “all the time” or “continually.” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- statute
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- that Yahweh our God
- I pray that he will think about them
- that Yahweh our God
- us Israelite people
- mercifully toward
- us Israelite people
- and toward our king, giving us
- I pray that he will always

ULT

59 Let these words I have spoken, by which I have made request before Yahweh, be near Yahweh our God day and night, so that he may help the cause of his servant and the cause of his people Israel, as every day will require;

UST

59 I pray that Yahweh our God will never forget these words that I have prayed, pleading for his help. I pray that he will think about them by day and by night. I pray that he will always act mercifully toward us Israelite people and toward our king, giving us the things that we need day by day.

1 Kings 8:60

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- God
- you, Yahweh
- the people groups
- in the world
- will know that

ULT

⁶⁰ that all the peoples of the earth may know that Yahweh, he is God, and there is no other God!

UST

⁶⁰ If you do that, all [the people groups in the world will know that you, Yahweh,](#) are the only one who is [God](#), and that there is no other one who is God.

1 Kings 8:61

let your heart be true

“be wholly devoted”

walk in his statutes

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “always obey his statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and](#) [commands](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fully committed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁶¹ Therefore let your heart be true to Yahweh our God, to walk in his statutes and keep his commandments, as on this day.”

UST

⁶¹ I pray that you, his people, will always be [fully committed](#) to [Yahweh](#), and that you will obey all his statutes [and](#) [commands](#), like you are doing now.”

1 Kings 8:62

all Israel with him

This generalization may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [1 Kings 8:1](#), or 2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- offered sacrifices
- offered sacrifices
- Then the king

ULT

⁶² So the king and all Israel with him offered sacrifices to Yahweh.

UST

⁶² [Then the king](#) and all [the Israelite people](#) who were there [offered sacrifices](#) to [Yahweh](#).

1 Kings 8:63

all the people of Israel

This generalization may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [1 Kings 8:1](#), or 2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

twenty-two thousand oxen

"22,000 oxen" (See: [Numbers](#))

120,000 sheep

"one hundred twenty thousand sheep" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- people
- Yahweh
- the temple
- people
- They sacrificed
- cattle
- sheep
- They sacrificed
- Yahweh
- Then...king
- the temple

ULT

⁶³ Solomon offered a sacrifice of fellowship offerings to Yahweh: twenty-two thousand oxen and 120,000 sheep. So the king and all the people of Israel dedicated the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁶³ [They sacrificed](#) twenty-two thousand [cattle](#) and 120,000 [sheep](#) to restore fellowship with [Yahweh](#). Then the [king](#) and all the [people](#) dedicated [the temple](#).

1 Kings 8:64

the bronze altar that was before Yahweh

“the bronze altar that was in Yahweh’s presence.” Since the temple is Yahweh’s dwelling place among his people, the altar is described as being in his presence.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bronze
- grain offering
- grain offering (2)
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- also dedicated
- temple
- Yahweh (2)
- the king
- the bronze
- They sacrificed them there
- all those sacrifices...be burned (2)
- temple

ULT

64 The same day the king set apart the middle of the courtyard in front of the temple of Yahweh, for there he offered the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat of the fellowship offerings, because the bronze altar that was before Yahweh was too small to receive the burnt offering, the grain offerings, and the fat of the fellowship offerings.

UST

64 On that day, the king also dedicated the middle part of the courtyard that was in front of the temple. Then he offered there sacrifices that would be completely burned on the altar, the offerings of flour and the fat of the animals that were sacrificed to restore fellowship with Yahweh. They sacrificed them there because the bronze altar was not big enough for all those sacrifices to be burned on it that day.

1 Kings 8:65

all Israel with him

This generalization may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [1 Kings 8:1](#), or 2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:62](#). (See: [Hyperbole](#))

seven days...seven days...fourteen days

"7 days...7 days...14 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [before the Lord](#)
- [before the Lord](#)
- [Israelite people](#)
- [and the border of Egypt in the far south](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [of people there](#)

ULT

65 So Solomon held the feast at that time, and all Israel with him, a great assembly, from Lebo Hamath to the brook of Egypt, before Yahweh our God for seven days and also for another seven days, a total of fourteen days.

UST

65 Then [Solomon](#) and all the [Israelite people](#) celebrated the Festival of Shelters for seven days and then for another seven days, [before the Lord](#), for a total of fourteen days. There was a huge crowd [of people there](#), some of whom had come from distant places like Hamath in the far north [and the border of Egypt in the far south](#).

1 Kings 8:66

eighth day

The word “eighth” is the ordinal form of “8.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

joyful and glad

The two words mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to bless](#)
- [because of all](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the people](#)
- [They all praised him](#)
- [happy](#)
- [his](#)
- [David and](#)

ULT

66 On the eighth day he sent the people away, and they blessed the king and went to their homes with joyful and glad hearts for all the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, his servant, and to Israel, his people.

UST

66 On the final day, Solomon sent [the people](#) to their homes. [They all praised him](#) and went home [happy because of all](#) the things that [Yahweh](#) had done [to bless David and his](#) Israelite people.

1 Kings 9

1 Kings 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

There are two parts to this chapter. Verses 1–9 is a dream in which God warned Solomon that he and his descendants were not to worship idols. If they did this, the temple would be destroyed. Verses 10–28 is about Solomon's extensive building and his partnership with Hiram, king of Tyre. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Worship only Yahweh

Yahweh alone must be worshiped. It is necessary for people to stay faithful to God and not worship idols. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

"Walk" is a common image in Scripture. It is said, "if you walk before me as David your father walked." (See: [walk](#), [walked](#))

1 Kings 9:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Solomon (2)
- delight
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- Solomon's workers
- that Solomon wanted them (2)
- that Solomon wanted them
- and his
- the temple
- palace

ULT

¹ After Solomon had finished building the house of Yahweh and the king's palace, and after he had accomplished all that he wanted to do,

UST

¹ After [Solomon's workers](#) had finished building [the temple and his palace](#) and everything else [that Solomon wanted them](#) to build,

1 Kings 9:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [him in a dream](#)

ULT

² Yahweh appeared to Solomon a second time, as he had appeared to him at Gibeon.

UST

² [Yahweh](#) appeared to [him in a dream](#) a second time, like he had appeared to him at the city of Gibeon.

1 Kings 9:3

your prayer and your request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh recognized that Solomon’s request was sincere. See how you translated similar words in [1 Kings 8:28](#).
Alternate translation: “your request” (See: [Doublet](#))

to put my name there forever

The name is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: “to dwell there and to claim possession of it forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

My eyes and my heart will be there

The eyes and heart are synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “I will protect and care for it” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pleaded for me](#)
- [apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [myself](#)
- [prayed](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³ Then Yahweh said to him, “I have heard your prayer and your request that you have made before me. I have set apart this house, which you have built, to myself, to put my name there forever. My eyes and my heart will be there for all time.

UST

³ [Yahweh](#) said to him, “I heard what you [prayed](#) and what you [pleaded for me](#) to do. I have set this [house apart](#) for [myself](#), for me to be present in it forever.

1 Kings 9:4

if you walk before me as David your father walked

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "if you live the way I want you to live, just as David your father did" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in integrity of heart and in uprightness

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how righteous David was. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [statute](#)
- [statute](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I have commanded you to obey](#)
- [very sincerely](#)
- [David](#)
- [like your father](#)
- [I have commanded you to obey](#)
- [I have commanded you to obey](#)
- [your life as I want you to](#)
- [your life as I want you to](#)
- [conduct](#)

ULT

⁴ As for you, if you walk before me as David your father walked in integrity of heart and in uprightness, obeying all that I have commanded you and keeping my statutes and my decrees,

UST

⁴ And as for you, if you [conduct your life as I want you to](#), [like your father David](#) did, and if you [very sincerely](#) obey all the statutes and decrees that [I have commanded you to obey](#),

1 Kings 9:5

the throne of your kingdom

Here “throne” refers to his reign. Alternate translation: “your dynasty” or “your reign” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will never fail to be on the throne of Israel

The action of ruling a kingdom is spoken of as if it were a person sitting on a throne. This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “will always rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cut off
- throne, enthroned
- throne, enthroned
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- his descendants
- that Israel
- father
- father
- I promised him
- be ruled
- I would do
- be ruled

ULT

⁵ then I will establish the throne of your kingdom over Israel forever, as I promised David your father, saying, ‘A descendant of yours will never fail to be on the throne of Israel.’

UST

⁵ I will do what I promised your [father](#) that [I would do](#). [I promised him that Israel](#) would always [be ruled](#) by [his descendants](#).

1 Kings 9:6

my commandments and my statutes

Here the words “commandments” and “statutes” mean basically the same thing and emphasize all that Yahweh has commanded. (See: [Doublet](#))

worship other gods and bow down to them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [suppose that you disobey](#)
- [or your descendants](#)
- [suppose that you start to...other gods](#)
- [But suppose that](#)
- [stop worshiping me](#)
- [suppose that you start to...other gods](#)
- [worship](#)

ULT

⁶ But if you turn away, you or your children, and do not keep my commandments and my statutes that I have placed before you, and if you go and worship other gods and bow down to them,

UST

⁶ [But suppose that](#) you [or your descendants stop worshiping me](#); [suppose that you disobey](#) the commands and decrees that I have given to you; [suppose that you start to worship other gods](#).

1 Kings 9:7

set apart to my name

Here the word “name” is a metonym for the person who possesses something. Alternate translation: “set apart for myself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will cast it out of my sight

The abstract noun “sight” can be expressed with the verb “see.” Looking at something is a metaphor for protecting it. Alternate translation: “I will put it where I no longer have to see it” or “I will get rid of it so I no longer have to protect it” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- cut off
- face, facial
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- I will also abandon
- my Israelite people
- Israel
- Then people
- Then I will remove
- from
- to
- this temple

ULT

⁷ then will I cut off Israel from off the ground that I have given them; and this house that I have set apart to my name, I will cast it out of my sight, and Israel will become an example to be mocked and an object of ridicule among all peoples.

UST

⁷ [Then I will remove my Israelite people from](#) the land that I have given [to](#) them. [I will also abandon this temple](#) that I have dedicated. [Then people](#) everywhere will despise [Israel](#) and make fun of it.

1 Kings 9:8

This temple will become a heap of ruins

"This temple will be destroyed and its remains will be piled into a high mound"

will be shocked and will hiss

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will express amazement and make a sound of disrespect" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [household](#)
- [amazed](#), [amazement](#), [astonished](#), [marvel](#), [marveled](#), [marvelous](#), [wonder](#), [dumbfounded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [astonished when they see it](#)

ULT

⁸ This temple will become a heap of ruins, and everyone who passes by it will be shocked and will hiss. They will ask, 'Why has Yahweh done this to this land and to this house?'

UST

⁸ Despite the fact that this [temple](#) is very beautiful, there will come a time when everyone who passes by will be [astonished when they see it](#), and they will hiss and say, 'Why has [Yahweh](#) done this to this land and to this temple?'

1 Kings 9:9

bowed down to them and worshiped them

These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase "bowed down to them" describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- their God
- accept...gods
- Yahweh
- Yahweh has caused them to experience
- and worship
- these disasters
- Egypt
- their ancestors
- Israelite people abandoned
- one who brought

ULT

⁹ Others will answer, 'Because they forsook Yahweh, their God, who had brought their ancestors out of the land of Egypt, and they laid hold of other gods and bowed down to them and worshiped them. That is why Yahweh has brought all this disaster on them.'

UST

⁹ Other people will reply, 'It happened because the [Israelite people abandoned Yahweh their God](#), the [one who brought their ancestors](#) out of [Egypt](#). They started to [accept and worship](#) other [gods](#). And that is why [Yahweh has caused them to experience](#) all [these disasters](#).'

1 Kings 9:10

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way of doing this, you could consider using it here.

at the end of twenty years

"after 20 years"

Solomon had finished building

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon's workers worked for...temple
- Solomon's workers worked for...temple
- and the palace
- Solomon's workers worked for...temple
- Solomon's workers worked for...temple
- and the palace (2)

ULT

¹⁰ It came about at the end of twenty years that Solomon had finished building the two buildings, the temple of Yahweh and the king's palace.

UST

¹⁰ [Solomon's workers worked for](#) twenty years to build the [temple and the palace](#).

1 Kings 9:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- cedar, cedarwood
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- After it was all finished, King Solomon
- Tyre
- all the cedar
- the king of
- he
- the gold that

ULT

¹¹ Now Hiram, the king of Tyre, had furnished Solomon with cedar and cypress trees, and with gold—all that Solomon desired—so King Solomon gave Hiram twenty cities in the land of Galilee.

UST

¹¹ Hiram, [the king of](#) the city of [Tyre](#), had arranged for his workers to give [Solomon all the cedar](#) and pine logs and all [the gold that he](#) needed for this work. [After it was all finished, King Solomon](#) gave to Hiram twenty cities in the region of Galilee.

1 Kings 9:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [went](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

¹² Hiram came out from Tyre to see the cities that Solomon had given him, but they did not please him.

UST

¹² But when Hiram [went](#) from Tyre to Galilee to see the cities that [Solomon](#) had given to him, he was not pleased with them.

1 Kings 9:13

What cities are these which you have given me, my brother?

Hiram is rebuking Solomon. This questions can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "These cities that you have given me are good for nothing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

which they are still called today

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and people still call them that today" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [My friend](#)
- [that region](#)
- [Hiram called](#)

ULT

¹³ So Hiram said, "What cities are these which you have given me, my brother?" Hiram called them the Land of Kabul, which they are still called today.

UST

¹³ He said to Solomon, "[My friend](#), those cities that you gave me are worthless." Because of that, [Hiram called that region](#) Worthless.

1 Kings 9:14

120 talents of gold

“one hundred and twenty talents of gold.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “about 4,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- of gold for those cities

ULT

14 Hiram had sent to the king 120 talents of gold.

UST

14 Hiram gave [Solomon](#) only 4,000 kilograms [of gold for those cities](#).

1 Kings 9:15

the account of the forced labor which King Solomon imposed

“the account of Solomon requiring men to work”

the Millo

Possible meanings are 1) “the terrace system” or 2) “the landfill.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- Solomon
- around Jerusalem
- King
- the temple
- and his palace

ULT

¹⁵ This is the account of the forced labor which King Solomon imposed to build the temple of Yahweh and his own palace, the Millo, the wall of Jerusalem, and Hazor, and Megiddo, and Gezer.

UST

¹⁵ This is a record of the work that [King Solomon](#) forced men to do. He forced them to build [the temple and his palace](#) and the landfill on the east side of the city, and the wall [around Jerusalem](#), and to rebuild the cities of Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer.

1 Kings 9:16

Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up

The person is a metonym for the army he commands. Alternate translation: "The army of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, had gone up" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- all the people of the Canaan people group
- The king of Egypt
- Solomon
- and killed
- Then they had burned the houses in the city
- was that the army of the king of Egypt

ULT

16 Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up and taken Gezer. He burned it and killed the Canaanites in the city. Then Pharaoh gave the city to his daughter, Solomon's wife, as a wedding gift.

UST

16 The reason they needed to rebuild Gezer was that the army of the king of Egypt had attacked Gezer and captured it. Then they had burned the houses in the city and killed all the people of the Canaan people group who lived there. The king of Egypt gave that city to his daughter for a gift when she married Solomon.

1 Kings 9:17

So Solomon rebuilt Gezer

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's workers](#)

ULT

¹⁷ So Solomon rebuilt Gezer and Beth Horon the Lower,

UST

¹⁷ So [Solomon's workers](#) also rebuilt the city of Gezer, and they also rebuilt the city of Lower Beth Horon.

1 Kings 9:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Tamar](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tamar](#)
- [and Tamar in the wilderness in the southern part of Judah](#)

ULT

18 Baalath and Tamar ^[1] in the wilderness in the land of Judah,

UST

18 They also rebuilt the cities of Baalath [and Tamar in the wilderness in the southern part of Judah](#).

1 Kings 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- he
- in Jerusalem
- and in other places

ULT

¹⁹ and all the store cities that he possessed, and the cities for his chariots and the cities for his horsemen, and whatever he wished to build for his pleasure in Jerusalem, in Lebanon, and in all the lands under his rule.

UST

¹⁹ They also built the cities where they kept the supplies for Solomon, the places where his horses and chariots were kept. They also built everything else that he wanted them to build, in Jerusalem and in Lebanon, and in other places in the area over which he ruled.

1 Kings 9:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Hittite
- Amorite
- Hivite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- captured their land
- Israelites
- the Heth
- the Amor
- the Hiv
- and...Jebus
- the Periz
- people groups

ULT

²⁰ As for all the people who were left of the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, who were not of the people of Israel,

UST

²⁰ There were many [people groups](#) who belonged to [the Amor](#), [the Heth](#), [the Periz](#), [the Hiv](#), and the [Jebus](#), who were not killed when the [Israelites captured their land](#).

1 Kings 9:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Their descendants
- slaves
- Israel
- Solomon
- to build

ULT

²¹ their descendants who were left after them in the land, whom the people of Israel were not able to totally destroy—Solomon made them into forced laborers, which they are to this day.

UST

²¹ [Their descendants](#) still lived in [Israel](#). It was those people whom [Solomon](#) forced to become his slaves [to build](#) all those places, and they are still [slaves](#).

1 Kings 9:22

Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel

“Solomon did not force the people of Israel to labor”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- horseman
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- any Israelite people
- any Israelite people
- But Solomon
- his horses
- army officers
- to become
- slaves
- soldiers, servants, officials

ULT

²² However, Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel. Instead, they became his soldiers and his servants, his officials, and his officers and commanders of his chariot forces and his horsemen.

UST

²² But Solomon did not force any Israelite people to become slaves. Some of them became soldiers, servants, officials, army officers, commanders of his chariot forces, and men who rode on his horses.

1 Kings 9:23

550 of them

“five hundred and fifty of them” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [slaves who worked](#)
- [officials](#)

ULT

²³ These were also the chief officers managing the supervisors who were over Solomon's works, 550 of them, who supervised the people who did the work.

UST

²³ There were 550 [officials](#) who supervised the [slaves who worked](#) to build all those places.

1 Kings 9:24

built the Millo

Possible meanings are 1) “built the terrace system” or 2) “built the landfill.” See how you translated “the Millo” in [1 Kings 9:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [the palace](#)

ULT

²⁴ Pharaoh's daughter moved from the city of David to the house that Solomon had built for her. Later, Solomon built the Millo.

UST

²⁴ After Solomon's wife, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt, moved from the part of Jerusalem called the city of [David](#) to [the palace](#) that Solomon's workers built for her, Solomon told his workers to fill in the land on the east side of the city.

1 Kings 9:25

altar that was before Yahweh

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Kings 8:64](#).

So he completed the temple

Solomon is a metonym for the workers he hired to do the work.
Alternate translation: "So his workers completed the temple" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- house

Translation Words - UST

- on the altar
- with Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- temple offerings...the priests burned completely
- the temple

ULT

²⁵ Three times each year Solomon offered burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar that he built for Yahweh, burning incense with them on the altar that was before Yahweh. So he completed the temple and was now using it.

UST

²⁵ Three times each year [Solomon](#) brought to the [temple offerings](#) that [the priests burned completely on the altar](#) and offerings to promise friendship [with Yahweh](#). He also brought incense to be burned in the presence of [Yahweh](#). And that is how his men finished building [the temple](#).

1 Kings 9:26

King Solomon built

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a fleet of ships

“a large group of ships”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's workers also built](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

²⁶ King Solomon built a fleet of ships in Ezion Geber, which is near Elath on the shore of the Red Sea, in the land of Edom.

UST

²⁶ [King Solomon's workers also built](#) a fleet of ships at the city of Ezion Geber, which is near the city of Elath, on the shore of the Sea of Reeds, in the land belonging to the Edom people group.

1 Kings 9:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- with Solomon's
- some...sailors
- workers
- expert

ULT

²⁷ Hiram sent servants to Solomon's fleet, sailors who were familiar with the sea, with Solomon's own servants.

UST

²⁷ King Hiram sent [some expert sailors](#) to go on the ships [with Solomon's workers](#).

1 Kings 9:28

420 talents of gold

“four hundred and twenty talents of gold.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “about 14,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

28 They went to Ophir with servants of Solomon. From there they brought back 420 talents of gold for King Solomon.

9:18 ^[1] *Tamar* is also pronounced *Tadmor* .

UST

28 They sailed to the region of Ophir and brought back to [Solomon](#) about fourteen metric tons [of gold](#).

1 Kings 10

1 Kings 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

There are two parts to this chapter: The fame of Solomon's wisdom and the wealth of his kingdom. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

==Queen of Sheba == King Solomon became so famous for his wisdom that the queen of Sheba (modern day Yemen) came all the way to see him and was deeply impressed. God promised him great wealth and he became famously rich. (See: [promise](#), [promised](#))

1 Kings 10:1

Solomon's fame concerning the name of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is represented by his "name." Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "Solomon's fame, which glorified Yahweh" or 2) Alternate translation: "Solomon's fame, which Yahweh had given him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

¹ When the queen of Sheba heard of Solomon's fame concerning the name of Yahweh, she came to test him with hard questions.

UST

¹ The queen who ruled the land of Sheba heard that [Yahweh](#) had caused [Solomon](#) to become famous, so she traveled to Jerusalem to ask him questions that were difficult to answer.

1 Kings 10:2

all that was in her heart

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “everything she wanted to know” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [camel](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [which she was interested](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [She](#)
- [camels](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

² She came to Jerusalem with a very long caravan, with camels loaded with spices, much gold, and many precious gemstones. When she arrived, she told Solomon all that was in her heart.

UST

² [She](#) came with a large group of wealthy people, and she brought [camels](#) that were loaded with spices, precious gems, and much [gold](#). When she met [Solomon](#), she asked him questions about all the things in [which she was interested](#).

1 Kings 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [He](#)

ULT

³ Solomon answered all her questions.
There was nothing she asked that the king did not answer.

UST

³ [Solomon](#) answered all her questions.
[He](#) explained everything that she asked about, even things that were very difficult.

1 Kings 10:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [household](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [palace](#)

ULT

⁴ When the queen of Sheba saw all Solomon's wisdom, the palace that he had built,

UST

⁴ The queen realized that [Solomon](#) was very wise. She saw his [palace](#),

1 Kings 10:5

the seating of his servants

Possible meanings are 1) "how his servants were seated around the table" or 2) "where his servants lived."

there was no more breath in her

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "she was utterly amazed" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [She was extremely amazed](#)
- [to the temple to be offered](#)
- [and the sacrifices](#)
- [she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [to the temple to be offered](#)

ULT

⁵ the food on his table, the seating of his servants, the work of his servants and their clothing, also his cupbearers, and the manner in which he offered burnt offerings in the house of Yahweh, there was no more breath in her.

UST

⁵ she saw the food that was served on his table every day, [she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms](#), the servants who served the food and wine, [and the sacrifices](#) that he took [to the temple to be offered](#). [She was extremely amazed](#).

1 Kings 10:6

I heard in my own land

"I heard while I was in my own land"

your words and your wisdom

Here the word "wisdom" can describe the word "words." Alternate translation: "your wise sayings" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- is true
- the king

ULT

⁶ She said to the king, "It is true, the report that I heard in my own land of your words and your wisdom.

UST

⁶ She said to [the king](#), "Everything that I heard in my own country about you and about how wise you are [is true](#)!"

1 Kings 10:7

my eyes have seen it

The phrase “my eyes” emphasizes that she herself saw it. Alternate translation: “I have seen it for myself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth

This can be stated without the passive form. Alternate translation: “They did not tell me about even half of your wisdom and wealth” or “You are much more wise and wealthy than what they told me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [believe it was true](#)

ULT

⁷ I did not believe what I heard until I came here, and now my eyes have seen it. Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth! You have exceeded the fame that I heard about.

UST

⁷ But I did not [believe it was true](#) until I came here and saw it myself. But really, what they told me is only half of what they could have told me about you. You are extremely wise and rich, more than what people told me.

1 Kings 10:8

who constantly stand before you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “who are always in your presence waiting to serve you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to minister, ministry
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- are waiting to serve you
- are your servants

ULT

⁸ How blessed are your wives, and how blessed are your servants who constantly stand before you, because they hear your wisdom. ^[1]

UST

⁸ How fortunate are your wives! And how fortunate [are your servants](#), who [are waiting to serve you](#), who are listening to the wise things that you say!

1 Kings 10:9

May Yahweh your God be praised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May people praise Yahweh your God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who placed you on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the king who sits on it. Alternate translation: "who made you king of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- throne, enthroned
- delight
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Praise
- your God
- and therefore he has
- Yahweh
- you (2)
- the Israelite people
- Israel
- in order that
- king
- who has shown that he is pleased with
- king

ULT

⁹ May Yahweh your God be praised, who has taken pleasure in you, who placed you on the throne of Israel. Because Yahweh loved Israel forever, he has made you king, for you to do justice and righteousness!"

UST

⁹ [Praise Yahweh, your God, who has shown that he is pleased with](#) you by causing you to become the [king](#) of [Israel](#)! God has always loved [the Israelite people](#), and therefore he has appointed you to be their [king, in order that you](#) will rule them fairly and righteously."

1 Kings 10:10

120 talents of gold

“one hundred and twenty talents of gold.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “about 4,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

No greater amount of spices...was ever given to him again

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one ever again gave to King Solomon more spices than the queen of Sheba gave to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- the king the things that she had
- King
- of gold

ULT

10 She gave the king 120 talents of gold and a large amount of spices and precious stones. No greater amount of spices as these that the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon was ever given to him again.

UST

10 Then the queen gave to [the king the things that she had](#) brought. She gave him over 4,000 kilograms [of gold](#) and a large amount of spices and gems. Never again did [King Solomon](#) receive more spices than the queen gave him at that time.

1 Kings 10:11

almug wood

a type of wood, possibly one with a pleasant scent (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#)

ULT

11 The fleet of Hiram, which brought gold from Ophir, also brought from Ophir a large amount of almug wood and precious stones.

UST

11 In the ships that belong to King Hiram, in which they had previously brought [gold](#) from Ophir, they also brought a large amount of almug wood and precious gem stones.

1 Kings 10:12

The king made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. Alternate translation: “The king told his people to make” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

or been seen again

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nor has anyone ever seen such a great quantity again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to this day

This means to the day that the author was writing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- his
- King Solomon told
- temple

ULT

¹² The king made almug wood pillars for the temple of Yahweh and for the king's palace, and harps and lyres for the singers. No such quantity of almug wood has ever come or been seen again to this day.

UST

¹² [King Solomon told his](#) workers to use that wood to make pillars in the [temple](#) and in his palace, and also to make harps and lyres for the musicians. That wood was the largest amount of fine wood that had ever been brought to or seen in Israel.

1 Kings 10:13

everything she wished for, whatever she asked

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

of his royal bounty

“because as king he had so much”

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- He gave her those gifts
- Solomon
- gave
- King
- he
- and the people who came with her

ULT

13 King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba everything she wished for, whatever she asked, in addition to what Solomon gave her of his royal bounty. So she returned to her own land with her servants.

UST

13 [King Solomon](#) gave to the queen from Sheba everything that she wanted. [He gave her those gifts](#) in addition to the gifts that [he](#) always [gave](#) to other rulers who visited him. Then she [and the people who came with her](#) returned to her own land.

1 Kings 10:14

in one year

“each year.” This refers to every year of Solomon’s reign, and not to just one time.

666 talents of gold

“six hundred sixty-six.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “almost 22,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#)
- [twenty-two metric...of](#)

ULT

14 Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was 666 talents of gold,

UST

14 Each year there was brought to Solomon a total of [twenty-two metric tons of gold](#).

1 Kings 10:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- govern, government, governor, proconsul

Translation Words - UST

- by the kings
- Israel
- and by the governors of the districts

ULT

¹⁵ besides the gold that the traders and merchants brought. All the kings of Arabia and the governors in the country also brought gold and silver to Solomon.

UST

¹⁵ That was in addition to the taxes paid to him by the merchants and traders, and the annual taxes paid by the kings of Arabia and by the governors of the districts in Israel.

1 Kings 10:16

King Solomon made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. Alternate translation: “King Solomon’s men made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

two hundred large shields

“200 large shields” (See: [Numbers](#))

Six hundred shekels of gold

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “About 6.6 kilograms of gold” or “Six and one half kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Six hundred shekels

Because the word “shekels” does not appear here in the Hebrew text, some modern versions assume instead the unit of bekah, which was equivalent to only a half shekel. Any version making this assumption would signal a metric equivalent of about three kilograms.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon’s workers](#)
- [King](#)
- [took this gold](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

16 King Solomon made two hundred large shields of beaten gold. Six hundred shekels of gold went into each one.

UST

16 [King Solomon’s workers took this gold](#) and hammered it into thin sheets and covered two hundred large shields with those thin sheets [of gold](#). They put six and one-half kilograms of gold on each shield.

1 Kings 10:17

He also made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. Alternate translation: "The king's men also made" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

three hundred shields

"300 shields" (See: [Numbers](#))

Three minas of gold

A mina is a unit of weight equal to about 550 grams. Alternate translation: "About 1.7 kilograms of gold" or "One and three-quarters kilograms of gold" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon

"the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest." See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lebanon](#)
- [shield](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Lebanon](#)
- [shields](#)
- [Then the king](#)
- [gold](#)
- [and three-quarters kilograms](#)
- [in the Palace](#)

ULT

17 He also made three hundred shields of beaten gold. Three minas of gold went into each shield; the king put them into the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

UST

17 His workers made three hundred smaller shields. They covered each of them with one [and three-quarters kilograms](#) of [gold](#). [Then the king](#) put those [shields in the Palace](#) of the Forest [of Lebanon](#).

1 Kings 10:18

the king made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped the king do this. Alternate translation: “the king’s men made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

throne of ivory

Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- throne, enthroned
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- a large throne
- His workers
- gold

ULT

18 Then the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with the finest gold.

UST

18 [His workers](#) also made for him [a large throne](#). Part of it was covered with ivory, and part of it was covered with very fine [gold](#).

1 Kings 10:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- hand
- head

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- hand
- head

ULT

19 There were six steps to the throne, and the back of it had a rounded top. There were armrests on each side of the seat, and two lions standing beside the armrests.

UST

19-20 There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a statue of a lion on both sides of each step. So altogether there were twelve statues of lions. The back of the throne was rounded at the top. At each side of the throne there was an armrest and alongside each armrest there was a small statue of a lion. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom.

1 Kings 10:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- kingdom

ULT

20 Twelve lions stood on the steps, one on each side of each of the six steps. There was no throne like it in any other kingdom.

UST

19-20 There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a statue of a lion on both sides of each step. So altogether there were twelve statues of lions. The back of the throne was rounded at the top. At each side of the throne there was an armrest and alongside each armrest there was a small statue of a lion. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom.

1 Kings 10:21

the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon

“the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest.” See how you translated this in [1 Kings 7:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [silver](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon's](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [of Lebanon](#)
- [silver](#)
- [Solomon's](#)
- [of gold](#)
- [were made of gold](#)
- [in the Palace](#)

ULT

²¹ All King Solomon's drinking cups were gold, and all the drinking cups in the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon were of pure gold. None were silver, because silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's days.

UST

²¹ All of [Solomon's](#) cups were made [of gold](#), and all the various dishes [in the Palace](#) of the Forest [of Lebanon](#) were [made of gold](#). They did not make things from silver, because during the years that [Solomon](#) ruled [silver](#) was not considered to be valuable.

1 Kings 10:22

ivory

Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 10:18](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

apes and baboons

These animals live wild in Africa. At the ends of their four limbs are what look like human hands and feet, and they have long tails. Some people consider baboons a type of ape. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [The king](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

22 The king had at sea a fleet of oceangoing ships, along with the fleet of Hiram. Once every three years the fleet brought gold, silver, and ivory, as well as apes and baboons.

UST

22 [The king](#) had a fleet of ships that sailed with the ships that King Hiram owned. Every three years the ships returned from the places to which they had sailed bringing [gold](#), [silver](#), ivory, monkeys, and baboons.

1 Kings 10:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- King
- king
- other

ULT

²³ So King Solomon exceeded all the kings of the world in riches and in wisdom.

UST

²³ [King Solomon](#) became richer and wiser than any [other king](#).

1 Kings 10:24

All the earth

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “People from everywhere” or “People from many different places” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

sought the presence of Solomon

The presence of the person is a metonym for being able to speak and listen to the person. Alternate translation: “sought an audience with Solomon” or “wanted to visit Solomon” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart

The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks and is spoken of as if it were a container. The abstract noun “wisdom” is spoken of as if it were an object that could be put in a container and can be translated as an adjective. It can be a metonym for either the person or the words the person speaks. Alternate translation: “to hear his wisdom, which God had given him” or “to hear how wise God had enabled him to be” or “to hear him speak the wise words that God had enabled him to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²⁴ All the earth sought the presence of Solomon in order to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart.

UST

²⁴ [People from](#) all [over the world](#) [wanted to come](#) and listen to the wise [things that Solomon said](#), [things that God](#) had put [into his mind](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [things that...into his mind](#)
- [things that Solomon said](#)
- [from](#)
- [People...wanted to come](#)
- [over the world](#)

1 Kings 10:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- gold, golden
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- or gold
- or horses
- brought presents

ULT

²⁵ Those who visited brought tribute, vessels of silver and of gold, and clothes, armor, and spices, as well as horses and mules, year after year.

UST

²⁵ All the people who came to him brought presents. They brought things made from silver or gold, or robes, or weapons, or spices, or horses, or mules. The people continued to do this every year.

1 Kings 10:26

1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen

“one thousand four hundred chariots and 12,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [horseman](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the horses](#)
- [his](#)

ULT

²⁶ Solomon gathered together chariots and horsemen. He had 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen that he stationed in the chariot cities and with himself in Jerusalem.

UST

²⁶ [Solomon](#) acquired 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on [the horses](#). Solomon put some of them [in Jerusalem](#) and some of them in other cities where he kept [his](#) chariots.

1 Kings 10:27

The king had silver in Jerusalem, as much as the stones on the ground

The narrator uses exaggeration to emphasize the great amount of silver that was in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “The king had so much silver in Jerusalem, it was like there was as much silver as there was stones on the ground” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [silver](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [silver](#)
- [During the years that Solomon was king](#)

ULT

²⁷ The king had silver in Jerusalem, as much as the stones on the ground. He made cedar wood to be as abundant as the sycamore fig trees that are in the lowlands.

UST

²⁷ [During the years that Solomon was king, silver](#) became as common [in Jerusalem](#) as stones, and lumber from cedar trees in the foothills of Judah were as plentiful as lumber from fig trees.

1 Kings 10:28

were imported from Egypt

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that his merchants had bought from people in Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Kue

This is the name of a region. Some think that Kue was the same as Cilicia, in Asia Minor. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- of Egypt and Kue that were famous for breeding horses
- Israel
- horses

ULT

²⁸ The horses that belonged to Solomon were imported from Egypt, and Kue and the king's merchants purchased them from Kue.

UST

²⁸ Solomon's agents bought [horses](#) and supervised the bringing of them into [Israel](#) from the areas [of Egypt and Kue that were famous for breeding horses](#).

1 Kings 10:29

Chariots were purchased

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "His merchants purchased chariots" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

six hundred shekels of silver...150 shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 6.6 kilograms of silver...about 1.7 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

six hundred shekels of silver

"600 shekels of silver" (See: [Numbers](#))

150 shekels

"one hundred and fifty shekels" (See: [Numbers](#))

Many of these were then sold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "His merchants then sold many of these" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Hittite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- silver
- chariot, charioteers
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- they bought
- of the Hittite people group
- In Egypt
- to the kings...and the kings of Aram
- silver
- chariots and horses
- They brought them to Israel
- for each chariot and...for each horse
- to the kings...and the kings of Aram

ULT

29 Chariots were purchased out of Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver each, and horses for 150 shekels each. Many of these were then sold to all the kings of the Hittites and Aram.

10:8 ^[1] Some versions read *How blessed are your men* . Important ancient translations, however, have *How blessed are your wives* . Many think it is probable that *women* was misread as *men* , because the Hebrew words are very similar.

UST

29 [In Egypt they bought chariots and horses](#). They paid six and one-half kilograms of [silver for each chariot and one and three-fifths kilograms of silver for each horse](#). [They brought them to Israel](#). Then they sold many of them [to the kings of the Hittite people group and the kings of Aram](#).

1 Kings 11

1 Kings 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Solomon. (Chapters 1-11)

Special concepts in this chapter

Intermarriage with Gentiles

God had told the people of Israel in Moses's law never to marry women from the Gentile nations. But Solomon married many women from Gentile countries. This was because their religious beliefs would negatively affect Israel. Solomon, the wisest man, became a fool and his wives persuaded him to worship foolish idols. God became angry and warned he would take away 10 tribes from the kingdom of his son. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#), [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#) and [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1 Kings 11:1

Now King Solomon

The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line where the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, and Hittites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- Moab, Moabite
- Solomon
- Ammon, Ammonite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- alien, foreign, foreigner

Translation Words - UST

- married
- and from the Moab
- King Solomon
- Ammon
- the king of
- foreign

ULT

¹ Now King Solomon loved many foreign women including the daughter of Pharaoh—women of the Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, and Hittites.

UST

¹ [King Solomon married](#) many [foreign](#) women. First he married the daughter of [the king of](#) Egypt. He also married women from the Heth people group [and from the Moab, Ammon](#), and Edom people groups, and from the city of Sidon.

1 Kings 11:2

turn your heart to their gods

To “turn someone’s heart” is to convince that person to change his affection. Alternate translation: “persuade you to worship the gods that they worship” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite people
- will surely persuade
- worship
- Yahweh had commanded
- Israelite people
- you
- marry people...those areas

ULT

² They were from the nations about which Yahweh said to the people of Israel, “You will not go among them to marry, neither will they come among you, for they will certainly turn your heart to their gods.” In spite of this command, Solomon was affectionate toward these women in love.

UST

² He married them even though [Yahweh had commanded](#) the [Israelite people](#) saying, “Do not [marry people](#) from [those areas](#), because if you do that, they [will surely persuade you](#) to [worship](#) the gods that they worship!”

1 Kings 11:3

seven hundred royal wives and three hundred concubines

“700 royal wives and 300 concubines” (See: [Numbers](#))

turned his heart away

To “turn someone’s heart” is to convince that person to change his affection. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 11:1](#). Alternate translation: “turned his heart away from Yahweh” or “persuaded him to stop worshiping Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to stop worshiping God](#)

ULT

³ Solomon had seven hundred royal wives and three hundred concubines. His wives turned his heart away.

UST

³ Solomon married seven hundred women who were kings’ daughters. He also had three hundred wives who were his slaves. And his wives caused him [to stop worshiping God](#).

1 Kings 11:4

his heart was not fully surrendered...as was the heart of David

To “surrender” your heart refers to giving total allegiance and affection. Alternate translation: “he was not fully devoted...as was David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the gods](#)
- [his God](#)
- [to worship](#)
- [dedicated](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [like...David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

⁴ For when Solomon grew old, his wives turned away his heart after other gods; his heart was not fully surrendered to Yahweh his God, as was the heart of David his father.

UST

⁴ By the time that [Solomon](#) became old, they had persuaded him [to worship the gods](#) from their countries. He was not completely [dedicated](#) to [Yahweh his God like his father David](#) had been.

1 Kings 11:5

Ashtoreth...Molech

These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sidonians

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he followed Molech

Some version render this as "Milcom." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [god that the](#)
- [Solomon worshiped](#)
- [Ammon people group worshiped](#)

ULT

⁵ For Solomon followed Ashtoreth, the goddess of the Sidonians, and he followed Molech, the disgusting idol of the Ammonites.

UST

⁵ [Solomon worshiped](#) Asherah, the goddess that the people of Sidon worshiped, and he worshiped Molech, the disgusting [god that the Ammon people group worshiped](#).

1 Kings 11:6

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase, "in the sight of" refers to someone's opinion. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [he did not...as Yahweh](#)
- [were evil](#)
- [Thus Solomon](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

⁶ Solomon did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; he did not fully follow Yahweh as David his father had done.

UST

⁶ [Thus Solomon](#) did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). He did not conduct his life as [his father](#) David had done; [he did not](#) conduct his life [as Yahweh](#) wanted him to.

1 Kings 11:7

Chemosh...Molech

These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moab, Moabite
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- people group worshiped
- Moab
- he
- Jerusalem
- to the east

ULT

⁷ Then Solomon built a high place for Chemosh, the disgusting idol of Moab, on a hill east of Jerusalem, and also for Molech, the disgusting idol of the people of Ammon.

UST

⁷ On the hill [to the east](#) of [Jerusalem](#) he built a place to worship Chemosh, the disgusting god that the [Moab people group worshiped](#), and a place to worship Molech, the disgusting god that the Ammon people group worshiped.

1 Kings 11:8

sacrificed to their gods at them

Here the words “at them” refer to the shrines that Solomon built.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- alien, foreign, foreigner

Translation Words - UST

- the gods from their own countries
- foreign

ULT

⁸ He also built high places for all his foreign wives, who burned incense and sacrificed to their gods at them.

UST

⁸ He also built places where all his [foreign](#) wives could burn incense and offer sacrifices to [the gods from their own countries](#).

1 Kings 11:9

his heart had turned away from him

The words “his heart had turned” refer to his having changed allegiance and affection. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 11:1](#). Alternate translation: “Solomon had stopped worshipping Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

he had appeared to him twice

“Yahweh had appeared to Solomon twice”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

⁹ Yahweh was angry with Solomon, because his heart had turned away from him, the God of Israel, even though he had appeared to him twice

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Even though Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped, had appeared to Solomon two times, and had commanded him to not worship foreign gods, Solomon refused to obey Yahweh. So Yahweh was angry with Solomon.

1 Kings 11:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- God
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- God
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

¹⁰ and commanded him about this very thing, that he should not go after other gods. But Solomon did not obey what Yahweh commanded.

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Even though Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped, had appeared to Solomon two times, and had commanded him to not worship foreign gods, Solomon refused to obey Yahweh. So Yahweh was angry with Solomon.

1 Kings 11:11

tear the kingdom from you

To “tear from” is to forcefully remove. This is like a person tears apart a piece of cloth. Alternate translation: “forcefully take the kingdom from you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I commanded you](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I am certainly](#)
- [officials](#)

ULT

11 Therefore Yahweh said to Solomon, “Because you have done this and have not kept the covenant and my statutes that I have commanded you, I will surely tear the kingdom from you and give it to your servant.

UST

11 [Yahweh](#) said to him, “You have chosen to disobey the [covenant](#) that I made with you and to disobey what [I commanded you](#). So [I am certainly](#) not going to allow you to rule all of your kingdom. I am going to allow one of your [officials](#) to rule.

1 Kings 11:12

the hand of your son

The word “hand” refers to control, authority and power. Alternate translation: “your son’s control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- son...the whole kingdom
- David
- father
- to rule

ULT

¹² However, for David your father’s sake, I will not do it in your lifetime, but I will tear it out of the hand of your son.

UST

¹² But because of what I promised your [father David](#), I will allow you to rule all your kingdom while you are still living. After you die, I will not allow your [son to rule the whole kingdom](#).

1 Kings 11:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Jerusalem
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- tribe
- David's descendants to rule
- in Jerusalem, where my temple is located
- I will
- ruling some of

ULT

13 Yet I will not tear away all the kingdom; I will give one tribe to your son for David my servant's sake, and for the sake of Jerusalem, which I have chosen."

UST

13 But I will not stop him from ruling some of the kingdom. I will allow him to rule one tribe, because of what I promised to David, who served me well, and because I want David's descendants to rule in Jerusalem, where my temple is located."

1 Kings 11:14

Hadad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- descend, descendant
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- from the family
- of the kings in

ULT

¹⁴ Then Yahweh raised up an adversary to Solomon, Hadad the Edomite. He was from the royal family of Edom.

UST

¹⁴ Yahweh caused Hadad, [from the family of the kings in](#) the Edom people group, to rebel against Solomon.

1 Kings 11:15

General Information:

This begins three verses of background material that happened long before.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- David
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

15 When David was in Edom, Joab the captain of the army had gone up to bury the dead, every man who had been killed in Edom.

UST

15-16 What happened was that previously, when David's army had conquered Edom, his army commander Joab had gone there to help bury the Israelite soldiers who had been killed in the battle. Joab and his army remained in Edom for six months, and during that time they killed all the males of that area.

1 Kings 11:16

Connecting Statement:

This continues background material that happened long before.

Joab and all Israel

The words "all Israel" refer to the army of Israel. Alternate translation: "Joab and all of the Israelite army" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [cut off](#)

ULT

16 Joab and all Israel remained there six months until he had killed every male in Edom.

UST

15-16 What happened was that previously, when David's army had conquered Edom, his army commander Joab had gone there to help bury the Israelite soldiers who had been killed in the battle. Joab and his army remained in Edom for six months, and during that time they killed all the males of that area.

1 Kings 11:17

Connecting Statement:

This concludes background material that happened long before.

But Hadad was taken with other Edomites by his father's servants

This can be stated in active form. "But the servants of Hadad's father took him with other Edomites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- to Egypt
- father's
- was a young child at that time

ULT

17 But Hadad was taken with other Edomites by his father's servants into Egypt, since Hadad was still a little child.

UST

17 Hadad [was a young child at that time](#), and he had escaped [to Egypt](#), along with some of his [father's](#) servants from Edom.

1 Kings 11:18

General Information:

This section continues the background information that began in [1 Kings 11:15](#).

They left Midian

Here the word "They" refers to Hadad and the other Edomites mentioned in [1 Kings 11:17](#).

Midian...Paran...Egypt

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bread
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Then they all traveled to Egypt and went to
- Egypt
- some food regularly
- the king of
- other
- some land

ULT

18 They left Midian and came to Paran, from where they took men with them to Egypt, to Pharaoh king of Egypt, who gave him a house and land and food.

UST

18 They went to the region of Midian, and then they went to the desert area at Paran. Some [other](#) men joined them there. [Then they all traveled to Egypt and went to the king of Egypt](#). The king gave Hadad [some land](#) and ordered his servants to give him [some food regularly](#).

1 Kings 11:19

Tahpenes

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism

Translation Words - UST

- liked Hadad

ULT

¹⁹ Hadad found great favor in the sight of Pharaoh, so that Pharaoh gave him a wife, his own wife's sister, the sister of Tahpenes the queen.

UST

¹⁹ The king [liked Hadad](#). As a result he gave him the sister of his own wife, Queen Tahpenes, to be Hadad's wife.

1 Kings 11:20

Tahpenes

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hadad...Genubath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [to a son](#)
- [the king's sons](#)
- [him in the palace, where he lived](#)
- [him in the palace, where he lived](#) (2)

ULT

²⁰ The sister of Tahpenes gave birth to Hadad's son. They named him Genubath. Tahpenes raised him in Pharaoh's palace. So Genubath lived in Pharaoh's palace among the children of Pharaoh.

UST

²⁰ Later Hadad's wife gave birth [to a son](#) named Genubath. The sister of Tahpenes raised [him in the palace, where he lived](#) with [the king's sons](#).

1 Kings 11:21

David had lain down with his ancestors

This is a polite way of saying David was dead. Alternate translation: "David had died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- David
- was in Egypt
- the commander
- my own country
- of David's

ULT

21 While he was in Egypt, Hadad heard that David had lain down with his ancestors and that Joab the captain of the host was dead, Hadad said to Pharaoh, "Let me depart, so I may go to my own country."

UST

21 While Hadad [was in Egypt](#), he heard that [David](#) had died, and that Joab, [the commander of David's](#) army, was also dead. So he said to the king of Egypt, "Please allow me to return to [my own country](#)."

1 Kings 11:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- back to...but please just allow me to go
- and he returned to his own country

ULT

²² Then Pharaoh said to him, "But what have you lacked with me, that you now seek to go to your own country?" Hadad answered, "Nothing. Please let me go."

UST

²² But the king said to him, "Why do you want to go back to your country? Is there something that you lack that you want me to give to you?" Hadad replied, "No, but please just allow me to go." So the king allowed him to leave, and he returned to his own country and became the king of Edom.

1 Kings 11:23

Rezon...Eliada...Hadadezer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zobah

This is the name of a location. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- God
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- his master
- son
- God
- King

ULT

²³ God also raised up another adversary to Solomon, Rezon son of Eliada, who had fled from his master Hadadezer king of Zobah.

UST

²³ [God](#) also caused another man named Rezon [son](#) of Eliada, to rebel against Solomon. Rezon had run away from [his master](#), [King](#) Hadadezer of the area of Zobah, north of Damascus.

1 Kings 11:24

Zobah...Damascus

These are names of locations. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

when David defeated

Here "David" refers to David and his army. Alternate translation: "when David's army overcame" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's army](#)
- [appointed him to be their king](#)
- [leader](#)

ULT

²⁴ Rezon gathered men to himself and became captain over a small force, when David defeated the men of Zobah. Rezon's men went to Damascus and lived there, and Rezon controlled Damascus.

UST

²⁴ Rezon then became the [leader](#) of a group of outlaws. That happened after [David's army](#) had defeated Hadadezer and had also killed all his soldiers. Rezon and his men went to Damascus and started to live there, and the people there [appointed him to be their king](#).

1 Kings 11:25

Aram

This is the name of a location. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all the days of Solomon

“during the time that Solomon was alive” or “all the days of Solomon’s life”

Rezon abhorred Israel

“Rezon hated Israel very much”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [for Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and caused trouble](#)
- [that Solomon was alive](#)
- [like Hadad did](#)

ULT

²⁵ He was an enemy of Israel all the days of Solomon, along with the trouble that Hadad caused. Rezon abhorred Israel and reigned over Aram.

UST

²⁵ All during the time [that Solomon was alive](#), while Rezon was ruling not only Damascus but all of Aram, he was an enemy of [Israel and caused trouble for Israel like Hadad did](#).

1 Kings 11:26

Jeroboam...Nebat

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zeredah

This is the name of a location. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zeruah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

lifted up his hand against the king

The word “hand” refers to authority, power and control. The phrase “lifted up against” refers to having opposed someone by using authority, power and control. This is a metonym used as a common idiom. Alternate translation: “rebelled against the king” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- Ephrath, Ephrathah
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Another man who rebelled against
- in the region where the tribe of Ephraim lives
- Another man who rebelled against
- His
- officials

ULT

²⁶ Then Jeroboam son of Nebat, an Ephraimite of Zeredah, an official of Solomon, whose mother's name was Zeruah, a widow, also lifted up his hand against the king.

UST

²⁶ [Another man who rebelled against](#) Solomon was one of his [officials](#) named Jeroboam [son](#) of Nebat. He was from the city of Zeredah [in the region where the tribe of Ephraim lives](#). [His](#) mother was a widow named Zeruah.

1 Kings 11:27

Solomon had built up the place located at Millo

Translate “Millo” as in [1 Kings 9:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the city](#)
- [Solomon's workers](#)
- [the city](#)
- [were filling](#)
- [Solomon's workers](#)

ULT

²⁷ He lifted up his hand against the king because Solomon had built up the place located at Millo and repaired the opening in the city wall of David his father.

UST

²⁷ This is what happened. [Solomon's workers were filling](#) in the land on the east side of Jerusalem and repairing the walls around [the city](#).

1 Kings 11:28

a mighty man of valor

Possible meanings are 1) “a great warrior” or 2) “a very capable man” or 3) “a wealthy and influential man.”

he gave him command

“he made him commander”

all the labor

The word “labor” refers to the work that Solomon commanded the people to do for his government. This is a metonym. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of Joseph

This refers to the descendants of Joseph who were the people groups of Ephraim and Manasseh. This is a metonym. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- Solomon
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- supervise
- in the areas where the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim live
- Solomon
- was a very capable
- was a very capable
- young
- the men who were forced to work

ULT

²⁸ Jeroboam was a mighty man of valor. Solomon saw that the young man was industrious, so he gave him command over all the labor of the house of Joseph.

UST

²⁸ Jeroboam [was a very capable young](#) man. So, when [Solomon](#) saw that he worked very hard, he appointed him to [supervise](#) all [the men who were forced to work in the areas where the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim live](#).

1 Kings 11:29

Ahijah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shilonite

The Shilonites are a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet
- Jerusalem
- along the road

ULT

²⁹ At that time, when Jeroboam went out of Jerusalem, the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite found him on the road. Now Ahijah had dressed in a new garment and the two men were alone in the field.

UST

²⁹ One day when Jeroboam was walking alone [along the road](#) outside of [Jerusalem, the prophet](#) Ahijah from the city of Shiloh met him. Ahijah was wearing a new robe,

1 Kings 11:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁰ Then Ahijah grabbed hold of the new garment that was on him and tore it into twelve pieces.

UST

³⁰ which he took off and tore into twelve pieces.

1 Kings 11:31

He said

Here the word "He" refers to Ahijah.

tear the kingdom out

Here "tear...out" is a metaphor that refers to the action of forcefully removing. This is like a person tears apart a piece of cloth. See how you translated this phrase in [1 Kings 11:11](#). Alternate translation: "forcefully take the kingdom out" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the hand of Solomon

Here "hand" is a metonym that refers to a person's authority, control and power. Alternate translation: "Solomon's control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [hand](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [whom we Israelites worship](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [and I am going to enable](#)
- [of the tribes of Israel](#)

ULT

31 He said to Jeroboam, "Take ten pieces, for Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, 'Look, I will tear the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon and I will give ten tribes to you

UST

31 He said to Jeroboam, "Take ten of these pieces for yourself, because [Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship](#), says to you, 'I am going to tear the kingdom from [Solomon, and I am going to enable](#) you to become the ruler of ten [of the tribes of Israel](#)."

1 Kings 11:32

Solomon will have

The name “Solomon” here is a metonym referring to his descendants. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s sons will have” or “Solomon’s descendants will have” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel to be the city where my people will worship me](#)
- [David, a man who served me very well, and](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [I promised](#)
- [the cities in](#)

ULT

³² (but Solomon will have one tribe, for my servant David’s sake and for Jerusalem’s sake—the city that I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel),

UST

³² Solomon’s descendants will still rule one tribe, because of what [I promised David, a man who served me very well, and](#) because of [Jerusalem](#), the city that I have chosen from all [the cities in Israel to be the city where my people will worship me](#).

1 Kings 11:33

Ashtoreth...Chemosh...Molech

These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sidonians...Moab...Ammon

These are the names of locations and the people groups that live there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

what is right in my eyes

“Eyes” here is a metonym for someone’s opinion or idea. This is a commonly used idiom. Alternate translation: “what I consider to be right” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- God (2)
- God (3)
- prostrate, worship
- Moab, Moabite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- statute
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- the Ammon people group worships
- the goddess
- the god (2)
- the god that (3)
- and has been worshipping
- that the Moab people group worships
- as his father
- Solomon has rejected me
- and decrees
- He has not obeyed my

ULT

³³ because they have forsaken me and have worshiped Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, Chemosh the god of Moab, and Molech the god of the people of Ammon. They have not walked in my ways, to do what is right in my eyes, and to keep my statutes and my decrees, as did David his father.

UST

³³ I am going to do this because [Solomon has rejected me and has been worshipping](#) Asherah, [the goddess](#) that the people of Sidon worship, Chemosh, [the god that the Moab people group worships](#), and Molech, [the god that the Ammon people group worships](#). He has not conducted his life as I wanted him to. [He has not obeyed my statutes and decrees, as his father](#) David did.

1 Kings 11:34

General Information:

Ahijah continues to tell Jeroboam what Yahweh has said.

I will not take

Here the word "I" refers to Yahweh.

out of Solomon's hand

Here the word "hand" is a metonym that refers to a person's authority, control and power. Alternate translation: "out of Solomon's control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandments](#)
- [David](#)
- [away from him](#)
- [obeyed my](#)
- [I promised](#)

ULT

³⁴ However, I will not take the whole kingdom out of Solomon's hand. Instead, I have made him ruler all the days of his life, for David my servant's sake whom I chose, the one who kept my commandments and my statutes.

UST

³⁴ But I will not take the entire kingdom [away from him](#). I will enable him to rule Judah all during the years that he is alive. I will do that because of what [I promised](#) to do for [David](#), whom I chose to be the king, and who served me well, and who always [obeyed my commandments](#) and laws.

1 Kings 11:35

I will give it to you

Here the word "you" refers to Jeroboam.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- hand
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- tribes of his
- to rule
- them

ULT

³⁵ But I will take the kingdom out of his son's hand and I will give it to you, ten tribes.

UST

³⁵ But I will take the other ten [tribes of his](#) kingdom and give [them](#) to you [to rule](#).

1 Kings 11:36

may always have a lamp before me

The word “lamp” is a metonym that refers to a person’s influence and guidance. Alternate translation: “will always have a descendant to rule as an influence and a guide for obeying my covenant with David’s family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Jerusalem
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon’s son
- be the place where my people worship me
- in Jerusalem
- I will
- tribe

ULT

³⁶ I will give one tribe to Solomon’s son, so that David my servant may always have a lamp before me in Jerusalem, the city in which I have chosen to put my name.

UST

³⁶ [I will](#) allow [Solomon’s son](#) to rule one [tribe](#), in order that descendants of David will always rule [in Jerusalem](#), the city that I have chosen to [be the place where my people worship me](#).

1 Kings 11:37

General Information:

Ahijah continues to tell Jeroboam what Yahweh has said.

I will take you

Here the word "I" refers to Yahweh and the word "you" refers to Jeroboam.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- the territory
- Israel
- to become
- king

ULT

³⁷ I will take you, and you will rule to fulfill all that you desire, and you will be king over Israel.

UST

³⁷ I will enable you [to become](#) the [king](#) of [Israel](#), and you will rule over all [the territory](#) that you want to.

1 Kings 11:38

what is right in my eyes

The word “eyes” here is a metonym for someone’s opinion or idea. This is a commonly used idiom. See how you translated this phrase in [1 Kings 11:33](#). (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

build you a sure house

The clause “build a house” is a metaphor for establishing descendants from that time on. Alternate translation: “establish for you a lasting kingdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I command you to](#)
- [and commandments](#)
- [that your descendants](#)
- [I will help you](#)
- [like David](#)
- [like I promised](#)
- [I will help you](#)

ULT

38 If you listen to all that I command you, and if you walk in my ways and do what is right in my eyes, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as David my servant did, then I will be with you and will build you a sure house, as I built for David, and will give Israel to you.

UST

38 If you obey all that [I command you to](#) do, and conduct your life as I want you to, and if you do what I say is right by obeying my laws [and commandments like David](#) did, [I will help you](#). I will make sure [that your descendants](#) will rule after you die, [like I promised](#) to do for David.

1 Kings 11:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David's](#)
- [descendants](#)

ULT

³⁹ I will punish the descendants of David, but not forever.”

UST

³⁹ Because of Solomon's sins, I will punish [David's descendants](#), but I will not continue to punish them forever.”

1 Kings 11:40

Shishak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon
- Solomon
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt
- Egypt, and stayed with him
- after
- Solomon
- Solomon
- so he tried to kill Jeroboam
- the king of
- found out what Ahijah told

ULT

⁴⁰ So Solomon tried to kill Jeroboam. But Jeroboam got up and fled into Egypt, to Shishak king of Egypt, and he remained in Egypt until the death of Solomon.

UST

⁴⁰ [Solomon found out what Ahijah told](#) Jeroboam, [so he tried to kill Jeroboam](#). But Jeroboam escaped and went to [Egypt](#). He went to Shishak, [the king of Egypt, and stayed with him](#) until [after Solomon](#) died.

1 Kings 11:41

are they not written in the book of the events of Solomon?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "you can find them in the book of the events of Solomon." (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

the book of the events of Solomon

This book no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

⁴¹ As for the other matters concerning Solomon, all that he did and his wisdom, are they not written in the book of the events of Solomon?

UST

⁴¹ A record of all the other things [that Solomon](#) did, and all the wise things that he said, was written in the book of the events of [Solomon](#).

1 Kings 11:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [He](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁴² Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years.

UST

⁴² [He](#) was king [in Jerusalem](#) and ruled over all of [Israel](#) for forty years.

1 Kings 11:43

He slept with his ancestors and he was buried

The clause “slept with his ancestors” is a metaphor that expresses as a euphemism the death of a person in more gentle words. Alternate translation: “He died and he was buried with his ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

he was buried

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Solomon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Then his son
- called the city of David
- Then Solomon
- and was buried
- called the city of David
- king

ULT

⁴³ He slept with his ancestors and he was buried in the city of David his father. Rehoboam his son became king in his place.

UST

⁴³ [Then Solomon](#) died [and was buried](#) in the part of Jerusalem [called the city of David](#). [Then his son](#) Rehoboam became the [king](#).

1 Kings 12

1 Kings 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Civil war

This chapter explains how the united kingdom of Israel was split into the two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. This is sometimes called a “civil war.”

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel splits

God’s warning to Solomon came true. In spite of his famous wealth, Solomon had over-taxed his own people and forced them to work for free. When the people requested that King Rehoboam reduce taxes and forced labor, he said that he would be harsher than his father. This caused the 10 northern tribes to revolt and appoint Jeroboam as their king. These northern tribes are now called the kingdom of Israel. Only Judah and Benjamin stayed with Rehoboam. They are called Judah. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Jeroboam introduces calf worship

Jeroboam made a terrible mistake. He was afraid that if the people continued to go to Jerusalem to worship in the temple, they would want to return to Rehoboam as their king. So he made two shrines with calves made of gold for the people to worship. This eventually caused the destruction of his whole family. The kingdom of Israel continued worshipping the idols until they were taken slaves by the Assyrians. The northern tribes were unable to truly worship Yahweh without going to Jerusalem in the kingdom of Judah.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people used the metaphor of “yoke” for oppressive government: “Your father made our yoke difficult. Now then, make your father’s hard work easier, and lighten the heavy yoke that he put on us.” But Rehoboam promised to increase their oppression with three metaphors: “My little finger is thicker than my father’s waist. So now, although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [oppress](#), [oppressed](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

1 Kings 12:1

all Israel was coming

Here “Israel” represents all the men of Israel capable of fighting. Here “all Israel” is a generalization which means almost all the men of Israel. Alternate translation: “all the men of Israel were coming” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [northern Israel](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

¹ Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all Israel was coming to Shechem to make him king.

UST

¹ All the people of [northern Israel](#) went to the city of Shechem in order to appoint Rehoboam to be their [king](#). So Rehoboam also went there.

1 Kings 12:2

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Jeroboam...Nebat

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Solomon
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam
- in Egypt
- Egypt
- about
- he

ULT

² It happened that Jeroboam son of Nebat heard of this (for he was still in Egypt, where he had fled from the presence of King Solomon), for Jeroboam had settled down in Egypt. ^[1]

UST

² When [Jeroboam](#), who was still [in Egypt](#), heard [about](#) that, [he](#) returned from [Egypt](#) to Israel.

1 Kings 12:3

called him

Here the word "him" refers to Jeroboam.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- The leaders of the northern tribes
- They
- summoned

ULT

³ So they sent and called him, and Jeroboam and all the assembly of Israel came and said to Rehoboam,

UST

³ [The leaders of the northern tribes summoned](#) him, and they went together to talk to Rehoboam. [They](#) said to him,

1 Kings 12:4

made our yoke heavy

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and requirements. Alternate translation: “treated us cruelly” or “forced us to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- Your father

ULT

4 “Your father made our yoke heavy. Now make lighter the hard work of your father and make lighter the heavy yoke that he put on us, and we will serve you.”

UST

4 “[Your father Solomon](#) forced us to work very hard, and if you allow us to work less, we will serve you faithfully.”

1 Kings 12:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- return

Translation Words - UST

- So those leaders and Jeroboam
- Go away
- left

ULT

⁵ Rehoboam said to them, "Go away for three days, then come back to me." So the people went away.

UST

⁵ He replied, "[Go away](#), and come back three days from now and I will give you my answer." [So those leaders and Jeroboam left](#).

1 Kings 12:6

the old men who had stood before Solomon

To “stand before” is an idiom for serving the king in his presence.
Alternate translation: “the old men who counseled Solomon” or “the old men who attended to Solomon” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- appoint, appointed
- restore, restoration
- Solomon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- elder, older, old
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Translation Words - UST

- still living
- while he
- answer
- Solomon
- his father
- men
- his older men
- to
- Then King
- consulted
- He asked them

ULT

⁶ King Rehoboam consulted with the old men who had stood before Solomon his father while he was alive, and he said, “How do you advise me to answer this people?”

UST

⁶ [Then King](#) Rehoboam [consulted his older men](#) who had advised [his father Solomon while he](#) was [still living](#). [He asked them](#), “What should I say [to answer](#) these [men](#)?”

1 Kings 12:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- well
- They
- to serve
- serve

ULT

⁷ They spoke to him and said, "If you will be a servant today to these people and serve them, and answer them by saying good words to them, then they will always be your servants."

UST

⁷ They replied, "If you want to serve these people well, speak kindly to them when you reply to them. If you do that, they will always serve you faithfully."

1 Kings 12:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to minister, ministry
- children, child, offspring
- elder, older, old
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- with him, who were now his advisors
- younger men who had grown up
- older men
- him to do
- he consulted
- with him, who were now his advisors

ULT

⁸ But Rehoboam ignored the advice that the old men had given him and he consulted with the young men who had grown up with him and stood before him.

UST

⁸ But he ignored what the older men advised him to do. Instead, he consulted the younger men who had grown up with him, who were now his advisors.

1 Kings 12:9

Lighten the yoke that your father put on us

To “lighten the yoke” is a metaphor to represent lifting of the burden.
 Alternate translation: “Do not treat us as cruelly as your father did”
 or “Do not force us to work as hard as your father did” (See:
[Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- return

Translation Words - UST

- my father
- men who are asking
- should
- answer

ULT

⁹ He said to them, “What advice do you give me that we may answer the people who spoke to me and said, ‘Lighten the yoke that your father put on us?’”

UST

⁹ He said to them, “What do you say that I [should answer](#) the [men who are asking](#) me to reduce the work that [my father](#) required from them?”

1 Kings 12:10

My little finger is thicker than my father's waist

This metaphor means that Rehoboam is more cruel and intimidating than his father. Alternate translation: "What I will do to make your burden heavier is much more than what my father put on you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- people, people group,
- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- my father's
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- They
- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

¹⁰ The young men who had grown up with Rehoboam spoke to him, saying, "Speak to these people who told you that your father Solomon made their yoke heavy but that you must make it lighter. You should say to them, 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist.

UST

¹⁰ [They](#) replied, "This is what you should tell them: 'My little finger is thicker than [my father's](#) waist.

1 Kings 12:11

My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions

This metaphor means that the punishment Rehoboam plans to give will be worse than what his father gave. Alternate translation: "My father used whips to force you to work but I will use even crueler punishment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

punish you with scorpions

The word "scorpions" may refer to 1) a whip with sharp metal barbs on the end or 2) a spider-like creature that has a poisonous sting.

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- What I mean is that my father
- my father

ULT

¹¹ So now, although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions."

UST

¹¹ [What I mean is that my father](#) required you to work hard. But I will make those loads heavier. It was as though [my father](#) whipped you, but I will whip you with scorpions."

1 Kings 12:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- again
- leaders
- he

ULT

¹² So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king had instructed when he said, "Come back to me on the third day."

UST

¹² So three days later, Jeroboam and all the [leaders](#) came to Rehoboam [again](#), which is what [he](#) had told them to do.

1 Kings 12:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Translation Words - UST

- leaders
- of the older men
- The king
- Israelite

ULT

¹³ The king answered the people roughly and ignored the advice of the old men that they had given him.

UST

¹³ [The king](#) ignored the advice [of the older men](#) and spoke harshly to the [Israelite leaders](#).

1 Kings 12:14

burdened you with a heavy yoke

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and requirements. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 12:4](#). Alternate translation: “treated you cruelly” or “forced you to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))

My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions

This metaphor means that the punishment Rehoboam plans to give will be worse than what his father gave. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 12:11](#). Alternate translation: “My father used whips to force you to work but I will use even crueler punishment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Translation Words - UST

- younger men
- He said, “My father
- he
- put heavy

ULT

14 He spoke to them following the advice of the young men; he said, “My father burdened you with a heavy yoke, but I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.”

UST

14 He told them what the [younger men](#) had advised. [He said, “My father put heavy](#) burdens of work on you, but I will put heavier burdens on you. It was as though [he](#) beat you with whips, but I will beat you with scorpions!”

1 Kings 12:15

it was a turn of events brought about by Yahweh

This is an idiom and can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused things to happen like this" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

his word that he had spoken by Ahijah...to Jeroboam

The idiom "had spoken by" someone refers to giving someone a message to tell others. (See: [Idiom](#))

Ahijah...Jeroboam...Nebat

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shilonite

This is the name of a people group from the town of Shiloh. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes
- Yahweh
- what he had told the
- what he had told the
- the Israelite leaders
- the king

ULT

¹⁵ So the king did not listen to the people, for it was a turn of events brought about by Yahweh, that he might carry out his word that he had spoken by Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam son of Nebat.

UST

¹⁵ So [the king](#) did not pay any attention to [the Israelite leaders](#). Now all this happened in order that what [Yahweh](#) wanted would occur, [what he had told the](#) prophet Ahijah about [Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes](#).

1 Kings 12:16

all Israel

Here "Israel" represents all the men of Israel capable of fighting. "All Israel" is a generalization which means almost all the men of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the men of Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

What share do we have in David?

"Share" here is a metonym meaning a part, involvement, or interest. This question can be translated as a simple statement. Alternate translation: "We will have no part in the family of David." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse

"Son of Jesse" here is a metonym for David, a son of Jesse. "Inheritance" is a metonym for the part left for these people from David's successes. Alternate translation: "We will have nothing to do with the descendants of Jesse" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Go to your tents, Israel

"Tents" here is a metonym representing a person's place of residence. Alternate translation: "Go to your homes, people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now see to your own house, David

"House" here is a metonym for David's lineage of power and prestige. Alternate translation: "Now take care of your own kingdom, descendant of David" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- Jesse
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- house

Translation Words - UST

- want anything
- he can rule his own tribe
- When the Israelite
- people of Israel

ULT

16 When all Israel saw that the king did not listen to them, the people answered him and said, "What share do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse! Go to your tents, Israel. Now see to your own house, David." So Israel went back to their tents.

UST

16 [When the Israelite](#) leaders realized that [the king](#) did not pay any attention to [what they](#) said, [they shouted](#), "We do not [want anything](#) to do with [this descendant of King](#) David! We will not pay attention to what [this grandson of Jesse says](#)! You [people of Israel](#), let us go [home](#)! [As for this descendant of David, he can rule his own tribe](#)!" So [the Israelite](#) leaders returned to their homes.

- the Israelite
- As for this descendant of David
- this grandson of Jesse says
- they shouted
- the king
- this descendant of King
- what they
- home

1 Kings 12:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe of
- And after that, the only Israelite people
- Judah
- ruled over were those

ULT

¹⁷ But as for the people of Israel who lived in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam became king over them.

UST

¹⁷ And after that, the only Israelite people whom Rehoboam ruled over were those who lived in the territory of the tribe of Judah.

1 Kings 12:18

Adoniram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all Israel

Here "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. "All Israel" is a generalization which means almost all the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the people of Israel who were there" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But the Israelite people](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [killed](#)
- [Then King](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

18 Then King Rehoboam sent Adoniram, who was over the forced laborers, but all Israel stoned him to death with stones. King Rehoboam fled quickly in his chariot to Jerusalem.

UST

18 [Then King](#) Rehoboam went with Adoniram to talk to the Israelite people. Adoniram was the man who supervised all the men who were forced to work for Rehoboam. [But the Israelite people killed](#) him by throwing stones at him. When that happened, [King](#) Rehoboam quickly got in his chariot and escaped to [Jerusalem](#).

1 Kings 12:19

the house of David

Here “house” is a metonym that represents family or descendants. Alternate translation: “the kings descended from David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to this day

“ever since that time.” This refers to the time that the writer was actually writing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the people of the northern tribes of Israel](#)
- [the descendants](#)
- [of King David](#)

ULT

¹⁹ So Israel has been in rebellion against the house of David to this day.

UST

¹⁹ Ever since that time, [the people of the northern tribes of Israel](#) have been rebelling against [the descendants of King David](#).

1 Kings 12:20

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when all Israel heard

“All Israel” here is a generalization that means the capable men of Israel who represent the rest of the people by a synecdoche. Alternate translation: “when all the leaders of Israel heard” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

king over all Israel

“Israel” implicitly means the northern ten tribes that rebelled against Rehoboam. Alternate translation: “king over all of the 10 tribes of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the family of David

“David’s descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- reign, rule
- declare, proclaim, announce
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house

Translation Words - UST

- returned from Egypt
- When the Israelite
- Israel
- Judah continued to be loyal
- King David
- to be the king
- they invited him to come
- the tribe of
- to the kings descended from

ULT

²⁰ It happened that when all Israel heard that Jeroboam had returned, they sent and called him to their assembly and made him king over all Israel. There was no one who followed the family of David, except only the tribe of Judah.

UST

²⁰ [When the Israelite](#) people heard that Jeroboam had [returned from Egypt](#), [they invited him to come](#) to a meeting, and there they appointed him [to be the king](#) of [Israel](#). Only the people of [the tribe of Judah continued to be loyal to the kings descended from King David](#).

1 Kings 12:21

all the house of Judah and the tribe of Benjamin

Here “house” is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants. And, here “tribe” refers specifically to the soldiers from those tribes. Alternate translation: “all the soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

180,000 chosen men

“one hundred eighty thousand chosen men” (See: [Numbers](#))

the house of Israel

Here “house” represents the kingdom made up of the 10 northern tribes of Israel. Alternate translation: “the kingdom of Israel” or “the people of the northern tribes of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the tribes of his
- again
- of Israel
- Judah
- and Benjamin
- he could rule
- in Jerusalem
- He wanted them
- Judah
- in order that

ULT

²¹ When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he assembled all the house of Judah and the tribe of Benjamin; there were 180,000 chosen men who were soldiers, to fight against the house of Israel, to restore the kingdom to Rehoboam son of Solomon.

UST

²¹ When Rehoboam arrived [in Jerusalem](#), he gathered 180,000 of the best soldiers from the tribes of [Judah and Benjamin](#). [He wanted them](#) to fight against the northern tribes [of Israel](#) and defeat them, [in order that he could rule](#) all [the tribes of his](#) kingdom [again](#).

1 Kings 12:22

the word of God came...it said

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: “God spoke this message...and he said” or “God spoke these words...and he said” (See: [Idiom](#))

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the man of God

The expression “man of God” is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the man who belongs to God” or “the prophet of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [the prophet](#)

ULT

²² But the word of God came to Shemaiah, the man of God; it said,

UST

²² But [God](#) spoke to [the prophet](#) Shemaiah and said this to him:

1 Kings 12:23

all the house of Judah and Benjamin

Here “house” is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants.
Alternate translation: “all the people from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- Judea
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Solomon
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judah
- in Judah
- and Benjamin
- Solomon's
- and the people from the northern tribe who live
- the king of
- all the people of the tribes of Judah

ULT

23 “Speak to Rehoboam son of Solomon, king of Judah, to all the house of Judah and Benjamin, and to the rest of the people; say,

UST

23 “Go and tell this to [Solomon's son](#) Rehoboam, [the king of Judah](#), and to [all the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin and the people from the northern tribe who live in Judah](#):

1 Kings 12:24

your brothers the people of Israel

The words “brothers” and “people of Israel” are a doublet that refer to the men of the ten northern tribes and emphasize the family relationship between them and the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. (See: [Doublet](#))

for this thing has been made to happen by me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because I have made this thing happen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- return
- house

Translation Words - UST

- your own relatives
- your own relatives
- Yahweh says
- Yahweh
- What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen
- the people of Israel
- the people of Israel
- commanded them to do, and they went home
- go home

ULT

²⁴ ‘Yahweh says this: You must not attack or fight against your brothers the people of Israel. Each man must return to his home, for this thing has been made to happen by me.’” So they listened to the word of Yahweh and turned back and went their way, and they obeyed his word.

UST

²⁴ ‘Yahweh says that you must not go to fight against [your own relatives, the people of Israel](#). All of you must [go home. What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen](#).’” So Shemaiah went and told that to them, and they all listened what [Yahweh](#) had [commanded them to do, and they went home](#).

1 Kings 12:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He and his workers then left](#)
- [where the descendants of Ephraim](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then Jeroboam built Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim, and lived there. He went out from there and built Peniel.

UST

²⁵ Then Jeroboam's workers built walls around the city of Shechem in the hill country [where the descendants of Ephraim](#) lived, and he ruled from there for a while. [He and his workers then left](#) there and went to the city of Peniel, and they built walls around that city.

1 Kings 12:26

thought in his heart

“Heart” here is a metonym for a person’s inner consciousness, thoughts, motivation, or feelings. Alternate translation: “thought to himself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of David

Here “house” is a metonym representing family or descendants. Alternate translation: “the kings descended from David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

26 Jeroboam thought in his heart, “Now the kingdom will return to the house of David.

UST

26-27 Then Jeroboam said to himself, “If my people continue to go to Jerusalem and offer sacrifices to Yahweh at the temple there, soon they will again become loyal to Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and they will kill me.”

1 Kings 12:27

If these people go up

The words “these people” refer to the people of the northern ten tribes of Israel.

the heart of these people

“Heart” here is a metonym for the people’s allegiance and affection. Alternate translation: “the allegiance of these people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

turn again to their master, to Rehoboam king of Judah...return to Rehoboam king of Judah

These phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize Jeroboam’s fear that the people would turn again to Rehoboam as king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- Yahweh
- temple
- Judea
- Judea
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- return

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- Yahweh
- temple
- Judea
- Judea
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- return

ULT

27 If these people go up to offer sacrifices in the temple of Yahweh at Jerusalem, then the heart of these people will turn again to their master, to Rehoboam king of Judah. They will kill me and return to Rehoboam king of Judah.”

UST

26-27 Then Jeroboam said to himself, “If my people continue to go to Jerusalem and offer sacrifices to Yahweh at the temple there, soon they will again become loyal to Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and they will kill me.”

1 Kings 12:28

brought you up

"You" here is a metonym for the ancestors of the people. Alternate translation: "brought your ancestors up" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- These statues are the gods
- You are making too big an effort to keep going there. You people of Israel, look
- Egypt
- Jerusalem to worship for a long time
- He told his workers to make
- So he consulted
- gold statues of

ULT

28 So King Jeroboam sought advice and made two calves of gold; he said to the people, "It is too much for you to go up to Jerusalem. Look, these are your gods, Israel, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt."

UST

28 [So he consulted](#) his advisors, and then he did what they suggested. [He told his workers to make gold statues of](#) two calves. Then he said to the people, "You have been going to [Jerusalem to worship for a long time](#). [You are making too big an effort to keep going there](#). [You people of Israel, look! These statues are the gods](#) that brought our ancestors up from [Egypt](#)! So you can worship these, here!"

1 Kings 12:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He told his workers](#)

ULT

²⁹ He set up one in Bethel and the other in Dan.

UST

²⁹ [He told his workers](#) to place one of the statues in the city of Bethel in the south and one in the city of Dan in the north.

1 Kings 12:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [caused the people](#)

ULT

³⁰ So this act became a sin. The people went to one or the other, all the way to Dan.

UST

³⁰ So what Jeroboam did [caused the people](#) to sin. Some of them went and worshiped the calf at Bethel, and others went and worshiped the other calf at Dan.

1 Kings 12:31

Jeroboam made houses on high places

The workers who did this at Jeroboam's commands are represented by the metonym of the name of Jeroboam himself. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam's workers made houses on high places" (See: [Metonymy](#))

houses on high places

The implied information is that these were houses of worship. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "houses of worship on high places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

made priests

"appointed men to be priests"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- tribe
- Moses had declared that only men from the tribe of Levi would be priests
- of Levi
- they
- Jeroboam also told his workers to build places on the hills where

ULT

³¹ Jeroboam made houses on high places and he also made priests from among all the people, who were not among the sons of Levi.

UST

³¹ [Moses had declared that only men from the tribe of Levi would be priests](#), but [Jeroboam also told his workers to build places on the hills where they](#) could worship idols, and then he appointed men who were not from the [tribe of Levi](#) to be priests for the idols.

1 Kings 12:32

in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month

This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of November on Western calendars. Alternate translation: "on the fifteenth day of the eighth month" (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

went up to the altar

"Went up" here is an idiom for going to a sacred place to worship since these altars were located on high places. Alternate translation: "offered sacrifices on the altar" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- Judah
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- On the altar
- priests
- in Judah each year
- a celebration

ULT

³² Jeroboam ordained a feast in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month, like the feast that is in Judah, and he went up to the altar. He did so at Bethel, sacrificing to the calves that he had made, and he placed in Bethel the priests of the high places he had made.

UST

³² They had [a celebration](#) in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day, like the celebration of living in temporary shelters that occurred [in Judah each year](#). [On the altar](#) that they built at Bethel, he offered sacrifices to the gold statues of calves that they had made, and he stationed the [priests](#) on the hills where idols were worshiped, where his workers built houses used for idolatry.

1 Kings 12:33

went up to the altar

“Went up” here is an idiom for going to a sacred place to worship since these altars were located on high places. Alternate translation: “offered sacrifices on the altar” (See: [Idiom](#))

in the month he had planned in his own mind

“in the month that he had determined”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- people should...that
- people should...that
- festival

ULT

³³ Jeroboam went up to the altar that he had made in Bethel on the fifteenth day in the eighth month, in the month he had planned in his own mind; he ordained a feast for the people of Israel and went up to the altar to burn incense.

12:2 ^[1] Some versions have, *then Jeroboam returned from Egypt* .

UST

³³ Jeroboam went up to that [altar](#) on that day in the eighth month that he himself had chosen. There on that [altar](#) he burned incense to be a sacrifice. And he declared that the [people should](#) celebrate [that festival](#) on that same day every year.

1 Kings 13

1 Kings 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two parts: The young prophet's warning to Jeroboam (1-10) and the old prophet's deception (11-34). (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Obeying God

People should do what God tells them to do and not what other people tell them is God's will for them. The story of the young prophet and the old prophet is an example of this. (See: [reward](#), [prize](#), [deserve](#), and [will of God](#))

1 Kings 13:1

A man of God came out of Judah by the word of Yahweh to Bethel

The implied information is that Yahweh sent the man of God to Bethel. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh sent a man of God from Judah to Bethel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

A man of God

This is another title for a prophet. Alternate translation: "A prophet"

came out of Judah

"came from Judah"

the word of Yahweh

"the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- obeying
- was standing at the
- Yahweh
- went from Judah

ULT

¹ A man of God came out of Judah by the word of Yahweh to Bethel. Jeroboam was standing by the altar to burn incense.

UST

¹ One day a prophet, [obeying](#) what [Yahweh](#) commanded him to do, [went from Judah](#) north to Bethel. He arrived there right at the time that Jeroboam [was standing at the altar](#), ready to burn incense.

1 Kings 13:2

He cried against the altar

Here “He” refers to the man of God.

cried against the altar

This means he prophesied toward the altar in a loud and condemning voice. Alternate translation: “prophesied loudly toward the altar” (See: [Idiom](#))

Altar, altar

The prophet spoke to the altar as if it were a person who could hear him. He said this twice for emphasis. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Personification](#))

a son named Josiah will be born to the family of David

Here the “family of David” refers to the descendants of David. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “a descendant of David will have a son named Josiah” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

they will burn

Here “they” refers to Josiah and the people with him.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- altar
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- priest, priesthood
- David
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- at this altar
- a descendant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh says about this
- His name will be
- the priests
- King David

ULT

² He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, a son named Josiah will be born to the family of David, and on you he will sacrifice the priests of the high places who now burn incense on you. On you they will burn human bones.’”

UST

² [Saying what Yahweh](#) told him to say, the prophet shouted, “This is what [Yahweh says about this altar](#), ‘I want you to know that some day [a descendant of King David will be born](#). [His name will be](#) Josiah, and he will come here. He will slaughter [at this altar the priests](#) who are burning incense for sacrifices on the hills in this area, and he will burn the bones of dead people on this [altar](#).’”

- [Saying what](#)
- [will be born](#)

1 Kings 13:3

the altar will be split apart, and the ashes on it will be poured out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will split the altar apart and the ashes on it will fall to the ground" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- miracle, wonder, sign
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- This altar
- what will prove
- Yahweh has said this

ULT

³ Then the man of God gave a sign the same day, saying, "This is the sign that Yahweh has spoken: 'Look, the altar will be split apart, and the ashes on it will be poured out.'"

UST

³ Then the prophet also said, "This is [what will prove](#) to you that [Yahweh has said this](#): [This altar](#) will be split apart, and the ashes that are on it will be scattered."

1 Kings 13:4

the hand with which he had reached out against the man dried up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh dried up the hand with which he had reached out against the man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

dried up

“withered” or “became paralyzed”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- call, call out
- God
- restore, restoration
- hand
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- said about the altar at
- and said
- said about the altar at
- prophet
- result that
- and said
- arm
- the king's

ULT

⁴ When the king heard what the man of God said, that he had cried out against the altar at Bethel, Jeroboam reached out with his hand from the altar, saying, “Seize him.” Then the hand with which he had reached out against the man dried up, so that he could not draw it back to himself.

UST

⁴ When King Jeroboam heard what the [prophet said about the altar at](#) Bethel, he pointed his finger at him [and said](#) to his servants, “Seize that man!” But immediately [the king's arm](#) became paralyzed, with the [result that](#) he could not move it.

1 Kings 13:5

The altar was also split apart

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh also split the altar apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as described by the sign that the man of God had given by the word of Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as the man of God had described by the word of Yahweh as a sign” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the word of Yahweh

“the message of Yahweh” or “Yahweh’s message”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- would happen
- the prophet
- Yahweh

ULT

⁵ (The altar was also split apart and the ashes poured out from the altar, as described by the sign that the man of God had given by the word of Yahweh.)

UST

⁵ (The altar split apart, and the ashes spilled out on the ground, which is what [the prophet](#) said that [Yahweh](#) had predicted [would happen](#).)

1 Kings 13:6

Plead for the favor of Yahweh your God

The abstract noun "favor" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Plead that Yahweh your God may favor me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

my hand may be restored to me again

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh may restore my hand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the king's hand was restored to him again, and it became as it was before

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh restored the king's hand and made it as it was before" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- hand
- hand
- face, facial
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- return

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet
- Yahweh
- the prophet
- Yahweh
- prayed, and Yahweh
- pray that
- arm
- will be...completely healed the king's arm
- merciful
- my
- the king
- will be...completely healed the king's arm
- and heal
- will be...completely healed the king's arm

ULT

⁶ King Jeroboam answered and said to the man of God, "Plead for the favor of Yahweh your God and pray for me, so that my hand may be restored to me again." So the man of God prayed to Yahweh, and the king's hand was restored to him again, and it became as it was before.

UST

⁶ Then [the king](#) said to [the prophet](#), "Please [pray that Yahweh will be merciful](#) to me [and heal my arm!](#)" So [the prophet prayed, and Yahweh completely healed the king's arm.](#)

1 Kings 13:7

Come home with me and refresh yourself

The word “yourself” is a reflexive pronoun. Alternate translation: “Come home with me and eat some food” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet
- Then the king said
- home

ULT

⁷ The king said to the man of God,
“Come home with me and refresh
yourself, and I will give you a reward.”

UST

⁷ [Then the king said](#) to [the prophet](#),
“Come [home](#) with me and eat some
food. And I will also give you a reward
for what you have done!”

1 Kings 13:8

half your possessions

“half of your house”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- bread
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- But the prophet
- Even...eat or
- Even...eat or
- of everything
- I will not

ULT

⁸ The man of God said to the king, “Even if you give me half your possessions, I will not go with you, nor will I eat food or drink water in this place,

UST

⁸ But the prophet replied, “Even if you would promise to give me half of everything that you own, I will not go with you, and I will not eat or drink anything with you here,

1 Kings 13:9

You will eat no bread nor drink water, nor return by the way that you came

“Do not eat bread, drink water, or return by the way that you came”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- bread
- devour
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- commanded
- Yahweh
- to return home
- to eat
- to eat
- came here

ULT

⁹ because Yahweh commanded me by his word, ‘You will eat no bread nor drink water, nor return by the way that you came.’”

UST

⁹ because [Yahweh](#) commanded me not [to eat](#) or drink anything here. He also [commanded](#) me not [to return home](#) on the road on which I [came here](#).”

1 Kings 13:10

left another way

“went a different way”

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So he started to return home](#)

ULT

¹⁰ So the man of God left another way and did not return to his home by the way that he had come to Bethel.

UST

¹⁰ [So he started to return home](#), but he did not go on the road on which he came to Bethel. He went on a different road.

1 Kings 13:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- His sons
- prophet from Judah
- the king
- old
- the king

ULT

11 Now there was an old prophet living in Bethel, and one of his sons came and told him all the things that the man of God had done that day in Bethel. His sons also told him the words that the man of God had spoken to the king.

UST

11 At that time there was an old man living in Bethel who was also a prophet. His sons came and told him what the prophet from Judah had done there on that day, and they also told him what the prophet had said to the king.

1 Kings 13:12

his sons had seen the way

The implied information is that the sons also told their father which way the man of God went. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- his sons
- prophet
- from Judah
- Their father said
- road
- had gone

ULT

¹² Their father said to them, "Which way did he go?" Now his sons had seen the way the man of God from Judah had gone.

UST

¹² [Their father said](#), "On which [road](#) did he go?" So [his sons](#) showed him the road on which the [prophet from Judah](#) [had gone](#) when he left Bethel.

1 Kings 13:13

Saddle

This means to place a seat on the back of an animal so a person can ride on it.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- donkey, mule
- donkey, mule
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- his sons
- donkey
- the donkey
- Put

ULT

13 So he said to his sons, "Saddle the donkey for me." So they saddled the donkey and he rode off on it.

UST

13 Then he said to [his sons](#), "[Put](#) a saddle on my [donkey](#)." So they did that, and he got on [the donkey](#).

1 Kings 13:14

The old prophet

This refers to the prophet who lived in Bethel.

he said to him

"the old prophet said to the man of God"

He answered

"The man of God answered"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet from Judah
- prophet
- from Judah

ULT

14 The old prophet went after the man of God and found him sitting under an oak tree; and he said to him, "Are you the man of God who came from Judah?" He answered, "I am."

UST

14 He went along the road to find [the prophet from Judah](#). He found him sitting under an oak tree. He said to him, "Are you the [prophet](#) who came [from Judah](#)?" He replied, "Yes, I am."

1 Kings 13:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- devour
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- some food
- and eat
- Come
- home

ULT

¹⁵ Then the old prophet said to him,
"Come home with me and eat food."

UST

¹⁵ The old prophet said to him, "[Come home](#) with me [and eat some food](#)."

1 Kings 13:16

go in with you

“go into your house”

in this place

“in Bethel”

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- bread
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- into your house, or
- to eat or
- to eat or

ULT

¹⁶ The man of God answered, “I may not return with you nor go in with you, neither will I eat food nor drink water with you in this place,

UST

¹⁶ He replied, “No, I am not allowed to go with you [into your house, or to eat or](#) drink anything with you,

1 Kings 13:17

it was commanded to me by the word of Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh commanded me by his word" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the word of Yahweh

"the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore](#), restoration
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [walk](#), walked

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [return home](#)
- [eat](#)
- [eat](#)
- [here, and...on the](#)

ULT

¹⁷ because it was commanded to me by the word of Yahweh, 'You will eat no food nor drink water there, nor return by the way that you came.'

UST

¹⁷ because [Yahweh](#) told me, 'Do not [eat](#) or drink anything [here, and](#) do not [return home on the](#) road on which you came.'

1 Kings 13:18

an angel spoke to me by the word of Yahweh

"an angel delivered to me a message from Yahweh"

by the word of Yahweh

"the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- bread
- devour
- deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions
- house

Translation Words - UST

- am a prophet
- Yahweh
- to tell me that...should take you
- and give you some food
- and give you some food
- But the old man was lying
- home

ULT

18 So the old prophet said to him, "I also am a prophet as you are, and an angel spoke to me by the word of Yahweh, saying, 'Bring him back with you into your house, that he may eat food and drink water.'" But he was lying to the man of God.

UST

18 Then the old prophet said to him, "I also am a prophet, like you are. Yahweh sent an angel to tell me that I should take you home with me and give you some food and drink." But the old man was lying when he said that.

1 Kings 13:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- bread
- devour
- return

Translation Words - UST

- to his home
- some food
- some food
- But because of what the old prophet said, the prophet from Judah returned

ULT

¹⁹ So the man of God went back with the old prophet and ate food in his house and drank water.

UST

¹⁹ But because of what the old prophet said, the prophet from Judah returned with him to his home and ate some food and drank some water with him.

1 Kings 13:20

As they sat at the table

The implied information is that they were still eating and drinking at the table. Alternate translation: “As they were eating and drinking at the table” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the word of Yahweh came to the prophet

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to the prophet” or “Yahweh spoke this message to the prophet” (See: [Idiom](#))

brought him back

Here the word “him” refers to the man of God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the old man](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the old man](#)

ULT

²⁰ As they sat at the table, the word of Yahweh came to the prophet who had brought him back,

UST

²⁰ While they were sitting at the table, [Yahweh](#) spoke to [the old man](#).

1 Kings 13:21

came from Judah, saying, "Yahweh

The idiom "the word of Yahweh came to" in the previous verse is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: "came from Judah. He said, 'Yahweh'" or "came from Judah: 'Yahweh'" (See: [Idiom](#))

he cried to the man of God

"the prophet spoke loudly to the man of God"

Because you have been disobedient to the word of Yahweh

"Because you have not obeyed the word of Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [rebel](#), [rebellion](#), [rebellious](#), [rebelliousness](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to do](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [he](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [You](#)
- [you](#)
- [from Judah](#)
- [have disobeyed](#)
- [have...done](#)
- [Then he cried out](#)

ULT

²¹ and he cried to the man of God who came from Judah, saying, "Yahweh says, 'Because you have been disobedient to the word of Yahweh and have not kept the command that Yahweh your God gave you,

UST

²¹ [Then he cried out](#) to the [prophet from Judah](#), "This is what [Yahweh](#) says: ' [You have disobeyed](#) him, and you have not [done](#) what [he commanded you to do](#).

1 Kings 13:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- bread
- devour
- devour
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- return

Translation Words - UST

- where he commanded
- to eat and drink
- As a result, you will be killed
- to eat and drink
- As a result, you will be killed
- in the grave where your ancestors are buried
- to eat and drink

ULT

²² but came back and have eaten food and drunk water in the place about which Yahweh told you to eat no food and drink no water, your body will not be buried in the tomb of your fathers.”

UST

²² Instead, you have come back here and had things to eat and drink in a place where he commanded you not to do that. As a result, you will be killed, and your body will not be buried in the grave where your ancestors are buried.”

1 Kings 13:23

the prophet saddled the donkey

This means he placed a seat on the back of the donkey so the man of God could ride on it. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 13:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [donkey](#), [mule](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [left](#)
- [on the donkey for...from Judah](#)
- [When they...finished eating](#)
- [When they...finished eating](#)

ULT

²³ After he had eaten food and after he had drunk, the prophet saddled the donkey of the man of God, the man who had come back with him.

UST

²³ [When they](#) had [finished eating](#), the old man put a saddle [on the donkey for](#) the prophet [from Judah](#), and the prophet from Judah [left](#).

1 Kings 13:24

his body was left on the road

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “left his body on the road” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his body

“his dead body”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed
- lion, lioness
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- was standing
- it, and the lion was also standing beside the corpse
- a lion met him
- and killed him

ULT

24 When the man of God was gone, a lion met him on the road and killed him, and his body was left on the road. Then the donkey stood by it, and the lion also stood by the body.

UST

24 But as he was going, [a lion met him and killed him](#). The prophet's corpse was lying on the road; the donkey [was standing](#) beside [it, and the lion was also standing beside the corpse](#).

1 Kings 13:25

they came and told it

Here "it" refers to what they had seen on the road. Alternate translation: "they came and told about what they had seen"

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- appoint, appointed
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- into Bethel and reported what they had seen
- standing
- into Bethel and reported what they had seen

ULT

25 When men passed by and saw the body left on the road, and the lion standing by the body, they came and told it in the city where the old prophet lived.

UST

25 Some men passed by and were surprised to see the corpse on the road and the lion standing next to the corpse. So they went into Bethel and reported what they had seen.

1 Kings 13:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- prophet
- Yahweh told
- Yahweh allowed
- Yahweh
- who had brought...from Judah
- and kill him
- him to do

ULT

²⁶ When the prophet who had brought him back from the way heard it, he said, "It is the man of God who disobeyed the word of Yahweh. Therefore Yahweh gave him to the lion, which tore him to pieces and killed him, just as the word of Yahweh warned him."

UST

²⁶ When the old man who had brought the prophet from Judah to his home heard about it, he said, "That is the prophet who disobeyed what Yahweh told him to do! That is why Yahweh allowed the lion to attack him and kill him. That is what Yahweh said would happen!"

1 Kings 13:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- donkey, mule

Translation Words - UST

- his sons
- donkey

ULT

²⁷ So the old prophet spoke to his sons, saying, "Saddle my donkey," and they saddled it.

UST

²⁷ Then he said to [his sons](#), "Put a saddle on my [donkey](#)." So they did that.

1 Kings 13:28

the body

"the dead body of the man of God"

left in the road

"lying in the road"

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- donkey, mule
- donkey, mule
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- were still standing
- the donkey
- the donkey
- eaten any

ULT

²⁸ He went and found the body left in the road, and the donkey and the lion standing by the body. The lion had not eaten the body, nor attacked the donkey.

UST

²⁸ Then he rode on [the donkey](#) and found the prophet's corpse on the road, and his donkey and the lion [were still standing](#) there alongside the corpse. But the lion had not [eaten any](#) of the flesh of the prophet and had not attacked [the donkey](#).

1 Kings 13:29

took up

"lifted up"

the body

"the dead body"

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- donkey, mule
- elder, older, old
- return

Translation Words - UST

- of the prophet
- it
- The...man
- his donkey
- old
- and brought

ULT

²⁹ The prophet took up the body of the man of God, laid it on the donkey, and brought it back. He came to his own city to mourn and to bury him.

UST

²⁹ The [old man](#) picked up the corpse [of the prophet](#) and put it on [his donkey and brought it](#) back to Bethel, in order to mourn for him and to bury his corpse.

1 Kings 13:30

they mourned

Here the word “they” refers to the prophet and his sons.

Woe, my brother!

The word “Woe” here is an expression of great sorrow.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my brother](#)

ULT

³⁰ He laid the body in his own grave, and they mourned over him, saying, “Woe, my brother!”

UST

³⁰ He buried the prophet’s corpse in the grave where other people in his family had been buried. Then he and his sons mourned about him, saying, “We are very sorry, [my brother](#)!”

1 Kings 13:31

he had buried him

Here the word "he" refers to the old prophet and the word "him" refers to the man of God.

Lay my bones beside his bones

Here "my bones" represents his entire body. Alternate translation: "Lay my dead body beside his bones" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial

Translation Words - UST

- the old man said to his sons
- the prophet from Judah
- buried him
- Lay

ULT

31 Then after he had buried him, the old prophet spoke to his sons, saying, "When I am dead, bury me in the tomb in which the man of God is buried. Lay my bones beside his bones.

UST

31 After they had [buried him](#), [the old man said to his sons](#), "When I die, bury my corpse in the grave where we buried [the prophet from Judah](#). [Lay](#) my corpse next to his corpse.

1 Kings 13:32

houses on the high places

The implied information is that these were houses of worship.
Alternate translation: "houses of worship on the high places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Samaria, Samaritan
- house

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- say
- Yahweh
- Samaria. Those things will surely happen
- told him to say about...places where they worshiped idols

ULT

32 For the message he declared by the word of Yahweh, against the altar in Bethel and against all the houses on the high places in the cities of Samaria, will certainly happen."

UST

32 And do not forget what he said, things that Yahweh told him to [say](#) about the [altar](#) in Bethel, and what [Yahweh told him to say about the places where they worshiped idols](#) on the hills around the towns in [Samaria](#). [Those things will surely happen.](#)"

1 Kings 13:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- hand
- people, people group,
- return

Translation Words - UST

- stop continuing to do
- the evil things
- He appointed as priest
- he appointed more priests
- in order that he could
- from men
- still did

ULT

³³ After this Jeroboam did not turn from his evil way, but continued to appoint common priests for the high places from among all sorts of people. Any who would serve he consecrated as a priest.

UST

³³ But King Jeroboam still did not stop continuing to do the evil things that he was doing. Instead, he appointed more priests from men who were not descended from Levi. He appointed as priest anyone who agreed to become one, in order that he could offer sacrifices on the hilltops.

1 Kings 13:34

This matter became sin to the family of Jeroboam

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam's family sinned by doing this thing" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

This matter

This phrase refers to Jeroboam's setting up shrines and appointing priests.

caused his family to be destroyed and to be exterminated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because of this God destroyed and exterminated Jeroboam's family" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be destroyed and to be exterminated

These mean nearly the same thing. Alternate translation: "to be completely destroyed" (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [face, facial](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to](#)
- [most of...descendants](#)

ULT

³⁴ This matter became sin to the family of Jeroboam and caused his family to be destroyed and to be exterminated from the face of the earth.

UST

³⁴ Because he committed that sin, a few years later God got rid of [most of](#) Jeroboam's [descendants](#) and did not allow them [to](#) become kings of Israel.

1 Kings 14

1 Kings 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories. One is the death of Jeroboam's son (1-18). The other is the reign of Rehoboam (20-31).

Special concepts in this chapter

The death of Jeroboam's son

God knows the truth; it is useless to try to fool God's prophet. Jeroboam's son became sick; so the king sent his wife, disguised as a common woman, to the prophet. The prophet was blind, but when Jeroboam's wife arrived he told her, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam." He also told her that her son would die and that all of Jeroboam's family would be killed, because he had caused Israel to worship the golden calves. (See: [true](#), [truth](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Rehoboam's reign

When Solomon obeyed God, God made him very rich. When the people of Judah began to worship the fertility goddess, Ashtoreth, and to do many evil things, they had to give all of their wealth to the king of Egypt to persuade him not to attack Jerusalem. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

1 Kings 14:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹ At that time Abijah son of Jeroboam became very sick.

UST

¹ At that time, Jeroboam's [son](#) Abijah became very sick.

1 Kings 14:2

disguise yourself

“change how you appear to others”

you will not be recognized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will recognize you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet
- of Israel
- the king
- will recognize

ULT

² Jeroboam said to his wife, “Please arise and disguise yourself, so you will not be recognized as my wife, and go to Shiloh, because Ahijah the prophet is there; he is the one who spoke about me, saying that I would become king over these people.

UST

² Jeroboam said to his wife, “Disguise yourself in order that no one [will recognize](#) that you are my wife. Then go to the city of Shiloh, where [the prophet](#) Ahijah lives. He is the one who predicted that I would become [the king of Israel](#).

1 Kings 14:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with you](#)
- [loaves of bread](#)
- [about our son](#)

ULT

³ Take with you ten loaves, some cakes, and a jar of honey, and go to Ahijah. He will tell you what will happen to the child."

UST

³ Take [with you](#) ten [loaves of bread](#) and some small flat cakes, and a jar of honey, and give them to him. Tell him [about our son](#), and he will tell you what will happen to him."

1 Kings 14:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

⁴ Jeroboam's wife did so; she left and went to Shiloh and came to the house of Ahijah. Now Ahijah could not see; he lost his sight because of old age.

UST

⁴ So his wife went to Shiloh, to Ahijah's [house](#). Ahijah was unable to see, because he was very old and had become blind.

1 Kings 14:5

Look, the wife of Jeroboam

Here the word “Look” means “pay attention.”

coming to seek advice from you

The abstract noun “advice” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “coming to ask you to advise her” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Say such and such to her

The words “such and such” mean that Yahweh told Ahijah what to say. Alternate translation: “Speak in this way to her” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [But before she got there, Yahweh](#)
- [inquire about their](#)

ULT

⁵ Yahweh said to Ahijah, “Look, the wife of Jeroboam is coming to seek advice from you regarding her son, for he is sick. Say such and such to her, because when she comes, she will act as if she were some other woman.”

UST

⁵ [But before she got there, Yahweh](#) told Ahijah that Jeroboam’s wife was coming to [inquire about their son](#), who was very sick. And Yahweh told Ahijah what he should tell her. When she came to him, she pretended to be another woman.

1 Kings 14:6

Why do you pretend to be someone you are not?

This question shows that Ahijah knew she was disguised. Alternate translation: "Stop pretending to be someone else; I know who you are." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I have been sent to you with bad news

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh told me to give you bad news" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁶ When Ahijah heard the sound of her feet as she came in at the door, he said, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam. Why do you pretend to be someone you are not? I have been sent to you with bad news.

UST

⁶ But when Ahijah heard her footsteps as she entered the doorway, he said to her, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam! Why do you pretend that you are someone else? Yahweh has given me bad news to tell you.

1 Kings 14:7

I raised you

"I exalted you"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- the God
- Yahweh
- whom we Israelites worship
- my Israelite
- people
- people
- Go

ULT

⁷ Go, tell Jeroboam that Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, 'I raised you from among the people to make you the leader over my people Israel.

UST

⁷ Go and tell Jeroboam that this is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says to you: 'I chose you from among the common people and enabled you to become the king of my Israelite people.

1 Kings 14:8

I tore the kingdom away

God forcefully removed most of the kingdom like a person tears a piece of cloth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

followed me

“obeyed me”

with all his heart

Here the “heart” refers to a person’s will and desire. Alternate translation: “with all his will” or “with complete commitment” (See: [Metonymy](#))

what was right in my eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what I judged to be right” or “what I considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandments](#)
- [who served me very well. He obeyed all](#)
- [of Israel away from](#)
- [David](#)
- [who served me very well. He obeyed all](#)
- [commandments](#)
- [David's descendants](#)

ULT

⁸ I tore the kingdom away from the family of David and gave it to you, yet you have not been like my servant David, who kept my commandments and followed me with all his heart, to do only what was right in my eyes.

UST

⁸ I took most of the kingdom [of Israel away from David's descendants](#) and gave it to you. But you have not been like [David, who served me very well. He obeyed all](#) my [commandments](#) very sincerely, doing only things that I considered to be right.

1 Kings 14:9

thrust me behind your back

Jeroboam has disrespected Yahweh like a person throws away something that is not wanted. Alternate translation: “completely rejected me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gods](#)

ULT

⁹ Instead, you have done evil, more than all who were before you. You have made other gods, and you have cast metal images to provoke me to anger, and have thrust me behind your back.

UST

⁹ But you have done more evil things than all those who ruled before you. You have rejected me, and you have caused me to become very angry by making metal images of other [gods](#) so that you and others could worship them.

1 Kings 14:10

look

“pay attention.” This word is added to indicate that what follows is important.

I will cut off...and will completely remove

These two phrases are very similar in meaning and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

cut off from you every male child in Israel

Yahweh speaks of destroying Jeroboam's family and preventing him from having any descendants as if he were cutting them off as one would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “destroy every one of your male children in Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

will completely remove your family, like someone who burns up dung until it is gone

This simile compares the removal of every descendant of Jeroboam with the complete burning up of dung that was mixed with straw, dried, and burned for fuel. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I will completely](#)
- [terrible things](#)
- [I will cause...to die, young ones](#)
- [your family](#)
- [get rid of](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Therefore, look, I will bring disaster on your family; I will cut off from you every male child in Israel, whether slave or free, and will completely remove your family, like someone who burns up dung until it is gone.

UST

¹⁰ So, I am going to cause [terrible things](#) to happen to [your family](#). [I will cause](#) all your male descendants [to die](#), [young ones](#) and old ones. [I will completely get rid of](#) your family just like a man completely burns dung to cook his food.

1 Kings 14:11

Anyone who belongs to your family who dies in the city will be eaten by dogs

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Dogs will eat anyone who belongs to your family and who dies in the city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

anyone who dies in the field will be eaten by the birds of the heavens

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the birds of the heavens will eat anyone who dies in the field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- devour
- devour
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- by vultures
- I, Yahweh
- will be eaten
- will be eaten
- who die

ULT

11 Anyone who belongs to your family who dies in the city will be eaten by dogs, and anyone who dies in the field will be eaten by the birds of the heavens, for I, Yahweh, have said it.'

UST

11 The corpses of any members of your family who die in cities [will be eaten](#) by dogs. And the corpses of any members of your family [who die](#) out in the open fields [will be eaten by vultures](#). This will surely happen because [I, Yahweh](#), have said that it will happen.'

1 Kings 14:12

when your feet enter the city

The word “feet” here is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “when you enter the city” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- your son
- will die
- So go
- home

ULT

¹² So arise, wife of Jeroboam, and go back to your home; when your feet enter the city, the child Abijah will die.

UST

¹² [So go](#) back [home](#). And as soon as you enter the city, [your son will die](#).

1 Kings 14:13

All Israel

This is a generalization that means the people of the northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "The Israelite people" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

go into a grave

"be buried in a grave"

out of Jeroboam's house

The word "house" here is a metonym for "family." Alternate translation: "in all of Jeroboam's family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

was anything good found in the sight of Yahweh, the God of Israel

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did Yahweh, the God of Israel, find anything he judged to be good" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- temple
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- Yahweh
- is at all pleased
- family
- who will be...properly

ULT

¹³ All Israel will mourn for him and bury him. He is the only one from Jeroboam's family who will go into a grave, because only in him, out of Jeroboam's house, was anything good found in the sight of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

¹³ All [the Israelite people](#) will mourn for him and bury him. He is the only one of Jeroboam's family [who will be](#) buried [properly](#), because he is the only one of Jeroboam's [family](#) with whom [Yahweh is at all pleased](#).

1 Kings 14:14

cut off the family of Jeroboam

The writer speaks of the new king of Israel destroying Jeroboam's family and preventing him from having any descendants like one would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: "destroy the descendants of Jeroboam" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cut off
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Furthermore, Yahweh
- Israel
- get rid
- a king to rule over
- descendants

ULT

¹⁴ Also, Yahweh will raise up a king of Israel who will cut off the family of Jeroboam on that day. Today is that day, right now.

UST

¹⁴ [Furthermore, Yahweh](#) will appoint for himself [a king to rule over Israel](#) who will [get rid](#) of Jeroboam's [descendants](#). And that will start to happen today!

1 Kings 14:15

Yahweh will attack Israel as a reed is shaken in the water

The writer here uses a simile to express how Yahweh will bring judgment on the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will attack the people of Israel as a reed is shaken in the water” (See: [Simile](#))

as a reed is shaken in the water

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “like a river of water shakes a reed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he will root up Israel out of this good land

Yahweh compares Israel with a plant that he will tear out of the ground by its roots. Alternate translation: “he will remove the people of Israel from this good land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

scatter them

“disperse them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#) (2)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [by worshiping statues of the goddess](#)
- [the people of Israel](#)
- [the Israelite people](#) (2)
- [from this good land](#)
- [he gave to our ancestors](#)

ULT

¹⁵ For Yahweh will attack Israel as a reed is shaken in the water, and he will root up Israel out of this good land that he gave to their ancestors. He will scatter them beyond the Euphrates River, because they have made their Asherah poles and provoked Yahweh to anger.

UST

¹⁵ [Yahweh](#) will punish [the people of Israel](#). He will shake them like the wind shakes the reeds that grow in a stream. He will expel [the Israelite people from this good land](#) that [he gave to our ancestors](#). He will scatter them into countries east of the Euphrates River, because they have caused him to become very angry [by worshiping statues of the goddess](#) Asherah.

1 Kings 14:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- because of the sins
- sins
- committed
- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people

ULT

16 He will give Israel up because of the sins of Jeroboam, the sins that he has committed, and through which he has led Israel to sin."

UST

16 Yahweh will abandon [the Israelite people because of the sins](#) that Jeroboam [committed](#), [sins](#) which induced [the Israelite people](#) to commit them."

1 Kings 14:17

Tirzah

This is the name of the city where king Jeroboam lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

¹⁷ So Jeroboam's wife arose and left, and came to Tirzah. As she came to the threshold of her house, the child died.

UST

¹⁷ Jeroboam's wife returned home to the city of Tirzah, the new capital of Israel. And just as she entered her [house](#), her son died.

1 Kings 14:18

All Israel buried him and mourned for him

This is a generalization that means the people of Israel buried him and mourned for him. Alternate translation: "A great number of the people of Israel were present when people buried him, and the people of Israel mourned for him" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

just as it was told to them by the word of Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "just as Yahweh told them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by the word of Yahweh

"by the message of Yahweh" or "in Yahweh's message"

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [Yahweh had told](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [which is what](#)
- [him](#)

ULT

18 All Israel buried him and mourned for him, just as it was told to them by the word of Yahweh which he had spoken by his servant Ahijah the prophet.

UST

18 All [the Israelite people](#) mourned for him and buried [him](#), [which is what Yahweh had told](#) his servant, the [prophet](#) Ahijah, would happen.

1 Kings 14:19

see

“look” or “see for yourself”

they are written in

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can find them written in” or “someone has written about them in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [his army fought](#)

ULT

¹⁹ As for the other matters concerning Jeroboam, how he waged war and how he reigned, see, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

UST

¹⁹ Everything else that Jeroboam did, and the record of wars that [his army fought](#), and how he ruled, is written in the book of the events of the Kings of [Israel](#).

1 Kings 14:20

twenty-two years

"22 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

slept with his ancestors

Jeroboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: "died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [reign](#), [rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his son](#)
- [he](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁰ Jeroboam reigned twenty-two years and then slept with his ancestors, and Nadab his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁰ Jeroboam ruled for twenty-two years. Then [he](#) died, [and his son](#) Nadab became [king](#).

1 Kings 14:21

forty-one years old...seventeen years

"41 years old...17 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

in which to put his name

Here "put his name" is a metonym for "dwell" and refers to the temple where Yahweh was to be worshiped. Alternate translation: "in which to dwell" or "in which to be worshiped" (See: [Metonymy](#))

His mother's name

Here the word "His" refers to Rehoboam.

Naamah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judah (2)
- Yahweh
- to be the place
- tribes of Israel...where he should be worshiped
- Judah
- Solomon's
- in Jerusalem
- tribes of Israel...where he should be worshiped

ULT

²¹ Now Rehoboam son of Solomon was reigning in Judah. Rehoboam was forty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city that Yahweh had chosen out of all the tribes of Israel in which to put his name. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite woman.

UST

²¹ [Solomon's son](#) Rehoboam ruled [Judah](#). He was forty-one years old when he started to rule, and he ruled for seventeen years. He ruled [in Jerusalem](#), which is the city that [Yahweh](#) chose out of all the [tribes of Israel to be the place where he should be worshiped](#). Rehoboam's mother's name was Naamah. She was from the Ammon people group.

1 Kings 14:22

Judah did

Here “Judah” represents the people of Judah. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah did” (See: [Metonymy](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The “sight” of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:6](#). Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they provoked him to jealousy

The abstract noun “jealousy” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “they made him jealous” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

their fathers

“their ancestors”

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- zeal, zealous
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- had committed
- sins
- They caused him...become angry because they committed more
- that Yahweh
- were evil
- people of Judah
- than their ancestors

ULT

²² Judah did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; they provoked him to jealousy with the sins that they committed, more than everything that their fathers had done.

UST

²² The [people of Judah](#) did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). [They caused him](#) to [become angry because they committed more sins than their ancestors had committed](#). They worshiped many other gods instead of worshiping only Yahweh.

1 Kings 14:23

For they also built

The word “they” here refers to the people of Judah.

built for themselves

The words “for themselves” are a metonym for what they will do with the high places. Alternate translation: “built for their own use” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

on every high hill and under every green tree

This is likely to be an exaggeration that indicates there were many places like these for false worship all over the country. Alternate translation: “on the high hills and under the green trees” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

²³ For they also built for themselves high places, stone pillars, and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree.

UST

²³ They built places to worship those gods. On high hills and under big trees they set up pillars and poles for worshiping Asherah.

1 Kings 14:24

cultic prostitutes

“religious prostitutes” or “male prostitutes.” This probably refers to male prostitutes who were associated with idol worship.

the same despicable practices as the nations that

Here the word “nations” represents the people in those nations. Alternate translation: “the same disgusting things that the people did, whom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the same disgraceful](#)
- [while the Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [while the Israelites](#)
- [that had been done by the people whom](#)

ULT

²⁴ There were also cultic prostitutes in the land. They did the same despicable practices as the nations that Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel.

UST

²⁴ Also, there were male prostitutes at these places of worship. The Israelite people did [the same disgraceful](#) things [that had been done by the people whom Yahweh](#) had expelled [while the Israelites](#) were advancing through the land.

1 Kings 14:25

in the fifth year of King Rehoboam

This refers to the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign as king. Alternate translation: "in the fifth year that Rehoboam was king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the fifth year

"in year 5" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem

"Shishak king of Egypt" represents himself along with the Egyptian army. Alternate translation: "Shishak king of Egypt, and his army with him, came up against Jerusalem" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Shishak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:40](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came up against

This is an idiom that means marched against or attacked. Alternate translation: "came to attack" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [his army to attack](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

²⁵ It happened in the fifth year of King Rehoboam that Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem.

UST

²⁵ When Rehoboam had been ruling for almost five years, [King](#) Shishak of [Egypt](#) came with [his army to attack Jerusalem](#).

1 Kings 14:26

He took everything away

This is a generalization that indicates every valuable thing that could be found was taken away. Alternate translation: “He took away many valuable things” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

He took

The word “He” represents Shishak and the soldiers who were with him. Alternate translation: “Shishak and his army took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that Solomon had made

Here “Solomon” refers to the craftsmen who worked for Solomon to make the shields. Alternate translation: “that Solomon had his workers make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²⁶ He took away the treasures in the house of Yahweh, and the treasures in the king's house. He took everything away; he also took all the shields of gold that Solomon had made.

UST

²⁶ They took away all [the valuable things in the temple](#) and in [the king's palace, including the gold](#) shields that [Solomon's workers](#) had made.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- storehouse
- storehouse
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- in the temple
- Solomon's workers
- in the temple
- the valuable things
- the king's
- including the gold
- in the temple
- palace

1 Kings 14:27

King Rehoboam made shields

Here "King Rehoboam" represents the persons who worked for him to make the shields. Alternate translation: "King Rehoboam's workers made shields" (See: [Metonymy](#))

in their place

"in place of the shields of gold"

entrusted them into the hands of the commanders

Here "hands" represents care or responsibility. Alternate translation: "made them the responsibility of the commanders" (See: [Metonymy](#))

who guarded the doors to the king's house

Here "doors" represents the entrance. Alternate translation: "who guarded the entrance to the king's house" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and put them into the hands of](#)
- [and put them into the hands of](#)
- [King](#)
- [king's](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [officers](#)
- [palace](#)

ULT

²⁷ King Rehoboam made shields of bronze in their place and entrusted them into the hands of the commanders of the guard, who guarded the doors to the king's house.

UST

²⁷ [King](#) Rehoboam's workers made [bronze](#) shields to replace them [and put them into the hands of officers](#) who guarded the entrance to the [king's palace](#).

1 Kings 14:28

the guards would carry them

“the guards would carry the shields of bronze”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- house

Translation Words - UST

- into the temple
- the king
- and when he left the temple
- into the temple

ULT

²⁸ It happened that whenever the king entered the house of Yahweh, the guards would carry them; then they would bring them back into the guardhouse.

UST

²⁸ Every time that [the king](#) went [into the temple](#), those guards carried those shields, [and when he left the temple](#) they returned the shields to the storeroom.

1 Kings 14:29

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” or “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

the book of the events of the kings of Judah

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [the Kings of](#)

ULT

²⁹ As for the other matters concerning Rehoboam, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

²⁹ Everything else that Rehoboam did is written in the book of the events of [the Kings of Judah](#).

1 Kings 14:30

There was constant warfare

“There was continuing war” or “There were constant battles”

warfare between Rehoboam and Jeroboam

The names of the kings represent themselves and their armies.
Alternate translation: “the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam fought in battle again and again” or “Rehoboam and his people and Jeroboam and his people engaged in battle continually” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

³⁰ There was constant warfare between Rehoboam and Jeroboam.

UST

³⁰ There were wars continually between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam.

1 Kings 14:31

slept with his ancestors

Rehoboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Naamah

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abijah his son

“Abijah the son of Rehoboam”

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Rehoboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Then his son
- David
- and he
- his ancestors were buried
- king

ULT

31 So Rehoboam slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite woman. Abijah his son became king in his place.

UST

31 Then Rehoboam died, [and he](#) was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of [David](#), where [his ancestors were buried](#). His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite woman. [Then his son](#) Abijah became the [king](#).

1 Kings 15

1 Kings 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah had some bad kings and some good kings. All of the kings in Israel continued to worship the golden calves, so they were all considered to be bad. Judah and Israel continually fought each other.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“But the shrines were not taken away.”

At the shrines, the people worshiped Yahweh. But later, during Hezekiah’s reign, it was decided that all sacrifices must be made only at the temple. (See: [temple](#))

1 Kings 15:1

In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam son of Nebat

This refers to the eighteenth year of Jeroboam's reign. Alternate translation: "After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost eighteen years" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In the eighteenth year

"In year 18" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Jeroboam had been](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the king of Israel](#)

ULT

¹ In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam son of Nebat, Abijah began to reign over Judah.

UST

¹ [After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel](#) for almost eighteen years, Abijah became the king of [Judah](#).

1 Kings 15:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

² He ruled for three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Maacah. She was the daughter of Abishalom.

UST

² He ruled for three years [in Jerusalem](#). His mother's name was Maacah, the daughter of Abishalom.

1 Kings 15:3

He walked in all the sins

Walking represents living, and walking in sins represents committing those sins. Alternate translation: “Abijah continued to practice all the sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

that his father had committed before his time

Since these verses refer to several kings, it may help to include the name of Abijah’s father. This information can be made clear. AT “that his father, Rehoboam, had committed before Abijah’s time” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his time

This phrase represents the time that he was king. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “before Abijah was king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his heart was not devoted...as the heart of David

The heart represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “Abijah was not devoted...as David” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- heart
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- sins
- his God
- dedicated
- Yahweh
- David
- that his father
- as his ancestor

ULT

³ He walked in all the sins that his father had committed before his time; his heart was not devoted to Yahweh his God as the heart of David, his ancestor, had been.

UST

³ Abijah committed the same kind of [sins that his father](#) had committed. He was not fully [dedicated](#) to [Yahweh his God](#), [as his ancestor David](#) had been.

1 Kings 15:4

gave him a lamp in Jerusalem

The word “lamp” here represents a descendant who would be king as David was. Alternate translation: “gave David a descendant to rule in Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

by raising up his son after him

“by raising up Abijah’s son after him” or “by giving Abijah a son”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- confirm, confirmation, legal

Translation Words - UST

- a son
- his God
- Yahweh
- had promised to David
- in Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- to rule

ULT

⁴ Nevertheless, for David’s sake, Yahweh his God gave him a lamp in Jerusalem by raising up his son after him in order to strengthen Jerusalem.

UST

⁴ But, because of what Yahweh [his God had promised to David](#), Yahweh gave Abijah [a son to rule in Jerusalem](#) after him, and in order to protect [Jerusalem](#) from their enemies.

1 Kings 15:5

what was right in his eyes

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judges to be right” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for all the days of his life

“the whole time that David lived” or “throughout David’s whole life”

he had not turned away from anything that he commanded him

Turning away from a command represents disobeying it. Alternate translation: “David did not disobey anything that God commanded him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

except only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite

This is a general way to refer to the situation with Uriah. It can be stated more clearly what this matter was. Alternate translation: “except for what he did to Uriah the Hittite” or “except when he caused Uriah the Hittite to be killed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [obeyed Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh and](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

⁵ God did this because David had done what was right in his eyes; for all the days of his life, he had not turned away from anything that he commanded him, except only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite.

UST

⁵ Yahweh did that because [David](#) had always done what pleased [Yahweh and](#) because David had always [obeyed Yahweh](#). The only time when he disobeyed Yahweh was when he caused [Uriah](#) to be killed due to his sin with Bathsheba.

1 Kings 15:6

between Rehoboam and Jeroboam

These kings represent themselves and their armies. Rehoboam was Abijah's father. Alternate translation: "between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all the days of Abijah's life

"the whole time that Abijah lived"

ULT

⁶ Now there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days of Abijah's life.

UST

⁶ There were wars between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam all during the time that Abijah ruled.

1 Kings 15:7

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Abijah is in this other book. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:29](#). This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone has written about this in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

between Abijah and Jeroboam

The names “Abijah” and “Jeroboam” represent the kings and their armies. Alternate translation: “between the armies of Abijah and Jeroboam” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

⁷ As for the other matters of Abijah, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah? There was war between Abijah and Jeroboam.

UST

⁷ Everything else that Abijah did is written in the book of the events of the Kings of [Judah](#). There was war between Abijah and Jeroboam.

1 Kings 15:8

Abijah slept with his ancestors

In this euphemism, sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: “Abijah died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Abijah died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Abijah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his son](#)
- [David](#)
- [in the part of Jerusalem called](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁸ Abijah slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city of David. Asa his son became king in his place.

UST

⁸ Abijah died and was buried [in the part of Jerusalem called](#) the city of [David](#), [and his son](#) Asa became [king](#).

1 Kings 15:9

In the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel

This refers to the twentieth year of Jeroboam's reign. Alternate translation: "After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost twenty years" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In the twentieth year

"In year 20" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [had been](#)

ULT

⁹ In the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel, Asa began to reign over Judah.

UST

⁹ After Jeroboam [had been the king of Israel](#) for almost twenty years, Asa started to rule [Judah](#).

1 Kings 15:10

forty-one years

“41 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹⁰ He ruled forty-one years in Jerusalem. His grandmother’s name was Maacah, the daughter of Abishalom.

UST

¹⁰ He ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for forty-one years. His grandmother was Maacah, the daughter of Abishalom.

1 Kings 15:11

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Asa's actions. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh judges to be right" or "what Yahweh considers to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- to Yahweh
- as his ancestor

ULT

11 Asa did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, as David, his ancestor, had done.

UST

11 Asa did what was pleasing [to Yahweh, as his ancestor](#) David had done.

1 Kings 15:12

the cultic prostitutes

This probably refers to prostitutes who were associated with idol worship and who were all men. Alternate translation: “religious prostitutes” or “the prostitutes who worked for idols” or “male prostitutes”

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- He
- the male prostitutes
- at the places where the people worshiped idols

ULT

¹² He expelled the cultic prostitutes from the land and removed all the idols that his ancestors had made.

UST

¹² He got rid of [the male prostitutes](#) who were [at the places where the people worshiped idols](#), and he also got rid of all the idols that his ancestors had made.

1 Kings 15:13

Asa cut down the disgusting figure

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to cut down the figure. Alternate translation: “Asa caused the disgusting figure to be cut down” or “Asa made them cut down the disgusting figure” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [made](#)

ULT

13 He also removed Maacah, his grandmother, from being queen, because she had made a disgusting figure out of an Asherah pole. Asa cut down the disgusting figure and burned it at the Kidron Valley.

UST

13 He also removed his grandmother Maacah so that she no longer had influence in the government because of being the mother of a previous king. He did that because she had [made](#) a disgusting wooden statue of the goddess Asherah. Asa told his workers to cut down the statue and burned it in the Kidron Valley.

1 Kings 15:14

But the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But Asa did not command the people to take away the high places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Asa’s heart was completely devoted

The heart represents the person. Alternate translation: “Asa was completely devoted” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all his days

“the whole time that he lived” or “throughout his whole life”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [but he continued to be dedicated to](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

14 But the high places were not taken away. Nevertheless, Asa’s heart was completely devoted to Yahweh all his days.

UST

14 He was not able to destroy all the places where the people worshiped Yahweh, [but he continued to be dedicated to Yahweh](#) all during the time that he lived.

1 Kings 15:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- silver
- gold, golden
- house

Translation Words - UST

- things that he had dedicated to God
- temple
- all the items that his father
- and silver
- and all the gold
- temple

ULT

¹⁵ He brought into the house of Yahweh the things that were set apart by his father, and his own things that had been set apart that were made of silver and gold, and vessels.

UST

¹⁵ He told his workers to place in the temple all the items that his father had dedicated to God, and all the gold and silver things that he had dedicated to God.

1 Kings 15:16

all their days

This refers to the entire time they reigned as kings. Alternate translation: “the whole time that they reigned over Judah and Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the king of](#)

ULT

16 There was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel, all their days.

UST

16 There were wars between the armies of Asa and Baasha, [the king of Israel](#), all during the time that they ruled.

1 Kings 15:17

acted aggressively against Judah

“attacked Judah”

built up Ramah

It is implied that the army of Baasha first captured Ramah. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “captured and fortified Ramah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judea
- Ramah
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Baasha's army
- Judah
- in Judah
- the city of Ramah
- Baasha's army
- King
- They captured

ULT

¹⁷ Baasha king of Israel, acted aggressively against Judah and built up Ramah, so that he might not allow anyone to leave or enter into the land of Asa king of Judah.

UST

¹⁷ [Baasha's army](#) invaded [Judah](#). [They captured the city of Ramah](#) north of Jerusalem. Then they started to build a wall around it in order to prevent people from entering or leaving the area [in Judah](#) that [King](#) Asa ruled.

1 Kings 15:18

He put it into the hands of his servants

Putting things in their hands represents giving those things to them. It is implied that they would do with it what he wanted them to do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "He entrusted it to his servants" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

He said

This means he spoke by means of his servants. Asa told his servants what to say to Ben Hadad and they did. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Asa told his servants to say to Ben Hadad" or "Through his servants, Asa said to Ben Hadad" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son (2)
- son (3)
- Yahweh
- hand
- silver
- storehouse
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- was son (2)
- and grandson (3)
- in the storerooms in the temple
- to some of his officials
- the silver
- in the storerooms in the temple
- king, kingdom, kingship
- King Ben Hadad who ruled
- He told the officials to say this to Ben Hadad
- and gold
- to some of his officials
- in the storerooms in the temple
- and in the palace

ULT

18 Then Asa took all the silver and gold left in the storerooms in the house of Yahweh, and the storerooms of the king's palace. He put it into the hands of his servants and sent it to Ben Hadad son of Tabrimmon son of Hezion, the king of Aram, who lived in Damascus. He said,

UST

18 So Asa told his workers to take all [the silver and gold](#) that was still [in the storerooms in the temple and in the palace](#) and gave it [to some of his officials](#). He told them to take it to Damascus and give it to [King Ben Hadad who ruled](#) Aram. Ben Hadad [was son](#) of Tabrimmon [and grandson](#) of Hezion. [He told the officials to say this to Ben Hadad:](#)

1 Kings 15:19

Let there be a covenant between me and you

A covenant being between two people represents those two people having a covenant with each other. Alternate translation: "Let us have a covenant with each other" or "Let us make a peace treaty" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Look, I

"As proof that I want a treaty with you, I"

Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel

Breaking a covenant represents canceling it and not doing what one has promised to do. Alternate translation: "Cancel your covenant with Baasha king of Israel" or "Do not be loyal to Baasha king of Israel as you promised in your covenant with him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel

Asa wanted Ben Hadad to attack Israel. Ben Hadad could only do that if he broke his covenant with the king of Israel. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel, and attack Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [silver](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I want there to be a peace treaty](#)
- [treaty](#)
- [Israel, in order that he will](#)
- [my father](#)
- [your father](#)
- [For that purpose, I am...you this silver](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [giving](#)
- [and gold](#)

ULT

19 "Let there be a covenant between me and you, as there was between my father and your father. Look, I have sent to you a gift of silver and gold. Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel, so that he may leave me alone."

UST

19 "[I want there to be a peace treaty](#) between me and you, like there was between [my father](#) and [your father](#). [For that purpose, I am giving you this silver and gold](#). So now please cancel the [treaty](#) that you made with Baasha, [the king of Israel, in order that he will](#) take his soldiers away from attacking mine, because he will be afraid of your army."

1 Kings 15:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- and he did what
- the land
- commanders

ULT

²⁰ Ben Hadad listened to King Asa and sent the commanders of his armies, and they attacked the cities of Israel. They attacked Ijon, Dan, Abel Beth Maacah, and all Kinnereth, together with all the land of Naphtali.

UST

²⁰ So the officials went and gave the message to Ben Hadad, [and he did what](#) Asa suggested. He sent his army [commanders](#) and their soldiers to attack some of the towns in [Israel](#). They captured Ijon, Dan, Abel of Beth Maacah, the area near the Sea of Galilee, and all [the land](#) of the tribe of Naphtali.

1 Kings 15:21

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

he stopped building up Ramah

King Baasha did this by telling his workers to do this. Alternate translation: “he had his workers stop building up Ramah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ramah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [at Ramah](#)

ULT

²¹ It came about that when Baasha heard this, he stopped building up Ramah and went back to Tirzah.

UST

²¹ When Baasha heard about that, he told his soldiers to stop working [at Ramah](#). He and his soldiers returned to Tirzah and stayed there.

1 Kings 15:22

No one was exempted

This can also be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Every one had to obey King Asa's proclamation"

Translation Words - ULT

- innocent
- Mizpah
- Judea
- Ramah
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- stating that they...were required
- and timber they fortified the city of Mizpah north of Jerusalem
- in the towns in Judah
- to go to Ramah
- in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin
- Then King
- had been

ULT

22 Then King Asa made a proclamation to all Judah. No one was exempted. They carried away the stones and timbers of Ramah with which Baasha had been building up the city. Then King Asa used that building material to build up Geba of Benjamin and Mizpah.

UST

22 Then King Asa sent a message to all the people in the towns in Judah, stating that they all were required to go to Ramah and carry away the stones and timber that Baasha's soldiers had been using to build a wall around the city. With those stones and timber they fortified the city of Mizpah north of Jerusalem, and Geba, a town in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Kings 15:23

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Abijah is in this other book. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:29](#). This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone has written about this in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [his](#)

ULT

²³ As for the other matters of Asa, all his might, all that he did, and the cities he built, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah? But during his old age he was diseased in his feet.

UST

²³ Everything else that Asa did, the armies that his soldiers defeated, and the names of the cities that he caused to be fortified, are all written in the book of the events of the Kings of [Judah](#). But when Asa became old, he got a disease in [his](#) feet.

1 Kings 15:24

Asa slept with his ancestors

Sleeping here is a euphemism which represents dying. Alternate translation: "Asa died as his ancestors had" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him with his ancestors" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

David his father

The word "father" here refers to an ancestor. Alternate translation: "King David, his ancestor"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Jehoshaphat
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Then his son
- called the city of David
- Jehoshaphat
- his...were buried
- ancestors (2)
- called the city of David
- king

ULT

²⁴ Then Asa slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David his father. Jehoshaphat his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁴ He died and was buried where [his ancestors were buried](#) in the part of Jerusalem [called the city of David](#). [Then his son Jehoshaphat](#) became [king](#).

1 Kings 15:25

Connecting Statement:

The rest of chapter 15 and 16 is about the kings of Israel. These events happened while King Asa of Judah was still alive.

the second year of Asa king of Judah

This refers to the second year of Asa's reign. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "when Asa had been king of Judah for almost two years" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he reigned over Israel two years

"Nadab reigned over Israel two years"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel
- He ruled
- Judah
- He ruled
- the king

ULT

²⁵ Nadab son of Jeroboam began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa king of Judah; he reigned over Israel two years.

UST

²⁵ After Asa had been [the king](#) of [Judah](#) for almost two years, King Jeroboam's [son](#) Nadab started to rule [Israel](#). [He](#) [ruled](#) for two years.

1 Kings 15:26

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the way of his father

Walking here represents behaving. Alternate translation: "did the same things that his father had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in his own sin

Walking in his own sin represents sinning in ways that were different from the ways that his father had sinned. Alternate translation: "he sinned in his own ways" (See: [Metaphor](#))

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: "and by sinning, he influenced Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- and what he did induced the people
- that Yahweh
- of Israel
- were evil
- his father's behavior had been

ULT

²⁶ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of his father, and in his own sin, by which he led Israel to sin.

UST

²⁶ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). His behavior was sinful like [his father's behavior had been](#), and [what he did induced the people of Israel](#) to sin.

1 Kings 15:27

conspired against Nadab

“secretly plotted to kill King Nadab”

Gibbethon

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nadab and all Israel

“The phrase “all Israel” is a generalization that represents the many soldiers of Israel. Alternate translation: “Nadab and the many soldiers of Israel” or “Nadab and the army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

were laying siege to Gibbethon

“were surrounding Gibbethon, so that the people of Gibbethon would surrender to them”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST

- from the tribe
- and his army
- from the tribe

ULT

²⁷ Baasha son of Ahijah, of the family of Issachar, conspired against Nadab; Baasha killed him down at Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines, for Nadab and all Israel were laying siege to Gibbethon.

UST

²⁷ A man named Baasha, [from the tribe](#) of Issachar, planned to harm him. He killed Nadab when Nadab [and his army](#) had surrounded the city of Gibbethon in the region of Philistia.

1 Kings 15:28

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.”

Alternate translation: “became king instead of Nadab” (See:

[Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ruling Judah for almost](#)
- [became](#)
- [king of Israel](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²⁸ In the third year of Asa king of Judah, Baasha killed Nadab and became king in his place.

UST

²⁸ That was when Asa had been [the king ruling Judah for almost](#) three years. Then Baasha [became](#) the [king of Israel](#).

1 Kings 15:29

Baasha killed all the family of Jeroboam. He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing.

These two sentences mean the same thing and are combined to emphasize his descendents were all killed. (See: [Parallelism](#))

all the family of Jeroboam

Jeroboam was King Nadab's father.

He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing

Breathing represents being alive. Alternate translation: "He left none of Jeroboam's descendants living" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his royal line

"Jeroboam's royal line"

just as Yahweh had spoken by his servant Ahijah the Shilonite

In [1 Kings 14:10](#) and [1 Kings 14:11](#) Yahweh spoke through his prophet Ahijah and told Jeroboam that he would destroy his family.

Ahijah the Shilonite

"Ahijah, who was from Shiloh"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Doing what Yahweh](#)
- [his soldiers](#)
- [his soldiers](#)
- [family](#)

ULT

²⁹ As soon as he was king, Baasha killed all the family of Jeroboam. He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing; in this way he destroyed his royal line, just as Yahweh had spoken by his servant Ahijah the Shilonite,

UST

²⁹ As soon as he became king, he commanded [his soldiers](#) to kill all of Jeroboam's family. [Doing what Yahweh](#) had told the prophet Ahijah from Shiloh would happen, they killed all of Jeroboam's [family](#). None of them were left.

1 Kings 15:30

for the sins of Jeroboam which he committed and by which he led Israel to sin

The abstract noun “sins” can be expressed with the verb “sin.”
Alternate translation: “because Jeroboam sinned and led Israel to sin in the same ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do something. Alternate translation: “by which he influenced Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- and because of the sins
- sins
- committed
- that he had persuaded
- That happened because Yahweh had become very angry
- the people of
- Israel to commit

ULT

³⁰ for the sins of Jeroboam which he committed and by which he led Israel to sin, because he provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger.

UST

³⁰ [That happened because Yahweh had become very angry](#) with Jeroboam because of all the [sins](#) that Jeroboam had [committed](#), [and because of the sins that he had persuaded the people of Israel to commit](#).

1 Kings 15:31

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Nadab is in this other book. See how you translated a similar phrase concerning Judah in [1 Kings 14:29](#). This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone has written about this in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the Kings of](#)

ULT

³¹ As for the other matters concerning Nadab, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

³¹ Everything else that Nadab did is written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 15:32

all their days

This refers to the whole period of time that they reign as kings. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:16](#) Alternate translation: “the whole time that they reigned over Judah and Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and King](#)
- [and King](#)

ULT

³² There was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days.

UST

³² There were wars between the armies of King Asa [and King](#) Baasha all the time that they ruled.

1 Kings 15:33

Connecting Statement:

Starting in [1 Kings 15:27](#), the author told about how Baasha became king. Here the author begins to tell about what Baasha did as king of Israel.

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the king of](#)

ULT

³³ In the third year of Asa king of Judah, Baasha son of Ahijah began to reign over all Israel in Tirzah and he reigned twenty-four years.

UST

³³ After Asa had been [the king of Judah](#) for almost three years, Baasha [son](#) of Ahijah, started to rule [Israel](#) at the city of Tirzah. He ruled for twenty-four years.

1 Kings 15:34

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the way of Jeroboam

Walking here represents behaving. Alternate translation: "did the same things that Jeroboam had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in his sin by which he led Israel to sin

Possible meanings are that "his" and "he" refer to 1) Baasha or 2) Jeroboam.

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: "and by sinning, he influenced Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), sinful, sinner, sinning
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), Israelites
- [evil](#), wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- [commit sins that were like](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [people of Israel that encouraged them to](#)
- [were evil](#)

ULT

³⁴ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of Jeroboam and in his sin by which he led Israel to sin.

UST

³⁴ Baasha did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#), and he lived a sinful life just like Jeroboam lived. Baasha's sinful life set an example for the [people of Israel that encouraged them to commit sins that were like](#) his sins.

1 Kings 16

1 Kings 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Incorrect worship

The prophet Jehu warned Baasha, king of Israel, that God would destroy his family for worshiping the idols. But Baasha did not change his ways; so Zimri murdered Baasha's son and all his relatives. Then Omri killed Zimri. Omri's son Ahab brought in the rain god Baal and his wife, the fertility goddess Ashtoreth, as the official religion of Israel. This was very evil. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

1 Kings 16:1

The word of Yahweh came

This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his message” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [that he had received from Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹ The word of Yahweh came to Jehu son of Hanani against Baasha, saying,

UST

¹ During the time that Baasha was king of Israel, the prophet Jehu, Hanani's [son](#), gave Baasha this message [that he had received from Yahweh](#):

1 Kings 16:2

Although I exalted you

This is God's message that Jehu was to give to Baasha. The word "you" refers to Baasha.

I exalted you out of the dust

"I raised you out of the dust." Being in the dust on the ground represents not being important. Exalting someone represents making him important. Alternate translation: "I raised you from a very unimportant position" or "when you had no power or influence over people, I made you important" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you have walked in the way of Jeroboam

Walking represents behaving. Jeroboam and Baasha both sinned. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "you have done the same things that Jeroboam did" or "you have sinned as Jeroboam sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)

Translation Words - UST

- did
- to sin
- my Israelite
- by causing my people
- people
- by causing my people (2)

ULT

² "Although I exalted you out of the dust and made you leader over my people Israel, you have walked in the way of Jeroboam and have made my people Israel to sin, so as to provoke me to anger with their sins.

UST

² "You were very insignificant when I caused you to become the ruler of [my Israelite people](#). But you have caused me to become very angry by doing the kinds of evil things that King Jeroboam [did](#). You have also caused me to become angry [by causing my people to sin](#).

1 Kings 16:3

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues telling Baasha what he will do to him.

See, I will completely sweep away Baasha and his family

Yahweh is speaking to Baasha, and the phrase “his family” refers to Baasha’s family. This can be translated using the words “you” and “your.” Alternate translation: “Listen, Baasha. I will completely sweep away you and your family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

I will completely sweep away

Sweeping away represents destroying. Alternate translation: “I will completely destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [just like I did to Jeroboam...family](#)
- [get rid of](#)
- [family](#)
- [just like I did to Jeroboam...family](#)

ULT

³ See, I will completely sweep away Baasha and his family and I will make your family like the family of Jeroboam son of Nebat.

UST

³ So now I will [get rid of](#) you and your [family](#). I will do to you [just like I did to Jeroboam](#) and his [family](#).

1 Kings 16:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [by vultures](#)
- [They will be eaten](#)
- [will be eaten](#)
- [who die](#)

ULT

⁴ The dogs will eat anyone belonging to Baasha who dies in the city, and the birds of the sky will eat anyone who dies in the fields."

UST

⁴ The bodies of those in your family [who die](#) in this city will not be buried. [They will be eaten](#) by dogs, and the bodies of those who die in the fields [will be eaten by vultures](#)."

1 Kings 16:5

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Baasha is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the Kings of](#)

ULT

⁵ As for the other matters concerning Baasha, what he did, and his might, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

⁵ The other things that Baasha did during the time that he ruled Israel, and the great things that his army did, are written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:6

Baasha slept with his ancestors

Sleeping is a euphemism that represents dying. Alternate translation: “Baasha died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Baasha died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Baasha” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [reign](#), [rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then his son](#)
- [he](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁶ Baasha slept with his ancestors and was buried in Tirzah, and Elah his son became king in his place.

UST

⁶ When Baasha died, [he](#) was buried in Tirzah, the capital city. [Then his son](#) Elah became [king](#).

1 Kings 16:7

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

all the evil that he did in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment. Alternate translation: “all the things that Baasha that are evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “all the things that Baasha did that Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so as to provoke him to anger

The abstract noun “anger” can be expressed with the adjective “angry.” Alternate translation: “so as to make Yahweh very angry” or “that made God very angry” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

with the work of his hands

Here Basha is represented by his “hands.” This speaks of all of his actions as his “work.” Alternate translation: “by the things Baasha had done” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- hand
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Jehu
- prophet
- that Yahweh
- Yahweh
- were evil
- done many deeds
- done previously
- family
- that King Jeroboam and his family had

ULT

⁷ So by the prophet Jehu son of Hanani the word of Yahweh came against Baasha and his family, both because of all the evil that he did in the sight of Yahweh, so as to provoke him to anger with the work of his hands, like the family of Jeroboam, and also because he had killed all of Jeroboam’s family.

UST

⁷ Yahweh gave that message about Baasha and his [family](#) to the [prophet Jehu](#). Baasha had [done many deeds that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#), which caused Yahweh to become angry. Baasha did the same kind of deeds [that King Jeroboam and his family had done previously](#). [Yahweh](#) was also angry with Baasha because he had killed all of Jeroboam’s family.

1 Kings 16:8

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Elah
- Israel
- Judah
- the king of

ULT

⁸ In the twenty-sixth year of Asa king of Judah, Elah son of Baasha began to reign over Israel in Tirzah; he reigned two years.

UST

⁸ After Asa had been [the king of Judah](#) for almost twenty-six years, [Elah](#) became the king of [Israel](#). Elah ruled in Tirzah for only two years.

1 Kings 16:9

His servant Zimri

"Elah's servant Zimri"

captain of half his chariots

The word "chariots" here represents the soldiers who drove the chariots. Alternate translation: "captain of half his chariot drivers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

drinking himself drunk

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "drinking so much wine that he was getting drunk" or "getting drunk" (See: [Idiom](#))

who was over the household

Being over the household represents being in charge of the things in King Elah's house. Alternate translation: "who was in charge of the things in the Elah's house" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- drunk, drunkard
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- getting drunk
- Elah's army's
- army officers
- king's palace
- at the house of a man named Arza

ULT

⁹ His servant Zimri, captain of half his chariots, conspired against him. Now Elah was in Tirzah, drinking himself drunk in the house of Arza, who was over the household in Tirzah.

UST

⁹ A man named Zimri was one of Elah's [army officers](#). He commanded the drivers of half of [Elah's army's](#) chariots. He made plans to kill Elah while Elah was in Tirzah, [getting drunk at the house of a man named Arza](#). Arza was the man who took care of the things in the [king's palace](#).

1 Kings 16:10

attacked him and killed him

“attacked and killed Elah”

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.”
Alternate translation: “became king instead of Elah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [reign](#), [rule](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#) [for](#)
- [killed](#) [Elah](#)
- [king](#) [of](#) [Israel](#)
- [the](#) [king](#) [of](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Zimri went in, attacked him and killed him, in the twenty-seventh year of Asa king of Judah, and became king in his place.

UST

¹⁰ Zimri went into Arza's house and [killed Elah](#). Then he became the [king of Israel](#). That was when Asa had been [the king of Judah for](#) twenty-seven years.

1 Kings 16:11

He did not leave alive a single male

This means that he killed all the men and boys. Alternate translation: "He did not leave even one male alive"

Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [family and all of Baasha's](#)
- [of](#)
- [Baasha's family](#)

ULT

11 When Zimri began to reign and was seated on his throne, he killed all the family of Baasha. He did not leave alive a single male belonging to Baasha's relatives or friends.

UST

11 As soon as Zimri became king, he killed all [of Baasha's family](#). He killed every male in Baasha's [family and all of Baasha's](#) male friends.

1 Kings 16:12

the word of Yahweh

“the message of Yahweh” or “Yahweh’s message”

which he spoke against Baasha by Jehu the prophet

Speaking “by” a prophet represents telling a prophet to speak and the prophet speaking. Alternate translation: “that Yahweh told Jehu the prophet to speak against Baasha” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet
- That was just what Yahweh told
- Baasha’s
- family

ULT

¹² So Zimri destroyed all the family of Baasha, according to the word of Yahweh which he spoke against Baasha by Jehu the prophet,

UST

¹² So he got rid of all of [Baasha's family](#). [That was just what Yahweh told the prophet](#) Jehu would happen.

1 Kings 16:13

they had led Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: “they had influenced Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they had led Israel to sin

Here the word “Israel” refers to the ten northern tribes of Israel. Baasha and Elah had been their king.

they provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their idols

God became angry with the people because they worshiped idols. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “they made Yahweh, the God of Israel, angry because they worshiped idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the God of Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had sinned](#)
- [to sin](#)
- [whom](#)
- [the Israelite people worshiped](#)
- [and his son](#)
- [God](#)
- [They caused Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelite people worshiped](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)

ULT

13 for all the sins of Baasha and the sins of Elah his son that they committed, and by which they had led Israel to sin, so that they provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their idols.

UST

13 Baasha [and his son](#) Elah [had sinned](#) and induced [the Israelite people to sin](#). [They caused Yahweh](#), the [God whom the Israelite people worshiped](#), to become angry, because they both urged the people to worship worthless idols.

1 Kings 16:14

are they not written...kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Elah is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written...Israel?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the Kings of](#)

ULT

¹⁴ As for the other matters concerning Elah, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

¹⁴ Everything else that Elah did is written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:15

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

the army was camped by Gibbethon

The word “army” refers to the army of the kingdom of Israel.

Gibbethon

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 15:27](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [people group](#)
- [So Zimri became the king of](#)

ULT

¹⁵ In the twenty-seventh year of Asa king of Judah, Zimri reigned only for seven days in Tirzah. Now the army was camped by Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines.

UST

¹⁵ [So Zimri became the king of](#) Israel after Asa had been king of [Judah](#) for twenty-seven years. But Zimri ruled in Tirzah for only seven days. The Israelite army was beseiging Gibeah, a town that belonged to the Philistine [people group](#).

1 Kings 16:16

The army camped there heard it said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The soldiers who camped there heard someone say" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all Israel

Both times this phrase is used, it represents the army of Israel. Here the word "all" is a generalization meaning "most." Alternate translation: "all the army of Israel" or "most of the soldiers in the army of Israel" or "the army of Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite army camp
- of Israel
- heard that Zimri had secretly planned
- King Elah
- the king
- the commander

ULT

16 The army camped there heard it said, "Zimri has plotted and has killed the king." So that day in the camp, all Israel declared Omri, the commander of the army, king over Israel.

UST

16 The men in [the Israelite army camp](#) [heard that Zimri had secretly planned](#) to kill [King Elah](#), and then had killed him. So on that day the soldiers chose Omri, [the commander](#) of their army, to become [the king of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Israelite](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Omri went up from Gibbethon and all Israel with him, and they besieged Tirzah.

UST

¹⁷ [The Israelite](#) army was camped near Gibbethon. When they heard what Zimri had done, they left there and went to Tirzah, and surrounded the city.

1 Kings 16:18

that the city had been taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that Omri and the army had taken the city” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- died
- in the fire
- his
- and he
- palace
- the palace burned down

ULT

18 So when Zimri saw that the city had been taken, he went into the fortress attached to the king's palace and set fire to the building over him; in this way he died in the flames.

UST

18 When Zimri realized that the city was about to be captured, he went into [his palace](#) and set it on fire. So [the palace burned down, and he died in the fire](#).

1 Kings 16:19

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walking in the way of Jeroboam

Here walking represents behaving. Alternate translation: "doing the same things that Jeroboam had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

so as to lead Israel to sin

Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. Alternate translation: "so as to influence Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He died because he had sinned](#)
- [He died because he had sinned](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [Israelite people](#)
- [were evil](#)

ULT

¹⁹ This was for the sins that he had committed in doing what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, by walking in the way of Jeroboam and in the sin that he had committed, so as to lead Israel to sin.

UST

¹⁹ [He died because he had sinned](#) by doing many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). Jeroboam had induced the [Israelite people](#) to sin, and Zimri sinned just like Jeroboam had sinned.

1 Kings 16:20

the treason that he carried out

This treason refers to Zimri's plot to kill Elah, the king of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "how he plotted against King Elah" or "how he killed the king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Zimri is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated a similar phrase concerning Judah in [1 Kings 14:29](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written...Israel?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the Kings of](#)

ULT

²⁰ As for the other matters concerning Zimri, and the treason that he carried out, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

²⁰ All the other things that Zimri did, and the record of how he rebelled against King Elah, are written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:21

followed Tibni...followed Omri

Here “followed” represents supporting or wanting to make him king. Alternate translation: “supported Tibni son of Ginath, to make him king, and half supported Omri” or “wanted to make Tibni son of Ginath king, and half wanted to make Omri king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- the Israelite people...divided among themselves
- the Israelite people...divided among themselves
- the Israelite people...divided among themselves
- king

ULT

²¹ Then the people of Israel were divided into two parts. Half of the people followed Tibni son of Ginath, to make him king, and half followed Omri.

UST

²¹ After Zimri died, [the Israelite people](#) were [divided among themselves](#). One group wanted Tibni [son](#) of Ginath, to be their [king](#). The other group wanted Omri to be the king.

1 Kings 16:22

were stronger than the people who followed Tibni

“overpowered the people who followed Tibni”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- supported...Tibni
- those
- Those
- was killed
- king

ULT

²² But the people who followed Omri were stronger than the people who followed Tibni son of Ginath. So Tibni died, and Omri became king.

UST

²² Those who supported Omri were stronger than those who supported Tibni. So Tibni was killed, and Omri became king.

1 Kings 16:23

Tirzah

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [1 Kings 14:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²³ Omri began to reign over Israel in the thirty-first year of Asa king of Judah, and he reigned twelve years. He reigned from Tirzah for six years.

UST

²³ Omri became king when Asa had been [king](#) of [Judah](#) for almost thirty-one years. Omri ruled [Israel](#) for twelve years. For the first six years he ruled in Tirzah.

1 Kings 16:24

Shemer

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

two talents of silver

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “about 66 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

He built a city

The word “He” refers to Omri. He commanded people to build the city. Alternate translation: “Omri had his people build a city” or “Omri commanded and his workers built a city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

after the name of Shemer

This is an idiom that means “to honor Shemer” or “so that people would remember Shemer.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- name
- name
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Samaria, Samaritan
- silver
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- man who owned it previously
- Then Omri ordered his men
- to honor
- Samaria
- and he called it
- silver
- Then Omri ordered his men

ULT

24 He bought the hill of Samaria from Shemer for two talents of silver. He built a city on the hill and called the name of the city Samaria, after the name of Shemer, the past owner of the hill.

UST

24 Then he bought a hill from a man named Shemer and paid him about sixty-six kilograms of [silver](#) for it. [Then Omri ordered his men](#) to build a city on that hill, [and he called it Samaria, to honor](#) Shemer, the [man who owned it previously](#).

1 Kings 16:25

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [were evil](#)

ULT

²⁵ Omri did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and acted more wickedly than all who had been before him.

UST

²⁵ But Omri did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). He did more evil deeds than any of the kings who ruled Israel before he did.

1 Kings 16:26

walked in all the ways of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Walking represents behaving. Alternate translation: “did all the same things that Jeroboam son of Nebat did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in his sins by which he led Israel to sin

Possible meanings are that “his” and “he” refer to 1) Baasha or 2) Jeroboam.

in his sins

Possible meanings are walking in his sins represents 1) sinning as Jeroboam sinned. Alternate translation: “he sinned as Jeroboam sinned” or 2) or sinning habitually. Alternate translation: “he sinned habitually” (See: [Metaphor](#))

by which he led Israel to sin

Leading people to sin represents influencing them to sin. Alternate translation: “his sins, by which he influenced Israel to sin” or “and by sinning like this, he influenced people to sin.”

to provoke Yahweh...to be angry with their worthless idols

God became angry with the people because they worshiped idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Kings 16:13](#). Alternate translation: “to make Yahweh, the God of Israel, angry because they worshiped worthless idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

their worthless idols

The word “worthless” here reminds people that idols are worthless because they cannot do anything. Alternate translation: “their idols, which are worthless” or “their idols, which are useless” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

the God of Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and Omri committed](#)
- [When Jeroboam was previously the king](#)
- [the God](#)

ULT

26 For he walked in all the ways of Jeroboam son of Nebat and in his sins by which he led Israel to sin, to provoke Yahweh, the God of Israel, to be angry with their worthless idols.

UST

26 [When Jeroboam was previously the king](#), he had induced the Israelite people to sin, [and Omri committed](#) the same kind of sins that Jeroboam did. [The Israelite people caused Yahweh, the God the Israelite people had worshiped](#), to become very angry, because they worshiped worthless idols.

- caused Yahweh
- the Israelite people had worshiped
- The Israelite people

1 Kings 16:27

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Omri is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

are they not written...Israel?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone has written about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the Kings of](#)

ULT

²⁷ As for the other matters concerning Omri which he did, and the might that he showed, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

²⁷ Everything that Omri did, and the record of the victories that his army won, are written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 16:28

Omri slept with his ancestors

The euphemism “sleeping” here represents dying. Alternate translation: “Omri died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Omri died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Omri” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [reign](#), [rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his son](#)
- [he](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

²⁸ So Omri slept with his ancestors and was buried in Samaria and Ahab his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁸ After Omri died, [he](#) was buried in Samaria, [and his son](#) Ahab became [king](#).

1 Kings 16:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab became
- Ahab (2)
- Israel
- in the city...Samaria
- Judah
- ruled
- king

ULT

²⁹ In the thirty-eighth year of Asa king of Judah, Ahab son of Omri began to reign over Israel. Ahab son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty-two years.

UST

²⁹ [Ahab became king](#) of [Israel](#) when Asa had ruled [Judah](#) for almost thirty-eight years. [Ahab ruled in the city](#) of [Samaria](#) for twenty-two years.

1 Kings 16:30

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- that Yahweh
- were evil

ULT

³⁰ Ahab son of Omri did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, more than all those who were before him.

UST

³⁰ [Ahab](#) did many things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#). He did more evil deeds than any of the kings who ruled Israel before he did.

1 Kings 16:31

It was to Ahab a trivial thing to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

This implies that Ahab wanted to commit worse sins. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "It was as if Ahab thought that walking in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat was not enough" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

It was to Ahab a trivial thing

This is an idiom. The phrase "to Ahab" means that Ahab considered or thought something. Alternate translation: "Ahab considered it a trivial thing" or "Ahab thought that it was not enough" (See: [Idiom](#))

a trivial thing

"an insignificant thing" or "not enough"

to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Walking in Jeroboam's sins represents sinning as Jeroboam had sinned. Alternate translation: "to sin as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

worshiped Baal and bowed down to him

These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase "bowed down to him" describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- He committed the same kind of sins
- people group worshiped
- the city of Sidon. Then Ahab started to worship Baal, the god that the Canaan
- the king of
- He committed the same kind of sins

ULT

³¹ It was to Ahab a trivial thing to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, so he took as his wife Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal, king of the Sidonians; he went and worshiped Baal and bowed down to him.

UST

³¹ [He committed the same kind of sins](#) that Jeroboam did, but he did things that were worse than the things that Jeroboam did. He married a woman named Jezebel, the daughter of Ethbaal, [the king of the city of Sidon. Then Ahab started to worship Baal, the god that the Canaan people group worshiped.](#)

1 Kings 16:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- house

Translation Words - UST

- and he put an altar there for making sacrifices
- a temple

ULT

³² He built an altar for Baal in the house of Baal, which he had built in Samaria.

UST

³² He built [a temple](#) in Samaria in order that the Israelite people could worship Baal there, [and he put an altar there for making sacrifices](#) to Baal.

1 Kings 16:33

the God of Israel

Here the word "Israel" refers to the nation of Israel, which consisted of twelve tribes.

the kings of Israel

Here the word "Israel" refers to the kingdom of Israel, which consisted of ten tribes.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites \(2\)](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [previous kings of Israel](#)
- [previous kings of Israel \(2\)](#)
- [previous kings of Israel](#)

ULT

33 Ahab made an Asherah pole. Ahab did even more to provoke Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger than all the kings of Israel who had been before him.

UST

33 He also made an idol that represented Asherah, Baal's wife. [He](#) did many more things that caused [Yahweh](#) to become angry. He did more evil things than any of the [previous kings of Israel](#) had done.

1 Kings 16:34

at the cost of the life of Abiram, his firstborn son

The consequence of building the city is spoken of as if it were a cost that Hiel paid. Alternate translation: “and the consequence of his sin was that Abiram, his firstborn son, died” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Segub, his youngest son, lost his life

Dying is spoken of as if he lost his life. Alternate translation: “Segub, his youngest son, died” (See: [Metaphor](#))

while he was building the gates of the city

“while Hiel was building the gates of the city”

in keeping with the word of Yahweh

“according to the word of Yahweh”

the word of Yahweh

“the message of Yahweh” or “Yahweh’s message”

which he spoke by Joshua son of Nun

Speaking “by” someone represents both telling someone to speak and the person doing it. Alternate translation: “which Yahweh caused Joshua son of Nun to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Jericho
- Joshua
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- found, founder, foundation
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- Joshua would happen
- Yahweh
- rebuilt the city of Jericho
- Joshua would happen
- Joshua would happen
- the city gates
- of anyone who would rebuild Jericho
- But when he started to rebuild the city, his oldest son Abiram died

ULT

³⁴ During Ahab’s rule, Hiel of Bethel rebuilt Jericho. Hiel laid the foundation of the city at the cost of the life of Abiram, his firstborn son; and Segub, his youngest son, lost his life while he was building the gates of the city, in keeping with the word of Yahweh which he spoke by Joshua son of Nun.

UST

³⁴ During the years that Ahab ruled, Hiel, a man from the city of Bethel, [rebuilt the city of Jericho. But when he started to rebuild the city, his oldest son Abiram died.](#) And when the city was finished, while Hiel was building [the city gates](#), his youngest son Segub died. They died just as [Yahweh](#) had told [Joshua would happen](#) to the sons [of anyone who would rebuild Jericho.](#)

1 Kings 17

1 Kings 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the story of Elijah. (1 Kings 17 – 2 Kings 2)

Special concepts in this chapter

Baal worship

Ahab had introduced the worship of Baal, the god people thought brought rain, to Israel. Because of this, God caused a drought. Elijah told Ahab that it would not rain or dew until he, Elijah, said so. Elijah had to hide so Ahab would not kill him for bringing the drought. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

1 Kings 17:1

the Tishbite

This is the name of a people group from Tishbe. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tishbe

This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

As Yahweh, the God of Israel lives

This phrase is an oath to emphasize that what he will say is true.

before whom I stand

This is an idiom that means “to serve.” Alternate translation: “whom I serve” (See: [Idiom](#))

dew

drops of water that form on the plants during the night

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- lived
- the God...and
- whom I worship and serve
- Yahweh is
- whom we Israelites worship

ULT

¹ Elijah the Tishbite, from Tishbe in Gilead, said to Ahab, “As Yahweh, the God of Israel lives, before whom I stand, there will not be dew or rain these years unless I say so.”

UST

¹ Elijah was a prophet who [lived](#) in the city of Tishbe in the region of Gilead. One day he went to King Ahab and said to him, “[Yahweh is the God whom we Israelites worship and](#) the God [whom I worship and serve](#). Just as certainly as Yahweh lives, there will be no dew or rain for the next few years, unless I command it to fall.”

1 Kings 17:2

The word of Yahweh came

This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his message” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#)

ULT

² The word of Yahweh came to Elijah, saying,

UST

² [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#),

1 Kings 17:3

Kerith

This is the name of a very small stream. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Jordan River](#)
- [to the east](#)
- [and, go](#)

ULT

³ "Leave from here and go eastward; hide yourself by the brook Kerith, east of the Jordan.

UST

³ "Because you have made the king angry with you, escape from the king [and, go to the east](#), to the Kerith Brook, east of where it flows into [the Jordan River](#).

1 Kings 17:4

It will happen that

This phrase is used to introduce how Yahweh will take care of Elijah during the drought. Alternate translation: "There"

ravens

large, black birds (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [because I have commanded them to bring food to you](#)

ULT

⁴ It will happen that you will drink from the brook, and I have commanded the ravens to feed you there."

UST

⁴ You will be able to drink water from the brook, and you will be able to eat what the crows bring to you, [because I have commanded them to bring food to you.](#)"

1 Kings 17:5

as the word of Yahweh commanded

Here “the word” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the brook Kerith

This is the name of a very small stream. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 17:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [to do](#)

ULT

⁵ So Elijah went and did as the word of Yahweh commanded. He went to live by the brook Kerith, east of the Jordan.

UST

⁵ So Elijah did what [Yahweh](#) commanded him [to do](#). He went and camped alongside Kerith Brook, east of the [Jordan River](#).

1 Kings 17:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- bread and meat...every morning
- bread and meat...every morning

ULT

⁶ The ravens brought him bread and meat in the morning and bread and meat in the evening, and he drank from the brook.

UST

⁶ Crows brought [bread and meat](#) to him [every morning](#) and every evening, and he drank water from the brook.

1 Kings 17:7

in the land

“in that area” or “in that country”

ULT

⁷ But after a while the brook dried up because there was no rain in the land.

UST

⁷ But after a while, the water in the brook dried up, because rain did not fall anywhere in the land.

1 Kings 17:8

The word of Yahweh came

This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his message” (See: [Idiom](#))

came to him

Here the word “him” refers to Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#)

ULT

⁸ The word of Yahweh came to him, saying,

UST

⁸ [Then Yahweh said to Elijah](#),

1 Kings 17:9

Zarephath

This is a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Look, I

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: I"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I have already told her what to do about that](#)
- [Go](#)

ULT

⁹ "Arise, go to Zarephath, which belongs to Sidon, and live there. Look, I have commanded a widow there to provide for you."

UST

⁹ "[Go](#) and live in the village of Zarephath, near the city of Sidon. There is a widow there who will give you food to eat. [I have already told her what to do about that.](#)"

1 Kings 17:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He said to her](#)

ULT

¹⁰ So he arose and went to Zarephath, and when he came to the gate of the city a widow was there gathering sticks. So he called to her and said, "Please bring me a little water in a jar so that I may drink."

UST

¹⁰ So Elijah did what God said. He went to Zarephath. As he arrived at the gates of the village, he saw a widow who was gathering sticks. [He said to her](#), "Would you please bring me a cup of water?"

1 Kings 17:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [me a piece of bread, too](#)
- [me a piece of bread, too](#)
- [he called out to her](#)

ULT

¹¹ As she was going to get water he called to her, and said, "Please bring me a piece of bread in your hand."

UST

¹¹ While she was going to get it, [he called out to her](#), "Bring [me a piece of bread, too!](#)"

1 Kings 17:12

As Yahweh your God lives

This phrase is an oath to emphasize that what she will say is true.

only a handful of meal

"only a little bit of meal"

meal

"flour." This what is used to make bread.

See, I

"Let me tell you what I am doing: I"

two sticks

This may refer to two sticks or to only a few sticks. (See: [Numbers](#))

that we may eat it, and die

It is implied that they will die because they do not have anymore food. Alternate translation: "that we may eat. Afterwards, we will starve to death" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- hand
- devour
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- olive

Translation Words - UST

- But she replied
- my son
- Your God
- telling you
- I have only a handful
- eat that
- will die from hunger
- olive oil in a jug

ULT

¹² She replied, "As Yahweh your God lives, I do not have any bread, but only a handful of meal in a jar and a little oil in a jug. See, I am gathering two sticks so I may go in and cook it for me and my son, that we may eat it, and die."

UST

¹² [But she replied](#), "[Your God](#) knows that what I am [telling you](#) is true. I do not have even one piece of bread in my house. [I have only a handful](#) of flour in a jar, and a little [olive oil in a jug](#). I was gathering a few sticks to use these to make a fire and cook one more meal, and then after [my son](#) and I [eat that](#), we [will die from hunger](#)."

1 Kings 17:13

afterward make some for you and for your son

It is implicit that there would be enough flour and oil to make more bread. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Do not be worried](#)
- [left](#)
- [for you and your son](#)

ULT

13 Elijah said to her, "Do not fear. Go and do as you have said, but make me a little bread first and bring it out to me. Then afterward make some for you and for your son.

UST

13 But Elijah said to her, "[Do not be worried!](#) Go home and do what you said that you were going to do. But first, bake me a little loaf of bread and bring it to me. After you do that, take what is [left](#) and prepare some food [for you and your son](#).

1 Kings 17:14

Yahweh sends rain

This is an idiom that means Yahweh causes it to rain. Alternate translation: "Yahweh causes rain to fall" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- consume, devour

Translation Words - UST

- the God
- Yahweh
- I know that you will be able
- whom we Israelites worship
- to do
- There will always be plenty

ULT

14 For Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, 'The jar of meal will not empty, neither will the jug of oil stop flowing, until the day that Yahweh sends rain on the earth.'

UST

14 [I know that you will be able to do](#) that, because [Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship](#), says this, '[There will always be plenty](#) of flour and olive oil left in your containers, until the time when I send rain again and the crops grow again!'"

1 Kings 17:15

She and Elijah, along with her household, ate for many days

In the original language it says, "And she and he and her household ate for many days." It is unclear who "he" is. Possible meanings are 1) Elijah, the widow, and her son ate for many days or 2) the widow, her son, and everyone living in her house ate for many days or 3) Elijah, the widow, and everyone living in her house ate for many days.

along with her household

Possible meanings for "household" are 1) this refers only to the widow's son or 2) this refers to other people who live in her house but are not named in the story or 3) this refers to her son and others living in her house.

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- house

Translation Words - UST

- And she and her son
- So the woman

ULT

¹⁵ So she did as Elijah had told her. She and Elijah, along with her household, ate for many days.

UST

¹⁵ [So the woman](#) did exactly what Elijah told her to do. [And she and her son](#) and Elijah had enough food every day,

1 Kings 17:16

just as the word of Yahweh had said

Here “word” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “just as Yahweh had said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [That happened just like](#)
- [was...empty](#)

ULT

16 The jar of meal did not empty, neither did the jug of oil stop flowing, just as the word of Yahweh had said, as he had spoken by Elijah.

UST

16 because the flour in the jar was never finished, and the jug of oil was never [empty](#). [That happened just like Yahweh](#) had told Elijah that it would happen.

1 Kings 17:17

the woman's son, the woman who owned the house

"the son of the woman who owned the house"

there was no more breath left in him

This is a polite way of saying the boy died. Alternate translation: "he stopped breathing" or "he died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [to get worse](#)
- [Some time later, the woman's](#)

ULT

17 After these things the woman's son, the woman who owned the house, fell sick. His sickness was so severe that there was no more breath left in him.

UST

17 [Some time later, the woman's son](#) became sick. He continued [to get worse](#), and finally he died.

1 Kings 17:18

man of God

The phrase “man of God” is another title for a prophet.

of my sin

This means sins in general not a specific sin. Alternate translation: “of my sins” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- iniquity

Translation Words - UST

- by causing my son
- You are a prophet
- for my sins

ULT

18 So his mother said to Elijah, “What do you have against me, man of God? Have you come to me to remind me of my sin and to kill my son?”

UST

18 So the woman went to Elijah and said to him, “[You are a prophet](#); so why have you done this to me? Have you come here to punish me [for my sins by causing my son](#) to die?”

1 Kings 17:19

where he was staying

Here “he” refers to Elijah.

on his own bed

Here “his” refers to Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- she gave her son

ULT

19 Then Elijah replied to her, “Give me your son.” He took the boy from her arms and carried him up into the room where he was staying, and he laid the boy on his own bed.

UST

19 But Elijah replied, “Give your son to me.” So [she gave her son](#) to him, and he took the boy’s body from her and carried it up the steps to the room where he stayed. He laid the boy’s body on his bed.

1 Kings 17:20

have you also brought disaster on the widow with whom I am staying, by killing her son?

Possible meanings are 1) Elijah is truly asking a question. Alternate translation: “why would you cause the widow with whom I am staying to suffer even more by killing her son” or 2) Elijah uses a question to express how sad he is. Alternate translation: “surely, you would not cause the widow with whom I am staying to suffer even more by killing her son” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

have you also brought disaster on the widow

Causing the widow to suffer is spoken of as if “disaster” were an object that is placed on the widow. (See: [Metaphor](#))

also brought disaster

Here “also” means in addition to the disaster that the drought has caused.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [her son](#)
- [my God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [brought this tragedy](#)
- [to die](#)
- [Then Elijah cried out](#)

ULT

²⁰ He cried to Yahweh and said, “Yahweh my God, have you also brought disaster on the widow with whom I am staying, by killing her son?”

UST

²⁰ [Then Elijah cried out](#) to [Yahweh](#), “O [Yahweh my God](#), this widow has kindly allowed me to stay in her home. So why have you [brought this tragedy](#) to her and caused [her son to die](#)?”

1 Kings 17:21

stretched himself on the child

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “lay on top of the child” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- to become alive
- my God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- again
- the boy's body
- this boy
- and called out

ULT

21 Then Elijah stretched himself on the child three times; he cried out to Yahweh and said, “Yahweh my God, I beg you, please let this child's life return to him.”

UST

21 Then Elijah stretched himself on top of [the boy's body and called out](#) to [Yahweh](#) saying, “[Yahweh my God](#), please allow [this boy to become alive again!](#)” He did this three times.

1 Kings 17:22

Yahweh listened to the voice of Elijah

Here “voice” represents what Elijah prayed. Alternate translation: “Yahweh answered Elijah’s prayer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the life of the child returned to him, and he revived

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “the child came back to life” or “the child lived again” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- children, child, offspring
- voice
- return

Translation Words - UST

- to become alive
- and he caused the boy
- Yahweh
- and he caused the boy
- prayed
- again

ULT

²² Yahweh listened to the voice of Elijah; the life of the child returned to him, and he revived.

UST

²² [Yahweh](#) heard what Elijah [prayed](#), [and he caused the boy to become alive again](#).

1 Kings 17:23

his room

Here “his” refers to Elijah.

See, your son is alive

The word “See” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- children, child, offspring
- house

Translation Words - UST

- is alive
- your son
- the boy
- the steps and

ULT

²³ Elijah took the child and brought him out of his room down into the house; he handed the boy to his mother and said, “See, your son is alive.”

UST

²³ Elijah carried [the boy](#) down [the steps](#) [and](#) gave him to his mother. He said, “Look, [your son is alive!](#)”

1 Kings 17:24

the word of Yahweh in your mouth is true

“the message of Yahweh in your mouth is true.” The word “mouth” represents what Elijah said. Alternate translation: “the message that you spoke from Yahweh is true” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you are a prophet](#)
- [from Yahweh](#)
- [are truly](#)
- [I know](#)

ULT

²⁴ The woman said to Elijah, “Now I know that you are a man of God, and that the word of Yahweh in your mouth is true.”

UST

²⁴ The woman said to Elijah, “Now [I know](#) for certain that [you are a prophet](#) and that the words that you speak [are truly from Yahweh](#)!”

1 Kings 18

1 Kings 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Baal

God proved himself to all the people of Israel. Elijah went to meet Ahab. He told Ahab to bring the 450 prophets of Baal and all the people to Mount Carmel. Then he proposed an experiment, which was carried out. The prophets of Baal took one bull, killed them, cut them up, and placed them on wood on an altar without lighting the fire. The prophets of Baal danced and prayed to Baal all morning and half the afternoon. After they were exhausted, Elijah built his altar and drenched it with water. Then he prayed. God answered his prayer with fire that burned up the sacrifice, the altar and the water. Then Elijah told the people to seize the prophets of Baal and kill them. After that, Elijah prayed for rain, and it rained very hard. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Humor

Elijah insults the false god Baal. He states, “Perhaps he is thinking, or is relieving himself, or he is traveling on a journey, or perhaps he is sleeping and must be awakened.” Baal was too busy in the bathroom to answer the prophets. “Relieving himself” is a euphemism. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [Euphemism](#))

1 Kings 18:1

the word of Yahweh came

This idiom is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his word” (See: [Idiom](#))

send rain on the land

“cause rain to fall on the land”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [with](#)
- [Go and meet](#)

ULT

¹ So after many days the word of Yahweh came to Elijah, in the third year of the drought, saying, “Go, show yourself to Ahab and I will send rain on the land.”

UST

¹ For almost three years there was no rain in Samaria. [Then Yahweh](#) said this to Elijah: “[Go and meet with](#) King Ahab and tell him that I will soon send rain.”

1 Kings 18:2

now the famine was severe

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer tells background information about how the famine had affected Samaria. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [there was almost no food for anyone to eat](#)

ULT

² Elijah went to show himself to Ahab; now the famine was severe in Samaria.

UST

² So Elijah went to talk to Ahab. In Samaria [there was almost no food for anyone to eat](#).

1 Kings 18:3

Now Obadiah honored Yahweh

The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer tells about a new person in the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- He was in charge
- king's palace

ULT

³ Ahab called Obadiah, who was in charge of the palace. Now Obadiah honored Yahweh very much,

UST

³ There was a man there named Obadiah. [He was in charge](#) of the [king's palace](#). He greatly revered [Yahweh](#).

1 Kings 18:4

one hundred prophets and hid them by fifties

“100 prophets and hid them in groups of 50” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- prophets
- of them in two caves
- all Yahweh's
- food

ULT

⁴ for when Jezebel was killing the prophets of Yahweh, Obadiah took one hundred prophets and hid them by fifties in a cave and fed them with bread and water.

UST

⁴ One time when Queen Jezebel had tried to kill [all Yahweh's prophets](#), Obadiah hid a hundred [of them in two caves](#). He put fifty prophets in each cave, and he brought [food](#) and water to them.

1 Kings 18:5

save the horses and mules alive...not lose all the animals

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: "prevent the horses and mules from dying" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- cut off
- walk, walked
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die
- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die
- By this time, the famine had become
- give to some of my horses and mules...will not...die

ULT

⁵ Ahab said to Obadiah, "Go through the land to all the water springs and brooks. Perhaps we will find grass and save the horses and mules alive, so that we will not lose all the animals."

UST

⁵ [By this time, the famine had become](#) very severe in Samaria. So Ahab summoned Obadiah and said to him, "We must look near every spring and in every valley to see if we can find enough grass to [give to some of my horses and mules](#), so that they [will not](#) all [die](#)."

1 Kings 18:6

Ahab went one way by himself and Obadiah went another way

The phrase “by himself” emphasizes that Ahab and Obadiah went in separate directions, not necessarily that no one was with Ahab. Alternate translation: “Ahab lead a team in one direction and Obadiah lead a team in the other direction” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- and Ahab
- Obadiah went by himself
- the land

ULT

⁶ So they divided the land between them to pass through it and look for water. Ahab went one way by himself and Obadiah went another way.

UST

⁶ So they both started walking through [the land](#). [Obadiah went by himself](#) in one direction, [and Ahab](#) went in another direction by himself.

1 Kings 18:7

master Elijah

Here the word "master" is used as a term of respect.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- my master
- in front
- Obadiah recognized Elijah and bowed down

ULT

⁷ As Obadiah was on the road, Elijah unexpectedly met him. Obadiah recognized him and lay facedown on the ground. He said, "Is it you, my master Elijah?"

UST

⁷ While Obadiah was walking along, he saw Elijah coming toward him. [Obadiah recognized Elijah and bowed down in front](#) of him and said, "Is it really you, Elijah, [my master](#)?"

1 Kings 18:8

Go tell your master, 'Look, Elijah is here.'

Here the word "master" refers to Ahab.

Look, Elijah

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: Elijah"

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- go

ULT

⁸ Elijah answered him, "It is I. Go tell your master, 'Look, Elijah is here.'"

UST

⁸ Elijah replied, "Yes. Now [go](#) and tell Ahab your master that I am here."

1 Kings 18:9

How have I sinned...for him to kill me?

Obadiah asks this question to emphasize the danger to himself because of King Ahab's anger at Elijah. Alternate translation: "I have not wronged you...for him to kill me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

give your servant into the hand of Ahab

"Hand" is metonymy for power and control. Alternate translation: "deliver your servant to Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your servant

Obadiah refers to himself as Elijah's servant in order to honor Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have not harmed](#)
- [to Ahab](#)
- [He will kill me](#)
- [Sir](#), [I](#)

ULT

⁹ Obadiah replied, "How have I sinned, that you would give your servant into the hand of Ahab, for him to kill me?"

UST

⁹ Obadiah objected. He said, "[Sir](#), [I have not harmed](#) you at all. So why are you sending me back [to Ahab](#)? [He will kill me](#)!"

1 Kings 18:10

As Yahweh your God lives

This is an oath used to emphasize that what he is saying is true.

there is no nation or kingdom where my master has not sent men

Here “no nation or kingdom” is an exaggeration that means that men have traveled very far and gone to many places to find Elijah. This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “my master has sent men to nations and kingdoms near and far” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- nation
- nation
- seek, search, look for
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- Elijah is...here
- the king of
- your God
- Yahweh
- every kingdom to find
- that the king
- King Ahab has searched
- swear

ULT

10 As Yahweh your God lives, there is no nation or kingdom where my master has not sent men to find you. Whenever a nation or kingdom says, ‘Elijah is not here,’ Ahab makes them take an oath swearing that they could not find you.

UST

10 [Yahweh your God](#) knows that I am telling the truth when I solemnly declare that [King Ahab has searched](#) in [every kingdom to find](#) you. Each time that some king said to him, ‘[Elijah is](#) not [here](#),’ Ahab demanded that [the king of](#) that country solemnly [swear that the king](#) was telling the truth.

1 Kings 18:11

Yet now

This phrase is used to emphasize the danger in what Elijah is telling Obadiah to do.

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Go

ULT

11 Yet now you say, 'Go, tell your master that Elijah is here.'

UST

11 Now you say to me, '[Go](#) and tell your master that Elijah is here!'

1 Kings 18:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- revered
- Spirit
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- But as soon as I leave you
- But I
- do not

ULT

¹² As soon as I am gone from you, the Spirit of Yahweh will carry you some place I do not know. Then when I go and tell Ahab, and when he cannot find you, he will kill me. Yet I, your servant, have worshiped Yahweh from my youth.

UST

¹² But as soon as I leave you, the Spirit of Yahweh will carry you away, and I will not know where he will take you. So when I tell Ahab that you are here and he comes to me and he does not find you here, he will kill me! But I do not deserve to die because I have revered Yahweh since I was a boy.

1 Kings 18:13

Has it not been told to you...with bread and water?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Surely you have been told about what I did...with bread and water!" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

my master

Here the word "master" is a term of respect used to refer to Elijah.

one hundred of Yahweh's prophets by fifties

"100 of Yahweh's prophets in groups of 50" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophets](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Yahweh's](#)
- [and took food and water to them](#)

ULT

13 Has it not been told to you, my master, what I did when Jezebel killed the prophets of Yahweh, how I hid one hundred of Yahweh's prophets by fifties in a cave and fed them with bread and water?

UST

13 My master, have you not heard about what I did when Jezebel wanted to kill all of [Yahweh's prophets](#)? I hid a hundred of them in two caves [and took food and water to them](#).

1 Kings 18:14

Go and tell your master that Elijah is here

See how you translated these words in [1 Kings 18:11](#).

your master

Here "master" refers to King Ahab.

Translation Words - ULT

- [walk](#), [walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Go](#)

ULT

14 Now you say to me, 'Go and tell your master that Elijah is here,' so that he will kill me."

UST

14 Now, sir, you say, '[Go](#) and tell your master that Elijah is here.' But if I do that, and he comes and you are not here, he will kill me!"

1 Kings 18:15

As Yahweh of hosts lives

This is an oath to emphasize that what he will say is true.

before whom I stand

To “stand before” is an idiom for being in someone’s presence and ready to serve him. Alternate translation: “whom I serve” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the one whom I serve](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

15 Then Elijah responded, “As Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, I will surely show myself to Ahab today.”

UST

15 But Elijah replied, “[Yahweh](#), commander of the angel armies, [the one whom I serve](#), knows that I am telling the truth as I solemnly declare that I will go to meet with Ahab today.”

1 Kings 18:16

told him what Elijah said

“Obadiah told Ahab what Elijah had told him to say”

ULT

16 So Obadiah went to meet Ahab, and told him what Elijah said. Then the king went to meet Elijah.

UST

16 So Obadiah went to tell Ahab that Elijah had come. Ahab went to meet with him.

1 Kings 18:17

Is it you? You are the one who brings trouble to Israel!

Ahab asks the question for emphasis to be certain about Elijah's identity. Alternate translation: "So here you are. You are the troublemaker of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the one who causes trouble for](#)

ULT

17 When Ahab saw Elijah, he said to him, "Is it you? You are the one who brings trouble to Israel!"

UST

17 When he saw Elijah, he said to him, "Is that you, [the one who causes trouble for](#) the people of [Israel](#)?"

1 Kings 18:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- commands, and
- Yahweh's
- the people of Israel
- your family are the ones who have caused trouble
- who have caused trouble
- your family are the ones who have caused trouble

ULT

¹⁸ Elijah answered, "I have not brought trouble to Israel, but you and your father's family are the ones who have caused trouble by abandoning the commandments of Yahweh and by following the Baals.

UST

¹⁸ Elijah replied, "It is not I who have caused trouble for the people of Israel! You and your family are the ones who have caused trouble! You have refused to obey Yahweh's commands, and you have worshiped the idols of Baal instead.

1 Kings 18:19

all Israel

This is a generalization to refer to the leaders and people who represent the ten tribes of the northern kingdom. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

450 prophets

“four hundred and fifty prophets” (See: [Numbers](#))

four hundred prophets

“400 prophets” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- prophets who worship Baal and the
- the Israelite people
- always invites to eat with her

ULT

19 Now then, send word and gather to me all Israel at Mount Carmel, along with the 450 prophets of Baal and the four hundred prophets of Asherah who eat at Jezebel's table.”

UST

19 So now, command all [the Israelite people](#) to come to Mount Carmel, and be sure to bring all the 450 [prophets who worship Baal and the](#) four hundred prophets who worship the goddess Asherah, the ones to whom your wife Jezebel [always invites to eat with her.](#)”

1 Kings 18:20

sent word to...and gathered

“Word” represents Ahab’s message and is also a metonym for the messenger who delivered the message. This is a common statement used with the meaning understood. Alternate translation: “sent a message to...and gathered” or “sent a messenger to summon...to gather” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [other](#)
- [all his prophets and](#)
- [Israelite people](#)

ULT

²⁰ So Ahab sent word to all the people of Israel and gathered the prophets together at Mount Carmel.

UST

²⁰ So Ahab summoned [all his prophets](#) [and](#) all the [other Israelite people](#) to the top of Mount Carmel, and Elijah went up there too.

1 Kings 18:21

How long will you keep changing your mind?

Elijah asks this question to urge the people to make a decision. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have been indecisive for long enough." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

did not answer him a word

"did not say anything" or "were silent"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- walk, walked (2)

Translation Words - UST

- If Yahweh is God, then worship him
- then worship him
- If Yahweh is God, then worship him
- they were afraid of what Jezebel would
- But the people
- If Yahweh is God, then worship him
- Baal (2)

ULT

²¹ Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word.

UST

²¹ Then Elijah stood in front of them and said, "How long are you going to be undecided about who is truly God? [If Yahweh is God, then worship him.](#) If [Baal](#) is truly God, [then worship him!](#)" [But the people](#) said nothing in reply, because [they were afraid of what Jezebel would](#) do to them if they admitted that they worshiped Yahweh.

1 Kings 18:22

I, I alone, am left

The word “I” is repeated for emphasis.

450 men

“four hundred and fifty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- of Yahweh
- to them

ULT

²² Then Elijah said to the people, “I, I alone, am left as a prophet of Yahweh, but Baal’s prophets are 450 men.

UST

²² Then Elijah said [to them](#), “I am the only true [prophet of Yahweh](#) who is left, but Baal has 450 prophets.

1 Kings 18:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot (2)

Translation Words - UST

- and lay the pieces on the
- the
- light a fire under
- the wood (2)

ULT

²³ So let them give us two bulls. Let them choose one bull for themselves and cut it in pieces, and lay it on the wood, but put no fire under it. Then I will prepare the other bull and lay it on the wood, and put no fire under it.

UST

²³ Bring two bulls. The prophets of Baal may choose the one that they want. They must kill it and cut it into pieces and lay the pieces on the wood that is on the altar that they made. But they must not light a fire under the wood. I will kill the other bull and cut it in pieces and lay the pieces on the altar that I make.

1 Kings 18:24

call on the name of your god...call on the name of Yahweh

"Name" is metonymy for the reputation and honor of someone and "calling on" him represents an appeal. Alternate translation: "call to your god...call to Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the people answered and said, "This is good."

"all the people said, 'This is a good thing to do.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- God
- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- name
- name
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- they must call to
- their god
- The god who answers
- is the true God
- Then
- Yahweh
- will call to
- they must call to
- good
- the people
- by lighting a fire
- will call to

ULT

²⁴ Then you will call on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of Yahweh, and the God who answers by fire, then let him be God." So all the people answered and said, "This is good."

UST

²⁴ [Then they must call to their god](#), and I [will call to Yahweh](#). [The god who answers by lighting a fire](#) to the wood that is on that altar [is the true God!](#)" Then all [the people](#) thought that Elijah's suggestion was [good](#).

1 Kings 18:25

prepare it

“make it ready to be sacrificed”

you are many people

Here the word “you” is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your god](#)
- [and then call to](#)
- [light a fire under the wood](#)
- [and then call to](#)

ULT

²⁵ So Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, “Choose one bull for yourselves and prepare it first, for you are many people. Then call on the name of your god, but put no fire under the bull.”

UST

²⁵ Then Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, “You call to Baal first, because there are many of you. Choose one of the bulls and prepare it, [and then call to your god](#). But do not [light a fire under the wood!](#)”

1 Kings 18:26

They took the bull

"The prophets of Baal took the bull"

the bull that was given to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bull that someone gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

But there was no voice, nor anyone who answered

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that there was no one to respond to the prayers of the false prophets. The word "voice" represents someone speaking. Alternate translation: "But Baal did not say or do anything" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- and placed the pieces on the altar. Then
- Then
- they called out
- they called out

ULT

²⁶ They took the bull that was given to them and prepared it, and they called on the name of Baal from morning until noon, saying, "Baal, hear us." But there was no voice, nor anyone who answered. They danced around the altar they had made.

UST

²⁶ So they killed one of the bulls and cut it up [and placed the pieces on the altar](#). [Then they called out](#) to Baal all morning. They shouted, "Baal, answer us!" But no one answered. There was no reply at all. [Then](#) they danced wildly around the [altar](#) that they had made.

1 Kings 18:27

Perhaps he is thinking

"Maybe he is thinking" or "It could be that he is thinking"

relieving himself

This euphemism is a more pleasant way to express a harsh statement. Elijah uses understatement to insult Baal with sarcasm. Alternate translation: "in the bathroom" (See: [Euphemism](#))

must be awakened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you must awaken him" or "you must wake him up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- voice

Translation Words - UST

- it seems that you must shout louder
- a god
- it seems that you must shout louder

ULT

²⁷ At noon Elijah mocked them and said, "Shout out loudly! He is a god! Perhaps he is thinking, or is relieving himself, or he is traveling on a journey, or perhaps he is sleeping and must be awakened."

UST

²⁷ About noontime, Elijah started to make fun of them. He said, "Surely Baal is [a god](#), so [it seems that you must shout louder](#)! Perhaps he is thinking about something, or perhaps he has gone to the toilet. Or perhaps he is traveling somewhere, or perhaps he is asleep and you need to wake him up!"

1 Kings 18:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- voice
- sword, swordsmen
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- So they shouted louder
- flowed
- they slashed themselves with knives
- So they shouted louder

ULT

²⁸ So they shouted more loudly, and they cut themselves, as they usually did, with swords and spears, until their blood flowed out over themselves.

UST

²⁸ So they shouted louder. Then, doing one of the things that they frequently did when they worshiped Baal, they slashed themselves with knives and swords until a lot of blood flowed.

1 Kings 18:29

they were still raving

“they continued their wild behavior.” Prophets often acted in ways that seemed unusual or even crazy. In this case they were calling on Baal while dancing, shouting loudly, and cutting themselves with knives.

of offering of the evening sacrifice

“to offer the evening sacrifice”

but there was no voice or anyone to answer; there was no one who paid any attention to their pleadings

These phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that no one responded to the prayers of the false prophets. Alternate translation: “but Baal did not say or do anything or even pay attention” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

there was no voice or anyone to answer

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 18:26](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- They continued calling out to Baal...afternoon
- who paid attention
- all

ULT

²⁹ Midday passed, and they were still raving until the time of offering of the evening sacrifice, but there was no voice or anyone to answer; there was no one who paid any attention to their pleadings.

UST

²⁹ [They continued calling out to Baal all afternoon](#). But there was no voice that gave a reply, no answer, no god [who paid attention](#).

1 Kings 18:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- the altar of
- Yahweh
- the people
- around him

ULT

³⁰ Then Elijah said to all the people, "Come near to me," and all the people came near to him. Then he repaired the altar of Yahweh that was lying in ruin.

UST

³⁰ Then Elijah called to [the people](#) saying, "Come closer!" So they all crowded [around him](#). Then Elijah repaired [the altar of Yahweh](#) that had been ruined by the prophets of Baal.

1 Kings 18:31

twelve stones

"12 stones" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- each one to represent one of
- Israelite
- Israelite
- of Jacob
- tribes

ULT

31 Elijah took twelve stones, each stone representing one of the tribes of the sons of Jacob—it was Jacob to whom the word of Yahweh came, saying, "Israel will be your name."

UST

31 Then he took twelve large stones, each one to represent one of the Israelite tribes, whose ancestors were the twelve sons of Jacob.

1 Kings 18:32

in the name of Yahweh

"Name" here is a metonym for honor and reputation. Possible meanings are 1) "to honor Yahweh" or 2) "with the authority of Yahweh." (See: [Metonymy](#))

trench

a small waterway to hold water

two seahs of seeds

A seah is a unit of volume equal to about 7.7 liters. Alternate translation: "about 15 liters of seeds" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- name
- seed, semen
- house

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- he rebuilt Yahweh's
- he rebuilt Yahweh's
- liters of water
- a little ditch that was large enough

ULT

³² With the stones he built an altar in the name of Yahweh and he dug a trench around the altar large enough to contain two seahs of seeds.

UST

³² With these stones [he rebuilt Yahweh's altar](#). Then around the altar he dug [a little ditch that was large enough](#) to hold about fifteen [liters of water](#).

1 Kings 18:33

He arranged the wood for a fire

"On the altar" where he placed the wood is assumed in this sentence. Alternate translation: "He put the wood for a fire on the altar" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

four jars

"4 jars" (See: [Numbers](#))

jars

A jar is a container for water.

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He piled](#)

ULT

³³ He arranged the wood for a fire, cut the bull in pieces, and laid the pieces of the bull on the wood. He said, "Fill four jars with water and pour it on the burnt offering and on the wood."

UST

³³ [He piled](#) wood on top of the stones. He killed the bull and cut it in pieces. Then he laid the pieces on top of the wood. Then he said, "Fill four large jars with water, and pour the water on top of the pieces of meat and the wood." So they did that.

1 Kings 18:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁴ Then he said, "Do it a second time," and they did it a second time. Once more he said, "Do it a third time," and they did it a third time.

UST

³⁴ Then he said, "Do the same thing again!" So they did it again. Then he said, "Do it a third time!" So they did it again.

1 Kings 18:35

trench

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 18:30](#).

ULT

³⁵ The water ran around the altar and filled the trench.

UST

³⁵ As a result, the water flowed down below the altar and filled the ditches.

1 Kings 18:36

It happened

This phrase is used here to reference a significant and meaningful time of the day in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Yahweh, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel

Here "Israel" is referring to Jacob. God changed Jacob's name to Israel (Genesis 32:28), and God named the nation of Jacob's descendants "Israel."

let it be known this day

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "make these people know today" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- and Jacob worshiped
- you who are the God that
- the God whom
- Yahweh
- the...people should worship
- our ancestors Abraham
- to offer the evening sacrifices
- I am your servant
- prove today that

ULT

36 It happened at the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near and said, "Yahweh, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that you are God in Israel, and that I am your servant, and that I have done all these things at your word."

UST

36 When it was time [to offer the evening sacrifices](#), Elijah walked close to the altar and prayed. He said, "[Yahweh, you who are the God that our ancestors Abraham and Isaac and Jacob worshiped](#), [prove today that you are the God whom the Israelite people should worship](#), and prove that [I am your servant](#). Prove that I have done all these things because you told me to do them."

1 Kings 18:37

Hear me...hear me

This phrase is repeated to emphasize the appeal of Elijah to Yahweh.

turned their heart back again to yourself

The people's "heart" is a metonym for the affection and loyalty of the people. Alternate translation: "caused them to be loyal to you again" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- God
- you
- answer me
- again
- Yahweh
- you, Yahweh, are
- people
- will know that

ULT

37 Hear me, Yahweh, hear me, that these people may know that you, Yahweh, are God, and that you have turned their heart back again to yourself."

UST

37 [Yahweh](#), [answer me](#)! Answer me in order that these [people will know that you, Yahweh, are God](#) and that you have caused them to trust in [you again](#)!"

1 Kings 18:38

the fire of Yahweh fell

“the fire of Yahweh came down”

licked up

The fire is compared to a thirsty person drinking water. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- Immediately a fire from Yahweh
- burned up
- The fire
- flashed down from the sky

ULT

38 Then the fire of Yahweh fell and consumed the burnt offering, as well as the wood, the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.

UST

38 [Immediately a fire from Yahweh flashed down from the sky. The fire burned up](#) the pieces of meat, the wood, the stones, and the dirt that was around the altar. It even dried up all the water in the ditch!

1 Kings 18:39

Yahweh, he is God! Yahweh, he is God!

This phrase is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- is God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh is
- the people
- that
- prostrated

ULT

³⁹ When all the people saw this, they lay facedown on the ground and said, "Yahweh, he is God! Yahweh, he is God!"

UST

³⁹ When the people saw that, they prostrated themselves on the ground and shouted, "Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!"

1 Kings 18:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to escape](#)
- [all the prophets](#)
- [killed them all](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ So Elijah said to them, “Take the prophets of Baal. Do not let one of them escape.” So they took them, and Elijah brought the prophets of Baal down to the Kishon River and killed them there.

UST

⁴⁰ Then Elijah commanded them, “Seize [all the prophets](#) of Baal! Do not allow any of them [to escape](#)!” So the people seized all the prophets of Baal, and took them down the mountain to the river Kishon, and Elijah [killed them all](#) there.

1 Kings 18:41

there is the sound of much rain

"it sounds like it is going to rain a lot"

Translation Words - ULT

- devour

Translation Words - UST

- something to eat

ULT

⁴¹ Elijah said to Ahab, "Get up, eat and drink, for there is the sound of much rain."

UST

⁴¹ Then Elijah said to Ahab, "Go and get [something to eat](#) and drink. But do it quickly, because it is soon going to rain very hard!"

1 Kings 18:42

bowed himself down on the earth and put his face between his knees

This describes a posture used for praying.

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- head
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- to the top of Mount Carmel and prayed
- to the top of Mount Carmel and prayed
- to the top of Mount Carmel and prayed
- to the top of Mount Carmel and prayed

ULT

⁴² So Ahab went up to eat and to drink. Then Elijah went up to the top of Carmel, bowed himself down on the earth and put his face between his knees.

UST

⁴² So Ahab and his men left to prepare a big meal. But Elijah went back up [to the top of Mount Carmel and prayed](#).

1 Kings 18:43

seven times

The word “seven” can be rendered as the numeral “7.” Alternate translation: “7 times” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and came back](#)
- [his servant](#)

ULT

⁴³ He said to his servant, “Go up now, look toward the sea.” His servant went up and looked and said, “There is nothing.” So Elijah said, “Go again, seven times.”

UST

⁴³ Then he said to [his servant](#), “Go and look out toward the sea, to see if there are any rain clouds.” So his servant went and looked, [and came back](#) and said, “I do not see anything.” This happened six times.

1 Kings 18:44

as small as a man's hand

From a long distance, the cloud could be covered from sight by a man's hand.

Translation Words - ULT

- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Translation Words - UST

- get his chariot ready

ULT

44 At the seventh time the servant said, "Look, there is a cloud going up from the sea, as small as a man's hand." Elijah replied, "Go up and say to Ahab, 'Make ready your chariot and go down before the rain stops you.'"

UST

44 But when the servant went the seventh time, he came back and said, "I saw a very small cloud above the sea. As I extend my arm, the cloud is about the size of my hand." Then Elijah shouted to him, "Go and tell King Ahab to [get his chariot ready](#) and go home immediately! If he does not do that, the rain will stop him!"

1 Kings 18:45

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark where a new step in the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit](#), [spiritual](#)
- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a strong wind](#)
- [got into his chariot](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ It happened that in a little while the heavens grew black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain. Ahab rode and went to Jezreel,

UST

⁴⁵ Very soon the sky was full of black clouds. There was [a strong wind](#), and then it began to rain very hard. Ahab [got into his chariot](#) and started to return to the city of Jezreel.

1 Kings 18:46

the hand of Yahweh was on Elijah

Here the word "hand" is a metonym for strength. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave his power to Elijah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

tucked his robe in his belt

Elijah wrapped his long robe around his waist so that his legs would be free for running.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ but the hand of Yahweh was on Elijah. He tucked his robe in his belt and ran before Ahab to the entrance of Jezreel.

UST

⁴⁶ [Yahweh](#) gave extra strength to Elijah. He tucked his cloak into his belt in order to run fast, and he ran ahead of Ahab's chariot all the way to Jezreel.

1 Kings 19

1 Kings 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The queen was angry that Elijah had killed her prophets of Baal. She promised to kill Elijah. Elijah fled south into the desert south of Judah. He traveled on to Mount Horeb also known as Mount Sinai, the mountain of God. God asked him why he was there. He said he had come to Mount Horeb because Israel had deserted God, killed his prophets, and wanted to kill him. God sent him home to make Hazael the king of Aram, Jehu the king of Israel, and Elisha as the prophet in his place. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

1 Kings 19:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- all the prophets of Baal
- Elijah had killed
- all the prophets of Baal

ULT

¹ Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done and how he had killed all the prophets with the sword.

UST

¹ When Ahab got home, he told his wife Jezebel what Elijah had done. He told her that Elijah had killed all the prophets of Baal.

1 Kings 19:2

So may the gods do to me, and more also

This is a comparison used as an emphatic oath. "May the gods kill me and do even more bad things"

if I do not make your life like the life of one of those dead prophets

"if I do not kill you like you killed those prophets"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- just like you killed all
- I hope the gods will kill me
- message

ULT

² Then Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah, saying, "So may the gods do to me, and more also, if I do not make your life like the life of one of those dead prophets by tomorrow about this time."

UST

² So Jezebel sent this [message](#) to Elijah, "By this time tomorrow I will have killed you, [just like you killed all](#) those prophets of Baal. If I do not do that, [I hope the gods will kill me.](#)"

1 Kings 19:3

he arose

"he stood up"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Judah
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- he fled
- in Judah
- his servant

ULT

³ When Elijah heard that, he arose and fled for his life and came to Beersheba, which belongs to Judah, and left his servant there.

UST

³ When Elijah received her message, he was afraid. So taking his servant with him, [he fled](#) in order that he would not be killed. He went far south to Beersheba, [in Judah](#). He left [his servant](#) there.

1 Kings 19:4

he himself went a day's journey

The word "himself" is used to emphasize that he was alone. Alternate translation: "he walked by himself for a day" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

broom tree

A "broom tree" is a plant that grows in the desert. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

He requested for himself that he might die

"He prayed that he would die"

It is enough, now, Yahweh

"These troubles are too much for me, Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- desert, wilderness
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- to die
- because for me
- Yahweh
- better than being with my
- I cannot endure
- further south into the desert
- to die
- He walked

ULT

⁴ But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a broom tree. He requested for himself that he might die, and said, "It is enough, now, Yahweh; take away my life, for I am no better than my dead ancestors."

UST

⁴ Then he went by himself [further south into the desert](#). [He walked](#) all day. He sat down under a broom tree and prayed that Yahweh would allow him [to die](#). He said, "[Yahweh, I cannot endure](#) anymore. So allow me to die, [because for me](#) to live is no [better than being with my](#) ancestors who have died."

1 Kings 19:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- and eat some food
- an angel

ULT

⁵ So he lay down and slept under a broom tree. Suddenly an angel touched him and said to him, "Get up and eat."

UST

⁵ Then he lay down under the broom tree and slept. But while he was sleeping, [an angel](#) touched him and woke him up and said to him, "Get up [and eat some food!](#)"

1 Kings 19:6

bread that had been baked on coals

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “bread that someone had cooked on hot stones” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

jug of water

“a container of water”

Translation Words - ULT

- [devour](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ate](#)
- [again](#)

ULT

⁶ Elijah looked, and near his head was bread that had been baked on coals and a jug of water. So he ate and drank and then lay down again.

UST

⁶ Elijah looked around and saw some bread which had been baked on hot stones, and he also saw a jar of water. So he [ate](#) some bread and drank some water and lay down to sleep [again](#).

1 Kings 19:7

will be too much for you

"will be too difficult for you."

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- devour
- messenger
- return

Translation Words - UST

- who had been sent by Yahweh came
- and eat some more food
- Then the angel
- again

ULT

⁷ The angel of Yahweh came again a second time and touched him and said, "Get up and eat, because the journey will be too much for you."

UST

⁷ Then the angel who had been sent by Yahweh came again and touched him, and said, "Get up and eat some more food, because you need more strength to go on a long journey."

1 Kings 19:8

he traveled in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights

“that food gave him energy to travel for 40 days and 40 nights” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [devour](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [and ate](#)
- [strength](#)

ULT

⁸ So he arose and ate and drank, and he traveled in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights to Horeb, the mountain of God.

UST

⁸ So he got up [and ate](#) and drank some more; because he did that, he got enough [strength](#) to travel for forty days and nights to Mount Horeb, the mountain that was dedicated to [God](#).

1 Kings 19:9

to a cave there

Here the word “there” refers to Mount Horeb. A cave is an opening in a mountainside that leads to a natural room or rooms underground.

the word of Yahweh came to him and said to him, “What

The idiom “The word of Yahweh came to,” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to him. He said, ‘What’ or ‘Yahweh spoke this message to him: ‘What’” (See: [Idiom](#))

What are you doing here, Elijah?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke Elijah and to remind him of his duty. Alternate translation: “This is not where you should be, Elijah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁹ He went to a cave there and stayed in it. Then the word of Yahweh came to him and said to him, “What are you doing here, Elijah?”

UST

⁹ He went into a cave there and slept there that night. The next morning, [Yahweh](#) said to him, “Elijah, why are you here?”

1 Kings 19:10

I, only I, am left

Here the word "I" is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- altar
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- am running away from them
- They have torn down your altars
- But the Israelite people
- and they have killed all of your prophets
- Yahweh, commander of angel
- the agreement
- Yahweh, commander of angel
- But the Israelite people
- served you
- whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too
- whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too
- I am the only one

ULT

¹⁰ Elijah replied, "I have been very zealous for Yahweh, God of hosts, because the people of Israel have forsaken your covenant, destroyed your altars, and killed your prophets with the sword. Now I, only I, am left and they are also trying to take my life."

UST

¹⁰ Elijah replied, "I have zealously served you, Yahweh, commander of angel armies. But the Israelite people have rejected the agreement that they made with you. They have torn down your altars, and they have killed all of your prophets. I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too. So I am running away from them."

1 Kings 19:11

on the mountain before me

"Before me" here is an idiom for standing in front of someone.

Alternate translation: "on the mountain in my presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [windstorm](#)
- [was not in the](#)
- [me](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [But Yahweh](#)
- [was not in the](#)
- [Yahweh was](#)
- [Go out](#)

ULT

11 Yahweh replied, "Go out and stand on the mountain before me." Then Yahweh passed by, and a very strong wind struck the mountains and broke rocks into pieces before Yahweh, but Yahweh was not in the wind. Then after the wind, an earthquake came, but Yahweh was not in the earthquake.

UST

11 [Yahweh](#) said to him, "[Go out](#) and stand in front of [me](#) on this mountain while I pass by." So Elijah did that. While he was standing there, a strong [windstorm](#) struck the mountain. As a result, rocks were loosened from the mountainside. [But Yahweh was not in the](#) wind. Then there was an earthquake, but [Yahweh was](#) not in the earthquake.

1 Kings 19:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- but Yahweh
- a fire
- the fire
- Then there was a

ULT

¹² Then after the earthquake a fire came, but Yahweh was not in the fire. Then after the fire, a still small voice came.

UST

¹² Then there was [a fire](#), [but Yahweh](#) was not in [the fire](#). [Then there was a](#) sound like someone whispering quietly.

1 Kings 19:13

he wrapped his face in his cloak

“he covered his face with his cloak” A cloak is a long robe, a piece of clothing that covers the whole body.

Then a voice came to him

“Then he heard a voice”

What are you doing here, Elijah?

See how you translated this text in [1 Kings 19:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He went out](#)
- [face](#)

ULT

13 When Elijah heard the voice, he wrapped his face in his cloak, went out, and stood at the entrance of the cave. Then a voice came to him that said, “What are you doing here, Elijah?”

UST

13 When Elijah heard that, he wrapped his cloak around his [face](#). [He went out](#) of the cave and stood at its entrance. And he heard Yahweh speaking to him, saying again, “Elijah, why are you here?”

1 Kings 19:14

Elijah replied, "I have been very zealous...and they are also trying to take my life."

See how you translated this text in [1 Kings 19:10](#).

I, only I, am left

Here the word "I" is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- altar
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- am running away from them
- They have torn down your altars
- But the Israelite people
- prophets
- Yahweh, commander of angel
- the agreement
- Yahweh, commander of angel
- But the Israelite people
- served you
- killed
- killed
- I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too

ULT

¹⁴ Elijah replied, "I have been very zealous for Yahweh, God of hosts, because the people of Israel have forsaken your covenant, destroyed your altars, and killed your prophets with the sword. Now I, only I, am left and they are also trying to take my life."

UST

¹⁴ He replied again, "I have zealously served you, Yahweh, commander of angel armies. But the Israelite people have rejected the agreement that they made with you. They have torn down your altars, and they have killed all of your prophets. I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too. So I am running away from them."

1 Kings 19:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Then Yahweh
- Go
- to be the king
- Go

ULT

¹⁵ Then Yahweh said to him, “Go, return on your way to the wilderness of Damascus, and when you arrive you will anoint Hazael to be king over Aram,

UST

¹⁵ Then Yahweh told him, “Go back to the wilderness near Damascus. When you arrive there anoint with olive oil a man named Hazael, to appoint him to be the king of Aram.

1 Kings 19:16

prophet in your place

“prophet instead of you”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son of Shaphat, from
- Israel
- to be the king

ULT

16 and you will anoint Jehu son of Nimshi to be king over Israel, and you will anoint Elisha son of Shaphat of Abel Meholah to be prophet in your place.

UST

16 Then anoint Jehu [son](#) of Nimshi [to be the king](#) of [Israel](#), and also anoint Elisha [son of Shaphat, from](#) the city of Abel Meholah, to become my prophet after you are gone.

1 Kings 19:17

It will happen

This phrase is used to introduce what will happen when Elijah does what Yahweh has told him to do. "What will happen is"

whoever escapes from the sword of Hazael

"Sword" is metonymy for killing as in battle. Alternate translation: "whomever Hazael does not kill with the sword" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

17 It will happen that Jehu will kill whoever escapes from the sword of Hazael, and that Elisha will kill whoever escapes from the sword of Jehu.

UST

17 Hazael's army will kill many people, and those who escape from being killed by his army will be killed by Jehu's army, and those who escape from being killed by Jehu's army will be killed by Elisha.

1 Kings 19:18

I will leave for myself

Here the words “I” and “myself” refer to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “I will save from death” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

seven thousand people

“7,000 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

whose knees have not bent down to Baal, and whose mouths have not kissed him

“Bending down” and “kissing” are metonymies for actions people did to worship idols. They are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: “who have not bowed down and kissed Baal” or “who have not worshiped Baal” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [have never bowed to worship](#)

ULT

18 But I will leave for myself seven thousand people in Israel, whose knees have not bent down to Baal, and whose mouths have not kissed him.”

UST

18 But you need to know that there are still seven thousand people in [Israel](#) who [have never bowed to worship](#) Baal or kissed his idol.”

1 Kings 19:19

Shaphat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve yoke of oxen

“12 yoke of oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

he himself was plowing with the twelfth yoke

The word “himself” indicates that Elisha was plowing with the last yoke, while other men were plowing with the other eleven yokes. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha as he was plowing a field with
- in the same field. Elijah went to Elisha

ULT

19 So Elijah left from there and found Elisha son of Shaphat, who was plowing with twelve yoke of oxen before him, and he himself was plowing with the twelfth yoke. Elijah walked over to Elisha and draped his cloak on him.

UST

19 So Elijah went to Aram and found [Elisha as he was plowing a field with](#) a team of oxen. There were eleven other men who were in front of him, plowing with teams of oxen [in the same field](#). [Elijah went to Elisha](#), and took off his own coat and put it on Elisha, to show Elisha that he wanted Elisha to take his place as a prophet. Then he started to walk away.

1 Kings 19:20

he said, "Please

The word "he" refers to Elisha.

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha left](#)
- [parents](#)
- [Very well](#), [go home](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then Elisha left the oxen and ran after Elijah; he said, "Please let me kiss my father and my mother, and then I will follow you." Then Elijah said to him, "Go back, but think about what I have done to you."

UST

²⁰ [Elisha left](#) the oxen standing there and ran after Elijah, and said to him, "I will go with you, but first let me kiss my [parents](#) goodbye." Elijah replied, "[Very well, go home](#). But do not forget why I have given my cloak to you!"

1 Kings 19:21

he gave it to the people

Elisha gave the cooked meat to the people of his city. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- devour
- return

Translation Words - UST

- and they
- all ate some
- Elisha went back

ULT

²¹ So Elisha returned from Elijah and took the yoke of oxen, killed the animals, and cooked the meat with the wood from the ox yoke. Then he gave it to the people and they ate. Then he arose, went after Elijah and served him.

UST

²¹ So [Elisha went back](#) home. He killed his oxen and cut them in pieces and used the wood from the plow to build a fire to roast the meat. He distributed the meat to the other people in his town, [and they all ate some](#). Then he went with Elijah and became his helper.

1 Kings 20

1 Kings 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is a story of two battles between Aram and Israel.

Special concepts in this chapter

Battle

God had chosen to defeat Ben Hadad, king of Aram. So when he attacked Samaria with a huge army, the tiny army of Israel defeated him. The people of Aram said that Yahweh was the god of the hills, but they could defeat Israel on the plains. So they came again but Israel defeated them again. Then Ben Hadad offered a peace plan and Ahab accepted. But God had wanted him to kill Ben Hadad and was angry at Ahab for making peace with him.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

There were so few Israel soldiers that they were “like two little flocks of goats.” (See: [Simile](#))

1 Kings 20:1

Ben Hadad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

thirty-two lesser kings

"32 lesser kings" (See: [Numbers](#))

lesser kings

"kings ruling smaller groups of people"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They marched to the city of Samaria](#)
- [his army](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [and he](#)
- [and horses and](#)

ULT

¹ Ben Hadad king of Aram gathered all his army together. There were thirty-two lesser kings with him, and horses and chariots. He went up, besieged Samaria and fought against it.

UST

¹ Ben Hadad, [the king of](#) Aram, gathered all [his army](#), [and he](#) brought thirty-two lesser kings to join him with their armies [and horses and](#) chariots. [They marched to the city of Samaria](#), the capital of Israel, and surrounded it and prepared to attack it.

1 Kings 20:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- messenger
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- to King
- messengers
- This is what King Ben Hadad says

ULT

² He sent messengers into the city to Ahab king of Israel, and said to him, "Ben Hadad says this:

UST

² Ben Hadad sent [messengers](#) into the city [to King](#) Ahab, and they said this to him: "[This is what King Ben Hadad says](#):

1 Kings 20:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- silver
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- and strongest children
- good-looking
- all your silver
- and gold, your

ULT

³ 'Your silver and your gold are mine. Also your wives and children, the best ones, are now mine.'"

UST

³ 'You must give to me all your silver and gold, your good-looking wives and strongest children.'"

1 Kings 20:4

It is as you say

This is an idiom to express agreement. Alternate translation: "I agree with you" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- You can have me and everything
- Israel
- The king of
- Tell this to King Ben Hadad

ULT

⁴ The king of Israel answered and said, "It is as you say, my master, king. I and all that I have are yours."

UST

⁴ [The king of Israel](#) replied to them, "[Tell this to King Ben Hadad](#), 'I agree to do what you requested. [You can have me and everything](#) that I own.'"

1 Kings 20:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- silver
- gold, golden
- return

Translation Words - UST

- children
- silver
- and gold
- them back with another message

ULT

⁵ The messengers came again and said, "Ben Hadad says this, 'I sent word to you saying that you must give me your silver, your gold, your wives, and your children.

UST

⁵ The messengers told that to Ben Hadad, and he sent [them back with another message](#): "I sent a message to you saying that you must give me all your [silver and gold](#) and your wives and your [children](#).

1 Kings 20:6

tomorrow about this time

"tomorrow at the same time of day that it is now"

whatever pleases their eyes

Here the "eyes" represent the whole person and emphasize them looking at something and desiring it. Alternate translation: "whatever pleases them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and to bring to me](#)
- [I will](#)
- [of your officials](#)
- [your palace and](#)
- [the houses](#)

ULT

⁶ But I will send my servants to you tomorrow about this time, and they will search your house and your servants' houses. They will seize with their own hands and take away whatever pleases their eyes."

UST

⁶ But in addition to that, about this time tomorrow, [I will](#) send some of my officials to search [your palace and the houses of your officials, and to bring to me](#) everything that they see is valuable."

1 Kings 20:7

of the land

"The land" represents all the people living there. Alternate translation: "of the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

take note and see

"Take note" here is an idiom to observe carefully. Alternate translation: "pay close attention to" (See: [Idiom](#))

I have not refused him

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "I have agreed to his demands" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- silver
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- and my children
- of Israel, and
- trouble
- my silver
- the leaders
- King Ahab
- much
- the leaders
- summoned
- cause

ULT

⁷ Then the king of Israel called all the elders of the land together and said, "Please take note and see how this man seeks trouble. He has sent word to me in order to take my wives, children, and silver and gold, and I have not refused him."

UST

⁷ [King Ahab summoned](#) all [the leaders of Israel](#), and said to them, "You can see for yourselves that this man is trying to [cause much trouble](#). He sent me a message insisting that I must give him my wives [and my children](#), [my silver](#) and my gold, and I agreed to do that."

1 Kings 20:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- the other people
- The leaders and

ULT

⁸ All the elders and all the people said to Ahab, "Do not listen to him or consent to his demands."

UST

⁸ [The leaders and](#) all [the other people](#) said to him, "Do not pay any attention to him! Do not do what he is requesting!"

1 Kings 20:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Tell the king that
- So the messengers...they returned
- but I

ULT

⁹ So Ahab said to the messengers of Ben Hadad, "Tell my master the king, 'I agree to everything that you sent your servant to do the first time, but I cannot accept this second demand.'" So the messengers left and took this response to Ben Hadad.

UST

⁹ So Ahab said to Ben Hadad's messengers, "[Tell the king that](#) I agree to give him the things that he first requested, [but I](#) do not agree to allow his officials to take anything that they want from my palace and from the houses of my officials." [So the messengers](#) reported that to King Ben Hadad, and [they returned](#) with another message from Ben Hadad.

1 Kings 20:10

May the gods do so to me and more also

This is an oath with great emphasis. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 19:2](#).

if even the ashes of Samaria will be enough for all the people who follow me to have a handful each

Ben Hadad is threatening that his army will totally destroy everything in Samaria. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gods will strike me dead](#)
- [for each of my soldiers](#)
- [your city](#)

ULT

10 Then Ben Hadad sent his reply to Ahab, and said, "May the gods do so to me and more also, if even the ashes of Samaria will be enough for all the people who follow me to have a handful each."

UST

10 In that message he said, "We will destroy [your city](#) completely, with the result that there will not be enough ashes left [for each of my soldiers](#) to have one handful! I hope that the [gods will strike me dead](#) if we do not do that!"

1 Kings 20:11

Tell Ben Hadad, 'No one who is just putting on his armor...as if he were taking it off.'

This is an expression to give advice. "Putting on armor" is metonymy for getting prepared for battle. "Tell Ben Hadad, 'Do not boast as if you have already won a battle that you have not yet fought.'" (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- King Ahab
- before he fights it
- King Ben Hadad

ULT

11 The king of Israel answered and said, "Tell Ben Hadad, 'No one who is just putting on his armor, should boast as if he were taking it off.'"

UST

11 [King Ahab](#) replied to the messengers, "Tell [King Ben Hadad](#) this: No one wins a battle [before he fights it](#), so do not boast before you should."

1 Kings 20:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- did that
- his men
- his men

ULT

¹² Ben Hadad heard this message as he was drinking, he and the kings under him who were in their tents. Ben Hadad commanded his men, "Line yourselves up in position for battle." So they prepared themselves in position of battle to attack the city.

UST

¹² Ben Hadad heard that message while he and the other rulers were drinking wine in their temporary shelters. He told [his men](#) to prepare to attack the city. So [his men](#) [did that](#).

1 Kings 20:13

Then behold

The word “behold” alerts us to the sudden appearance of a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Have you seen this great army?

Yahweh asks this question to emphasize the size and strength of Ben Hadad’s army. Alternate translation: “Look at this great army.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Look, I will place it into your hand today

The word “Look” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

place it into your hand

Here the word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “give you victory over that army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- At that moment, a prophet...to
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- King
- who has done it
- King
- know that it is I

ULT

13 Then behold, a prophet came to Ahab king of Israel and said, “Yahweh says, ‘Have you seen this great army? Look, I will place it into your hand today, and you will know that I am Yahweh.’”

UST

13 [At that moment, a prophet](#) came [to King](#) Ahab and said to him, “This is what [Yahweh](#) says: ‘Do not be at all afraid of the large enemy army that you see! I will enable your army to defeat them today, and you will [know that it is I, Yahweh, who has done it.](#)’”

1 Kings 20:14

By whom?

Ahab leaves out the words 'will you do this' Alternate translation: "By whom will you do this?" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- province, provincial
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- The young soldiers whom
- the district
- lead
- governors command will do it

ULT

14 Ahab replied, "By whom?" Yahweh replied and said, "By the young officers who serve the governors of the districts." Then Ahab said, "Who will begin the battle?" Yahweh answered, "You."

UST

14 Ahab asked, "What group of our army will defeat them?" The prophet replied, "[The young soldiers whom the district governors command will do it.](#)" The king asked, "Who should [lead](#) the attack?" The prophet replied, "You should!"

1 Kings 20:15

Ahab mustered the young officers

"Ahab assembled the young officers"

all the soldiers, all the army of Israel

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

seven thousand

"7,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- province, provincial
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Then he also summoned all
- the Israelite army
- So Ahab gathered the young soldiers
- the Israelite army
- There were...of those men
- the district governors
- So Ahab gathered the young soldiers
- So Ahab gathered the young soldiers

ULT

¹⁵ Then Ahab mustered the young officers who served the governors of the districts. They numbered 232. After them he mustered all the soldiers, all the army of Israel; seven thousand in number.

UST

¹⁵ [So Ahab gathered the young soldiers](#) who were commanded by [the district governors](#). [There were 232 of those men](#). [Then he also summoned all the Israelite army](#). There were only seven thousand soldiers.

1 Kings 20:16

They went out

Here the word "They" refers to the Israelite army.

thirty-two lesser kings

See how you translated this in [1 Kings 20:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [drunk](#), [drunkard](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [started to attack](#)
- [getting drunk](#)
- [and the other rulers](#)
- [and the other rulers](#)

ULT

¹⁶ They went out at noon. Ben Hadad had been drinking himself drunk in his tent, he and the thirty-two lesser kings who were supporting him.

UST

¹⁶ They [started to attack](#) at noon, while Ben Hadad [and the other rulers](#) were [getting drunk](#) in their temporary shelters.

1 Kings 20:17

Ben Hadad was informed by scouts that he had sent out

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “Scouts that Ben Hadad had sent out informed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

scouts

A “scout” is a soldier sent to gather information about the enemy.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [province](#), [provincial](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The young soldiers advanced](#)
- [The young soldiers advanced](#)
- [The young soldiers advanced](#)
- [The young soldiers advanced](#)
- [Samaria](#)

ULT

¹⁷ The young officers who served the governors of the districts went forward first. Then Ben Hadad was informed by scouts that he had sent out, “Men are coming out from Samaria.”

UST

¹⁷ [The young soldiers advanced](#) first. Some scouts who had been sent out by Ben Hadad reported to him, “There are men coming out of [Samaria](#)”!

1 Kings 20:18

Ben Hadad said

It is understood that Ben Hadad is speaking to his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Ben Hadad said to his soldiers" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Whether they have...take them

Here "they" and "them" refer to the Israelite army.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish (2)

Translation Words - UST

- It does not matter...they are coming
- but do not kill them
- or to request for peace
- to fight against us (2)

ULT

18 Ben Hadad said, "Whether they have come out for peace or war, take them alive."

UST

18 He said, "[It does not matter](#) whether [they are coming to fight against us or to request for peace](#). Capture them, [but do not kill them!](#)"

1 Kings 20:19

So the young officers...the army followed

"The young Israelite officers...the Israelite army followed"

Translation Words - ULT

- province, provincial
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- and the other soldiers
- and the other soldiers
- The young Israelite soldiers
- went out

ULT

19 So the young officers who served the governors of the districts went out of the city and the army followed them.

UST

19 [The young Israelite soldiers went out](#) of the city to attack the Aramean army, [and the other soldiers](#) in the Israelite army followed them.

1 Kings 20:20

Israel pursued them

“Israel” is synecdoche for all the soldiers of the nation of Israel.
 Alternate translation: “the men of the army of Israel pursued them”
 (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [horseman](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the Israelite soldiers](#)
- [riding horses](#)
- [But King](#)
- [riding horses](#)

ULT

20 Each man killed his opponent. The Arameans fled and Israel pursued them. Ben Hadad the king of Aram escaped on a horse along with some horsemen.

UST

20 Each Israelite soldier killed an Aramean soldier. The rest of the Aramean army then ran away, [and the Israelite soldiers](#) pursued them. [But King](#) Ben Hadad escaped riding his horse, along with some other men [riding horses](#).

1 Kings 20:21

the king of Israel went out and attacked

“The king” is synecdoche for the king and all the soldiers serving under him. Alternate translation: “The king of Israel and his soldiers went out and attacked” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- went out of the city
- Israel
- Then the king of
- all the other Aramean horses

ULT

21 Then the king of Israel went out and attacked the horses and chariots, and killed the Arameans in a great slaughter.

UST

21 [Then the king of Israel went out of the city](#); he and his soldiers captured [all the other Aramean horses](#) and chariots, and also killed a large number of Aramean soldiers.

1 Kings 20:22

strengthen yourself

"Yourself" represents by metonymy the army of the king. Alternate translation: "strengthen your forces" (See: [Metonymy](#))

understand and plan

These two words mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: "determine" (See: [Doublet](#))

at the return of the year

Possible meanings are 1) "in the springtime of next year" or 2) "at this time next year."

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [King Ahab](#) and
- [and think carefully](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [his](#)
- [Go back and prepare your soldiers](#)
- [about what will be necessary](#)

ULT

²² So the prophet came to the king of Israel and said to him, "Go, strengthen yourself, and understand and plan what you are doing, because at the return of the year the king of Aram will come up against you again."

UST

²² Then that same [prophet](#) went to [King Ahab and](#) said to him, "[Go back and prepare your soldiers, and think carefully about what will be necessary](#) for you to do, because [the king of](#) Aram will attack with [his](#) army again in the springtime of next year."

1 Kings 20:23

let us fight...we will be stronger

The words “us” and “we” refer to the servants, the king, and the army all together. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- strength, strengthen, strong
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- The gods that the Israelites worship are
- gods who live in the hills
- able to defeat
- if we fight against them
- After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad's officials
- After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad's officials

ULT

²³ The servants of the king of Aram said to him, “Their god is a god of the hills. That is why they were stronger than we were. But now let us fight against them in the plain, and surely we will be stronger than they are.”

UST

²³ [After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad's officials](#) said to him, “[The gods that the Israelites worship are gods who live in the hills](#). Samaria is built on a hill, and that is why their soldiers were [able to defeat](#) us. But [if we fight against them](#) in the plains, we certainly will be able to defeat them.”

1 Kings 20:24

Remove all the kings from their positions of authority

"You must remove the thirty-two kings who are leading your troops"

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- king, kingdom, kingship
- govern, government, governor, proconsul

Translation Words - UST

- with army commanders
- kings who are leading your troops
- with army commanders

ULT

²⁴ So you must do this: Remove all the kings from their positions of authority and replace them with military commanders.

UST

²⁴ So, this is what you should do: You must remove the thirty-two [kings who are leading your troops](#) and replace them [with army commanders](#).

1 Kings 20:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- strength, strengthen, strong
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- the army that was defeated
- defeat them
- many horses and

ULT

²⁵ Raise up an army like the army you lost—horse for horse and chariot for chariot—so we can fight them in the plain. Then surely we will be stronger than they are.” So Ben Hadad listened to their advice and did what they advised.

UST

²⁵ Then gather an army like [the army that was defeated](#). Gather an army that has as [many horses and](#) chariots as the first army had. Then we will fight the Israelites in the plains, and we will surely [defeat them](#).” Ben Hadad agreed with them, and he did what they suggested.

1 Kings 20:26

Aphek

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to fight against Israel

“Israel” represents the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “to fight against the army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gathered his soldiers](#)
- [the Israelite army](#)

ULT

²⁶ After the beginning of the new year, Ben Hadad mustered the Arameans and went up to Aphek to fight against Israel.

UST

²⁶ In the spring of the following year, he [gathered his soldiers](#) and marched with them to the city of Aphek east of the Sea of Galilee, to fight against [the Israelite army](#).

1 Kings 20:27

The people of Israel were mustered and supplied

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Israelite army also gathered together, and the commanders gave the arms that they needed for the battle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

like two little flocks of goats

This simile compares the Israelite army to two little flocks of goats. Alternate translation: "The Israelite army appeared to be small and weak like two flocks of goats" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- was also gathered together
- The Israelite army
- Their army was very small
- The Israelite army
- Their army was very small
- all over the countryside

ULT

²⁷ The people of Israel were mustered and supplied to fight against them. The people of Israel camped before them like two little flocks of goats, but the Arameans filled the countryside.

UST

²⁷ [The Israelite army was also gathered together](#), and they were given the things that they needed for the battle. Then they marched out and formed two groups facing the Aramean army. [Their army was very small](#). They resembled two small flocks of goats, whereas the Aramean army was very large and spread [all over the countryside](#).

1 Kings 20:28

a man of God

This is another title for a prophet. Alternate translation: “a prophet”

place this great army into your hand

Here the word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “give you victory over this great army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- A prophet
- that I am a god
- god
- and you will
- is what Yahweh
- I, Yahweh, have
- to King Ahab
- done it
- to King Ahab
- know that

ULT

28 Then a man of God came near and spoke to the king of Israel and said, “Yahweh says: ‘Because the Arameans have said that Yahweh is a god of the hills, but he is not a god of the valleys, I will place this great army into your hand, and you will know that I am Yahweh.’”

UST

28 [A prophet](#) came [to King Ahab](#) and said to him, “This [is what Yahweh](#) says: ‘The Arameans say [that I am a god](#) who lives in the hills, and that I am not a [god](#) who lives in the valleys. So I will show that they are wrong by enabling your men to defeat this huge army in the valley, [and you will know that I, Yahweh, have done it.](#)’”

1 Kings 20:29

seven days

"7 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

100000

"one hundred thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

footmen

A "footman" is a soldier who marches on foot.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [each other](#)
- [they...The Israelite army](#)

ULT

29 So the armies camped opposite each other for seven days. Then on the seventh day the battle started. The people of Israel killed 100,000 Aramean footmen in one day.

UST

29 The two armies stayed in their tents for seven days, in groups that faced [each other](#). Then, on the seventh day, [they](#) started fighting. [The Israelite army](#) killed 100,000 Aramean soldiers.

1 Kings 20:30

The rest fled to Aphek

The expression “the rest” assumes the words “of the Aramean soldiers.” Alternate translation: “The rest of the Aramean soldiers” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Aphek

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-seven thousand

“27,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [collapsed and killed](#)

ULT

³⁰ The rest fled to Aphek, into the city, and the wall fell on twenty-seven thousand men who were left. Ben Hadad fled and went into the city, into an inner room.

UST

³⁰ The other Aramean soldiers ran away into Aphek. Then the wall of the city [collapsed and killed](#) twenty-seven thousand more Aramean soldiers. Ben Hadad also escaped into the city and hid in the back room of a house.

1 Kings 20:31

Look now

This emphasizes what they will say. Alternate translation: “Listen” or “Pay attention to what we are about to tell you”

put sackcloth around our waists and ropes around our heads

This was a sign of surrender.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites (2)
- sackcloth
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- alive
- allow
- allow us to go to
- act mercifully
- Israelites...wearing...around our...and...on our
- the king of Israel (2)
- course sacks
- heads
- His
- his slaves...will...you to remain
- the king of Israel
- officials went
- Israelites...wearing...around our...and...on our

ULT

31 Ben Hadad's servants said to him, “Look now, we have heard that the kings of the house of Israel are merciful kings. Please let us put sackcloth around our waists and ropes around our heads, and go out to the king of Israel. Perhaps he will spare your life.”

UST

31 [His officials went](#) to him and said, “We have heard a report that the [Israelites act mercifully](#). So [allow us to go to the king of Israel](#), [wearing course sacks around our](#) waists and ropes [on our heads](#) to indicate that we will be [his slaves](#). Perhaps if we do that, he will [allow you to remain alive](#).”

1 Kings 20:32

Is he still alive?

Ahab asks this question to express surprise. Alternate translation: "I am surprised that he is still alive!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

He is my brother

"My brother" here is a metaphor for somebody who is a good friend. Alternate translation: "He is like a brother to me" or "He is like family" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- sackcloth
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- alive
- Please do not kill me
- to me
- He is like a brother
- Israel
- coarse sacks
- on their heads, and
- the king of
- The king permitted them to do that, so they

ULT

³² So they put sackcloth on their waists and ropes around their heads and then went to the king of Israel and said, "Your servant Ben Hadad said, 'Please let me live.'" Ahab said, "Is he still alive? He is my brother."

UST

³² [The king permitted them to do that, so they](#) wrapped [coarse sacks](#) around their waists and put ropes [on their heads, and](#) they went to [the king of Israel](#) and said to him, "Ben Hadad, who greatly respects you, says, '[Please do not kill me.](#)'" Ahab replied, "Is he still alive? [He is like a brother to me!](#)"

1 Kings 20:33

Now the men

The word “Now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

for any sign from Ahab

“Sign” is metonymy for an action that gives a meaning. Alternate translation: “for any action from Ahab that would show them that Ahab wanted to be merciful” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So they went](#)
- [brother,” they were](#)

ULT

33 Now the men were listening for any sign from Ahab, so they quickly answered him, “Yes, your brother Ben Hadad is alive.” Then Ahab said, “Go and bring him.” Then Ben Hadad came to him, and Ahab had him come up into his chariot.

UST

33 Ben Hadad’s officials were trying to find out if Ahab would act mercifully, and when Ahab said “[brother,” they were](#) optimistic. So they replied, “Yes, he is like your brother!” Ahab said, “Go and bring him to me.” [So they went](#) and brought Ben Hadad to him. When Ben Hadad arrived, Ahab told him to get in the chariot and sit with him.

1 Kings 20:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahab replied, "Because you agree to do](#)
- [And I will allow](#)
- [my father's](#)
- [your father](#)
- [capital, just as my father](#)
- [and allowed him](#)

ULT

³⁴ Ben Hadad said to Ahab, "I will restore to you the cities that my father took from your father, and you may make markets for yourself in Damascus, as my father did in Samaria." Ahab replied, "I will let you go with this covenant." So Ahab made a covenant with him and then let him go.

UST

³⁴ Ben Hadad said to him, "I will give back to you the towns that [my father's](#) army took from [your father](#). [And I will allow](#) you to set up market areas for your merchants in Damascus my [capital, just as my father](#) did in Samaria your capital." [Ahab replied, "Because you agree to do](#) that, I will not execute you." So Ahab made an agreement with Ben Hadad, [and allowed him](#) to go home.

1 Kings 20:35

one of the sons of the prophets

“a member of the group of prophets”

the word of Yahweh

“the message of Yahweh” or “Yahweh’s message”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- a member
- of prophets
- Then Yahweh

ULT

³⁵ A certain man, one of the sons of the prophets, said to one of his fellow prophets by the word of Yahweh, “Please hit me.” But the man refused to hit him.

UST

³⁵ [Then Yahweh](#) spoke to [a member](#) of an association [of prophets](#) and told him to request a fellow prophet to strike him. But that man refused to do it.

1 Kings 20:36

you have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh

“The voice” is metonymy for what Yahweh commanded. Alternate translation: “you have not obeyed Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [voice](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Because you...Yahweh](#)
- [Because you...Yahweh](#)
- [Because you...Yahweh](#)

ULT

³⁶ Then the prophet said to his fellow prophet, “Because you have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh, as soon as you leave me, a lion will kill you.” As soon as that man had left him, a lion came upon him and killed him.

UST

³⁶ So the prophet said to him, “[Because you](#) refused to obey what [Yahweh](#) told you to do, a lion will kill you as soon as you leave me.” And as soon as he left that prophet, a lion suddenly met him and killed him.

1 Kings 20:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁷ Then the prophet found another man and said, "Please hit me." So the man hit him and wounded him.

UST

³⁷ Then the prophet found another prophet, and said to him, "Strike me!" So that man hit him very hard and injured him.

1 Kings 20:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Then the prophet
- his

ULT

³⁸ Then the prophet left and waited for the king by the road; he had disguised himself with a bandage over his eyes.

UST

³⁸ Then the prophet put a large bandage over his face so that no one would recognize him. Then he went and stood alongside the road, waiting for the king to come by.

1 Kings 20:39

Your servant went out

The prophet refers to himself in the third person as a sign of respect to the king.

into the heat of the battle

"Heat of the battle" here is an idiom to express the most intense and fierce fighting. Alternate translation: "to where the battle was most intense" (See: [Idiom](#))

your life will be given for his life

"you will die in his place"

a talent of silver

A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: "33 kilograms of silver" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- silver
- cry, cry out, outcry
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- you will be executed
- the
- Guard
- Guard
- of silver
- cried out
- Your Majesty, after
- When the king
- do not pay that
- I
- he escapes

ULT

³⁹ As the king passed by, the prophet cried out to the king and said, "Your servant went out into the heat of the battle, and a soldier stopped and brought a man to me and said, 'Watch this man. If by any means he goes missing, your life will be given for his life, or you must pay a talent of silver.'

UST

³⁹ [When the king](#) passed by, [the](#) prophet [cried out](#) to him, saying "[Your Majesty, after I](#) was wounded while I was fighting in a battle, a soldier brought to me one of our enemies who he had captured, and said to me, '[Guard](#) this man! If [he escapes](#), you must pay me thirty-three kilograms [of silver](#); if you [do not pay that, you will be executed](#)!'

1 Kings 20:40

going here and there

This is an idiom to represent being very busy and preoccupied.
Alternate translation: “doing other things” or “doing this and that”
(See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [You yourself have said that...be](#)
- [The king of](#)
- [But while I](#)

ULT

40 But because your servant was busy going here and there, the man escaped.” Then the king of Israel said to him, “This is what your punishment will be—you yourself have decided it.”

UST

40 [But while I](#) was busy doing other things, the man escaped!” [The king of Israel](#) said to him, “That is your problem! [You yourself have said that](#) you deserve to [be](#) punished.”

1 Kings 20:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [and the king](#)

ULT

⁴¹ Then the prophet quickly removed the bandage from his eyes, and the king of Israel recognized that he was one of the prophets.

UST

⁴¹ The prophet immediately took off the bandage, [and the king](#) of [Israel](#) recognized that he was one of the prophets.

1 Kings 20:42

let go from your hand

Here the word "hand" is metonymy for power. Alternate translation: "released" or "spared the life of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your life will take the place of his life, and your people for his people

"you will die in his place, and your people will die in the place of his people"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- to escape
- The
- I commanded you to be sure to execute him
- is what Yahweh
- You have allowed
- his army
- And your army will be destroyed

ULT

⁴² The prophet said to the king, "Yahweh says, 'Because you have let go from your hand the man whom I had sentenced to death, your life will take the place of his life, and your people for his people.'"

UST

⁴² [The](#) prophet said to him, "This [is what Yahweh](#) says: '[You have allowed](#) that man Ben Hadad to escape after [I commanded you to be sure to execute him](#)! Since you did not do that, you will be killed instead. [And your army will be destroyed](#) because you allowed some of [his army to escape](#)!'"

1 Kings 20:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- Samaria
- The king
- home to

ULT

⁴³ So the king of Israel went to his house resentful and angry, and arrived in Samaria.

UST

⁴³ [The king](#) went back [home to Samaria](#), very angry and depressed.

1 Kings 21

1 Kings 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

God hates oppression but is forgiving to people who are sorry for their sins. Ahab wanted Naboth's vineyard to make into a garden for his palace, but Naboth refused to sell it. So the queen, Ahab's wife, told the civic leaders of Naboth's town to falsely accuse him and execute him. Elijah told Ahab that he would be killed in Naboth's vineyard and all his family destroyed. Ahab repented and showed he was very sorry for what he did, so God said it would not happen to Ahab himself but to his son. (See: [oppress](#), [oppressed](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [forgive](#), [forgiven](#), [forgiveness](#), [pardon](#), [pardoned](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

1 Kings 21:1

Now some time later

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story and indicates that these events happened later, not that Naboth owned the vineyard later. If your language has a way marking the beginning of a new part of a story, you could consider using it here. Alternate translation: "Now this is what happened later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Naboth the Jezreelite

This is the name of a man from Jezreel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

king of Samaria

"Samaria" was the capital city of the kingdom of Israel and here represents the entire nation. Alternate translation: "king of Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [vineyard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a palace](#)
- [King](#)
- [King](#)
- [a vineyard](#)

ULT

¹ Now some time later, Naboth the Jezreelite had a vineyard in Jezreel, near the palace of Ahab, king of Samaria.

UST

¹ [King](#) Ahab had [a palace](#) in the city of Jezreel. Near the palace was [a vineyard](#) owned by a man named Naboth.

1 Kings 21:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best (2)
- silver
- vineyard
- vineyard
- house

Translation Words - UST

- your vineyard
- somewhere else, or if you prefer (2)
- I will pay you for
- vineyard
- your vineyard
- to my palace. I would like to buy it

ULT

² Ahab spoke to Naboth, saying, "Give me your vineyard, so I can have it as a vegetable garden, because it is near my house. In exchange, I will give you a better vineyard, or, if you prefer, I will pay you its value in money."

UST

² One day, Ahab went to Naboth and said to him, "Your vineyard is close to my palace. I would like to buy it, so that I can plant some vegetables there. I will give you in exchange a better vineyard somewhere else, or if you prefer, I will pay you for your vineyard."

1 Kings 21:3

May Yahweh forbid that I should give

This phrase is an oath that emphasizes that what follows will not happen. Alternate translation: "Because Yahweh forbids it, I will never give" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

give the inheritance of my ancestors to you

The land that his ancestors received as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance. Alternate translation: "give to you the land that my ancestors received as an inheritance" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestors...I want to keep it...you
- ancestors...I want to keep it...you

ULT

³ Naboth replied to Ahab, "May Yahweh forbid that I should give the inheritance of my ancestors to you."

UST

³ But Naboth replied, "That land belonged to my [ancestors](#), so [I want to keep it](#). I hope that Yahweh will never allow me to give that land to [you](#)!"

1 Kings 21:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- devour
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the wall, and he refused
- the wall, and he refused
- eat anything
- eat anything
- He turned his face toward
- He went home and

ULT

⁴ So Ahab went into his palace resentful and angry because of the answer Naboth the Jezreelite gave him when he said, "I will not give you the inheritance of my ancestors." He lay down on his bed, turned away his face, and refused to eat any food.

UST

⁴ So Ahab became very sullen and angry because of what Naboth had said. He went home and lay down on his bed. He turned his face toward the wall, and he refused to eat anything.

1 Kings 21:5

Why is your heart so sad

Here “heart” refers to the entire person and his emotions. Alternate translation: “Why are you so sad” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- bread
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- and asked him...Why are
- Why are you refusing to eat anything
- Why are you refusing to eat anything

ULT

⁵ Jezebel his wife came to him and said to him, “Why is your heart so sad, so that you eat no food?”

UST

⁵ His wife Jezebel came in [and asked him](#), “[Why are](#) you so depressed? [Why are you refusing to eat anything?](#)”

1 Kings 21:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- vineyard
- vineyard
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- buy
- his vineyard
- vineyard
- you another

ULT

⁶ He replied to her, "I spoke to Naboth the Jezreelite and said to him, 'Give me your vineyard for money, or if it pleases you, I will give you another vineyard to be yours.' Then he answered me, 'I will not give you my vineyard.'"

UST

⁶ Ahab replied, "I talked to Naboth, that man from Jezreel. I told him that I wanted [his vineyard](#). I said, 'I will [buy](#) it from you, or I will give [you another vineyard](#) for it.' But he refused to let me have it."

1 Kings 21:7

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?

Jezebel uses this negative rhetorical question to rebuke Ahab. It can be translated as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "You still rule the kingdom of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

let your heart be happy

Here "heart" refers to the entire person and his emotions. Alternate translation: "be happy" or "cheer up" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- bread
- devour
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- want
- of Israel
- some food and
- Get up
- vineyard for you

ULT

⁷ So Jezebel his wife replied to him, "Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? Get up and eat; let your heart be happy. I will obtain for you the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite."

UST

⁷ His wife replied, "You are the king [of Israel](#), so you can get whatever you [want!](#) [Get up](#), and eat [some food and](#) do not worry about what Naboth said. I will get Naboth's [vineyard for you](#)."

1 Kings 21:8

wrote letters in Ahab's name

Possible meanings are 1) she wrote Ahab's name on the letters. Alternate translation: "wrote letters and signed them with Ahab's name" or 2) the word "name" is a metonym for authority. Alternate translation: "wrote letters on behalf of Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the wealthy who sat with him

The word "wealthy" refers to wealthy people. Alternate translation: "the wealthy people who sat with Naboth" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [elder](#), [older](#), [old](#)
- [seal](#), [sealed](#), [unsealed](#)
- [noble](#), [nobleman](#), [royal official](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name on them](#)
- [older leaders](#)
- [and she signed](#)
- [his official](#)

ULT

⁸ So Jezebel wrote letters in Ahab's name, sealed them with his seal, and sent them to the elders and to the wealthy who sat with him in meetings, and who lived near Naboth.

UST

⁸ Then Jezebel wrote some letters, [and she signed](#) Ahab's [name on them](#). She used [his official](#) seal to seal them. Then she sent them to the [older leaders](#) and other important men who lived near Naboth and who decided public matters with him.

1 Kings 21:9

seat Naboth above the people

Having Naboth sit in a place of honor is spoken of as if it were having him sit above the rest of the people who were present. Alternate translation: "have Naboth sit in a place of honor among the people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- people, people group,
- head

Translation Words - UST

- and fast
- all the people will gather together
- Give to

ULT

⁹ She wrote in the letters, saying, "Proclaim a fast and seat Naboth above the people.

UST

⁹ This is what she wrote in the letters: "Proclaim a day when [all the people will gather together and fast](#). Give to Naboth an important place to sit among them.

1 Kings 21:10

let them testify against him

"have them accuse him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tell these men to...that](#)
- [Then take Naboth out of the city](#)
- [men](#)
- [God](#)
- [testify](#)
- [and kill him](#)

ULT

10 Also place two dishonest men with him and let them testify against him, saying, "You cursed God and the king." Then take him out and stone him to death.

UST

10 Then find two [men](#) who always cause trouble. Give them places to sit opposite him. [Tell these men to testify that](#) they heard Naboth say things that criticized [God](#) and the king. [Then take Naboth out of the city and kill him](#) by throwing stones at him."

1 Kings 21:11

the wealthy who lived in Naboth's city

The word “wealthy” refers to wealthy people. Alternate translation: “the wealthy people who lived in Naboth's city” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

as was written in the letters

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as she had written in the letters” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [elder](#), [older](#), [old](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [leaders](#)

ULT

11 So the men of his city, the elders and the wealthy who lived in Naboth's city, did as Jezebel had described to them, as was written in the letters that she had sent to them.

UST

11 The [leaders](#) received the letters and did what Jezebel had written in the letters for them to do.

1 Kings 21:12

seated Naboth above the people

Having Naboth sit in a place of honor is spoken of as if it were having him sit above the rest of the people who were present. See how you translated this idea in [1 Kings 21:9](#). Alternate translation: “had Naboth sit in a place of honor among the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- people, people group,
- head
- fast, fasting

Translation Words - UST

- They declared
- in front of the people
- And they gave Naboth
- a day on which the people would all go without food

ULT

¹² They proclaimed a fast and seated Naboth above the people.

UST

¹² [They declared a day on which the people would all go without food. And they gave Naboth](#) a seat in a place where honored people sat, [in front of the people](#).

1 Kings 21:13

sat before Naboth

“sat in front of Naboth”

they carried him out

Here the word “they” refers to the people of the city.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seized Naboth](#)
- [They took him](#)
- [men](#)
- [God](#)
- [stated that they had heard](#)
- [the people](#)
- [and killed him](#)

ULT

13 The two dishonest men came in and sat before Naboth; they testified against Naboth in the presence of the people, saying, “Naboth cursed both God and the king.” Then they carried him out of the city and stoned him to death.

UST

13 Two [men](#) who always caused trouble sat opposite Naboth. While everyone was listening, they [stated that they had heard](#) Naboth say things that criticized [God](#) and the king. So [the people seized Naboth. They took him](#) outside the city [and killed him](#) by throwing stones at him.

1 Kings 21:14

Naboth has been stoned and is dead

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We have stoned Naboth and he is dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [executed](#)

ULT

14 Then the elders sent word to Jezebel, saying, "Naboth has been stoned and is dead."

UST

14 Then those leaders sent a message to Jezebel, saying, "We have [executed](#) Naboth."

1 Kings 21:15

that Naboth had been stoned and was dead

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the people had stoned Naboth and he was dead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Naboth is not alive, but dead.

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize Jezebel's statement. Alternate translation: “Naboth is dead!” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- silver
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- that
- sell...you
- had been killed
- of...vineyard

ULT

15 So when Jezebel heard that Naboth had been stoned and was dead, she said to Ahab, “Get up and take possession of the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, which he refused to give you for money, because Naboth is not alive, but dead.”

UST

15 When Jezebel found out that Naboth [had been killed](#), she told Ahab, “Naboth is dead. Now you can go and take possession of the [vineyard that](#) he refused to [sell](#) to [you](#).”

1 Kings 21:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- owned it
- to the vineyard

ULT

¹⁶ When Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, he rose up to go down to the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite and take possession of it.

UST

¹⁶ When Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, he got up and went [to the vineyard](#) to claim that he now [owned it](#).

1 Kings 21:17

the word of Yahweh came

This idiom means that Yahweh spoke or has sent a message. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh](#)

ULT

17 Then the word of Yahweh came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

UST

17 [Then Yahweh](#) spoke to Elijah the prophet. He said,

1 Kings 21:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- owns
- the king of

ULT

18 "Get up and go meet Ahab king of Israel, who lives in Samaria. He is in the vineyard of Naboth, where he has gone to take possession of it.

UST

18 "Go to Samaria and talk to Ahab, [the king of Israel](#). He is in the vineyard of a man named Naboth. He has gone there to claim that he now [owns](#) it.

1 Kings 21:19

Have you killed and also taken possession?

Yahweh asks this question to scold Ahab. Alternate translation: "You have killed Naboth and stolen his vineyard!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

your blood, yes, your blood

This is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)

Translation Words - UST

- your blood, too
- and licked up...blood
- I, Yahweh
- you (2)

ULT

19 You must speak to him and say that Yahweh says, 'Have you killed and also taken possession?' Then you will tell him that Yahweh says, 'In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth, the dogs will lick your blood, yes, your blood.'"

UST

19 Tell Ahab that this is what [I, Yahweh](#), say to him, 'You have murdered Naboth and taken his land. So I am telling [you](#) this. In the same place where Naboth died and dogs came [and licked up](#) Naboth's [blood](#), you will die and the dogs will lick up [your blood, too!](#)'"

1 Kings 21:20

Have you found me, my enemy?

Ahab uses this question to express anger toward Elijah. That Elijah “found” Ahab likely refers to Elijah discovering Ahab’s actions, not to finding his physical location. Alternate translation: “You have found me, my enemy!” or “You have discovered what I have done, my enemy!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you have sold yourself to do what is evil

A person being committed to doing what is evil is spoken of as if that person had sold himself to evil. Alternate translation: “you have dedicated yourself to doing what is evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

what is evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase, “in the sight of” refers to someone’s opinion. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:6](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [are wrong](#)
- [You, my enemy](#)

ULT

²⁰ Ahab said to Elijah, “Have you found me, my enemy?” Elijah answered, “I have found you, because you have sold yourself to do what is evil in the sight of Yahweh.

UST

²⁰ So when Elijah met with Ahab, Ahab said to him, “[You, my enemy](#), have found me!” Elijah answered, “Yes, I have found you. You have never stopped doing the things [that Yahweh](#) says [are wrong](#).

1 Kings 21:21

See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

completely consume and cut off from you every male child and slave and free man in Israel

Yahweh speaks of destroying Ahab's family and preventing him from having any decedents as if he were consuming these people like a fire would consume them, and cutting them off as one would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “destroy every one of your male children in Israel, whether slave or free” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- cut off

Translation Words - UST

- in your household
- this is what Yahweh says to you
- I will soon get rid of you

ULT

21 Yahweh says this to you: ‘See, I will bring disaster on you and will completely consume and cut off from you every male child and slave and free man in Israel.

UST

21 So [this is what Yahweh says to you](#), ‘I [will soon get rid of you](#). I will kill you, and I will also kill every male [in your household](#), including those who are slaves and those who are not slaves.

1 Kings 21:22

I will make your family like the family of Jeroboam... and like the family of Baasha

Yahweh will destroy Ahab's family like he destroyed the families of Jeroboam and Baasha.

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- to sin
- King Jeroboam
- and like the family of King
- Israelite people
- Your family will all be killed
- just like the family of

ULT

²² I will make your family like the family of Jeroboam son of Nebat, and like the family of Baasha son of Ahijah, because you have provoked me to anger and have led Israel to sin.'

UST

²² Your family will all be killed, just like the family of King Jeroboam and like the family of King Baasha were killed. I will get rid of you because you have caused me to become very angry, and you have also induced the Israelite people to sin.'

1 Kings 21:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [eat](#)

ULT

²³ Yahweh has also spoken concerning Jezebel, saying, 'The dogs will eat Jezebel beside the wall of Jezreel.'

UST

²³ [Yahweh](#) has also told me that your wife Jezebel will be killed, and dogs in Jezreel will [eat](#) her body.

1 Kings 21:24

Anyone who belongs to Ahab

"Anyone who belongs to Ahab's family"

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- devour
- devour (2)
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- by vultures
- They will be eaten
- will be eaten (2)
- who die

ULT

²⁴ Anyone who belongs to Ahab and dies in the city, the dogs will eat; and the birds of the sky will eat anyone who dies in the field."

UST

²⁴ The dead bodies of the members of your family who die in this city will not be buried. They will be eaten by dogs, and the bodies of those who die in the fields will be eaten by vultures."

1 Kings 21:25

who sold himself to do what was evil

A person being committed to doing what is evil is spoken of as if that person had sold himself to evil. See how you translated this idea in [1 Kings 21:20](#). Alternate translation: “who dedicated himself to doing what was evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase, “in the sight of” refers to someone’s opinion. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 11:6](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- that Yahweh
- were evil

ULT

²⁵ There was no one like Ahab, who sold himself to do what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, whom Jezebel his wife incited to sin.

UST

²⁵ There was no man who gave himself as completely to do things [that Yahweh](#) said [were evil](#) like Ahab did. But his wife Jezebel urged him to do many of those things.

1 Kings 21:26

removed before the people of Israel

Here “Israel” refers to all twelve tribes of Israel and not just to the northern kingdom. Alternate translation: “removed from the presence of the people of Israel” or “drove out of the land before the people of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Amorite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to...Israelites](#)
- [And that is why Yahweh](#)
- [to...Israelites](#)
- [Amor people group](#)

ULT

²⁶ Ahab did disgusting deeds for the idols he followed, just as all that the Amorites had done, those whom Yahweh had removed before the people of Israel.

UST

²⁶ The most disgusting thing that Ahab did was to worship idols, just like the [Amor people group](#) had done. [And that is why Yahweh](#) took their land from them and gave it to the [Israelites](#).

1 Kings 21:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [fast, fasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He put on](#)
- [wore](#)
- [those rough clothes made from sacks](#)
- [rough clothes that were made from sacks, and he](#)
- [refused to eat anything](#)

ULT

²⁷ When Ahab heard these words, he tore his clothes and put sackcloth on his body and fasted, and lay in sackcloth and became very sad.

UST

²⁷ After Elijah finished talking to Ahab, Ahab tore his clothes to show that he was sorry for all the sins that he had committed. [He put on rough clothes that were made from sacks, and he refused to eat anything.](#) He even [wore those rough clothes made from sacks](#) when he slept, to show that he was sorry.

1 Kings 21:28

the word of Yahweh came

This idiom means that Yahweh spoke or has sent a message. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 6:11](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁸ Then the word of Yahweh came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

UST

²⁸ [Then Yahweh](#) said this to Elijah,

1 Kings 21:29

Do you see how Ahab humbles himself before me?

God uses this question to show Elijah that Ahab's sorrow is genuine. Alternate translation: "I have seen how Ahab humbles himself before me." or "Look at how Ahab humbles himself before me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

in his days...in his son's day

"during his lifetime...during his son's lifetime"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- house

Translation Words - UST

- after his son becomes king
- the evil things
- Then those things will
- his family

ULT

29 "Do you see how Ahab humbles himself before me? Because he humbles himself before me, I will not bring the coming disaster in his days; it is in his son's day that I will bring disaster on his family."

UST

29 "I have seen that Ahab is now very sorry for all [the evil things](#) that he has done. So the things that I promised to do to his family will not happen while he is still alive. I will cause them to happen [after his son becomes king. Then those things will](#) happen to [his family](#)."

1 Kings 22

1 Kings 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Ahab and a continuation of the story of Elijah as he had predicted Ahab's death and the dogs licking his blood.

Special concepts in this chapter

When God has decided a person will die, then they cannot avoid death. Ahab persuaded Jehoshaphat, king of Judah to help him in a battle against the army of Aram. Ahab's false prophets all told him to go because he would be successful. But a randomly shot arrow hit him and he bled to death. They washed his chariot at the pool and the dogs licked up his blood, just as Elijah had said they would. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"However, the shrines were still not taken away. The people were still sacrificing and burning incense at the shrines."

At the shrines, the people worshiped Yahweh. But later, during Hezekiah's reign it was decided that all sacrifices must be made only at the temple. (See: [temple](#))

1 Kings 22:1

Three years

“3 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)

ULT

¹ Three years passed without war between Aram and Israel.

UST

¹ For almost three years there was no war between Aram and [Israel](#).

1 Kings 22:2

it came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab, who ruled Israel
- who ruled Judah
- Jehoshaphat
- Then King
- King

ULT

² Then it came about that in the third year, Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went down to the king of Israel.

UST

² Then King Jehoshaphat, who ruled Judah, went to visit King Ahab, who ruled Israel.

1 Kings 22:3

Do you know that Ramoth Gilead is ours, but that we are doing nothing to take it from the hand of the king of Aram?

Ahab asks this question to emphasize that they should have already recaptured Ramoth Gilead. Alternate translation: "Ramoth Gilead is ours, but we have done nothing yet to take it from the hand of the king of Aram." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to take it from the hand of the king of Aram

Here the word "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "to take it from the control of the king of Aram" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahab](#)
- [still occupying](#)
- [his](#)
- [the Arameans are](#)
- [officials](#)

ULT

³ Now the king of Israel had said to his servants, "Do you know that Ramoth Gilead is ours, but that we are doing nothing to take it from the hand of the king of Aram?"

UST

³ While they were talking, [Ahab](#) said to [his officials](#), "Do you realize that [the Arameans are still occupying](#) our city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead? And we are doing nothing to retake that city!"

1 Kings 22:4

I am like you, my people are like your people, and my horses are like your horses

Jehoshaphat tells Ahab that he, his people, and his horses belong to Ahab, meaning that Ahab can command them as he pleases.

Alternate translation: "I, my soldiers, and my horses are yours to use in any way you want" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- into battle, also
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat replied, "Certainly! I will do...you
- the people
- the people
- into battle, also

ULT

⁴ So he said to Jehoshaphat, "Will you go with me to war at Ramoth Gilead?" Jehoshaphat replied to the king of Israel, "I am like you, my people are like your people, and my horses are like your horses."

UST

⁴ Then he turned toward [Jehoshaphat](#) and asked, "Will your army join my army to fight against [the people](#) of Ramoth and retake that city?" [Jehoshaphat replied, "Certainly! I will do](#) whatever [you](#) want, and you may command my troops. You may take my horses [into battle, also.](#)"

1 Kings 22:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- But we should ask Yahweh first
- what he wants us to do
- he
- what he wants us to do
- find out

ULT

⁵ Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "Please seek direction from the word of Yahweh for what you should do first."

UST

⁵ Then [he](#) added, "[But we should ask Yahweh first](#), to [find out what he wants us to do](#)."

1 Kings 22:6

four hundred men

"400 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

for the Lord will give it into the hand of the king

Here the word "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "for the Lord will allow the king to capture Ramoth Gilead" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- because God...your army
- prophets together
- Ahab
- will enable
- his
- and he

ULT

⁶ Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, four hundred men, and said to them, "Should I go to Ramoth Gilead to battle, or should I not?" They said, "Attack, for the Lord will give it into the hand of the king."

UST

⁶ So [Ahab](#) summoned about four hundred of [his prophets together](#), and [he](#) asked them, "Should my army go to fight the people in Ramoth and retake that city, or not?" They answered, "Yes, go and attack them, [because God will enable your army](#) to defeat them."

1 Kings 22:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- of Yahweh
- But Jehoshaphat

ULT

⁷ But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here yet another prophet of Yahweh from whom we might seek advice?"

UST

⁷ But Jehoshaphat asked, "Is there no other prophet of Yahweh here whom we can ask?"

1 Kings 22:8

May the king not say that

Jehoshaphat refers to Ahab in the third person to show respect for him. Alternate translation: "You should not say that" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- son
- me
- Israel
- good will happen
- bad
- when he prophesies
- Jehoshaphat replied
- The king of
- King Ahab
- we can ask

ULT

⁸ The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "There is still one man by whom we may seek advice from Yahweh to help, Micaiah son of Imlah, but I hate him because he does not prophesy anything good about me, but only hardships." But Jehoshaphat said, "May the king not say that."

UST

⁸ [The king of Israel](#) replied, "There is one other man [we can ask](#). His name is Micaiah [son](#) of Imlah. But I hate him, because [when he prophesies](#) he never says that anything [good will happen](#) to [me](#). He always predicts that [bad](#) things will happen to me." [Jehoshaphat replied](#), "[King Ahab](#), you should not say that!"

1 Kings 22:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- Micaiah
- Israel
- So the king of
- summon

ULT

⁹ Then the king of Israel called an officer and commanded, "Bring Micaiah son of Imlah, right away."

UST

⁹ So the king of Israel told one of his officers to summon Micaiah immediately.

1 Kings 22:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Samaria, Samaritan
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- throne, enthroned
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- prophets were speaking messages
- of Israel
- Judah
- of Samaria
- at a gate in the city wall
- on thrones
- The king

ULT

¹⁰ Now Ahab the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting each on a throne, clothed in their robes, in an open place at the entrance of the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were prophesying before them.

UST

¹⁰ [The king of Israel](#) and the king of [Judah](#) were both wearing their royal robes and sitting [on thrones at a gate in the city wall of Samaria](#). Many [prophets were speaking messages](#) to them.

1 Kings 22:11

made himself horns of iron

"made iron horns for himself"

With these you will push the Arameans until they are consumed

The prophet's actions are a symbolic metaphor that illustrates the way that Ahab would defeat the Arameans. Ahab's army will win with great strength, as a bull attacks another animal. (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Metaphor](#))

until they are consumed

Destroying an enemy army is spoken of as if it were consuming them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until you consume them" or "until you destroy them" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [consume](#), [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [is what Yahweh](#)
- [completely destroy them](#)

ULT

11 Zedekiah son of Kenaanah made himself horns of iron and said, "Yahweh says this: 'With these you will push the Arameans until they are consumed.'"

UST

11 One of them, whose name was Zedekiah [son](#) of Kenaanah, had made from iron something that resembled horns of a bull. Then he proclaimed to Ahab, "This [is what Yahweh](#) says, 'With horns like these your army will keep attacking the Arameans as a bull attacks another animal, until you [completely destroy them](#)!'"

1 Kings 22:12

given it into the hand of the king

Here the word "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "allowed the king to capture it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- hand
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- other prophets of Ahab
- because Yahweh
- will enable
- you will be successful
- you

ULT

¹² Then all the prophets prophesied the same, saying, "Attack Ramoth Gilead and win, for Yahweh has given it into the hand of the king."

UST

¹² All the [other prophets of Ahab](#) agreed. They said, "Yes! If you go up to attack Ramoth in Gilead, [you will be successful, because Yahweh will enable you](#) to defeat them!"

1 Kings 22:13

Now look

“Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth

The prophets all saying the same thing is spoken of as if they all spoke with the same mouth. Alternate translation: “the prophets all declare the same good things to the king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

let your word be like one of them

Here the word “them” refers to “the words of the prophets.”
Alternate translation: “let what you say agree with what they have said” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- All the other prophets are predicting that
- the king's army will defeat the Arameans
- you agree with them and
- the king's army will defeat the Arameans
- Meanwhile

ULT

¹³ The messenger who went to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying, “Now look, the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth. Please let your word be like one of them and say good things.”

UST

¹³ [Meanwhile](#), the messenger who went to summon Micaiah said to him, “Listen to me! [All the other prophets are predicting that the king's army will defeat the Arameans](#). So be sure that [you agree with them and](#) say what will be favorable.”

1 Kings 22:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- As surely as Yahweh lives
- As surely as Yahweh lives
- Yahweh tells

ULT

¹⁴ Micaiah replied, "As Yahweh lives, it is what Yahweh says to me that I will say."

UST

¹⁴ But Micaiah replied, "[As surely as Yahweh lives](#), I will tell Ahab only what [Yahweh tells](#) me to say."

1 Kings 22:15

should we go

The word “we” refers to Ahab, Jehoshaphat, and their armies but not to Micaiah. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

will give it into the hand of the king

Here the word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “will allow the king to capture it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- will enable
- your army
- Ahab
- Ahab
- you

ULT

15 When he came to the king, the king said to him, “Micaiah, should we go to Ramoth Gilead for battle, or not?” Micaiah answered him, “Attack and win. Yahweh will give it into the hand of the king.”

UST

15 When Micaiah came to [Ahab](#), [Ahab](#) asked him, “Micaiah, should we go to fight against the people of Ramoth, or not?” Micaiah replied, “Of course [you](#) should go! [Yahweh will enable your army](#) to defeat them!”

1 Kings 22:16

How many times must I require...in the name of Yahweh?

Ahab asks this question out of frustration to rebuke Micaiah.
Alternate translation: "Many times I have required...in the name of Yahweh." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

in the name of Yahweh

Here the word "name" refers to authority. Alternate translation: "as the representative of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- name
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- has revealed
- realized
- so he
- have told you many...that you must always tell only the truth

ULT

¹⁶ Then the king said to him, "How many times must I require you to swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of Yahweh?"

UST

¹⁶ But King Ahab [realized](#) that Micaiah was being sarcastic, [so he](#) said to Micaiah, "I [have told you many](#) times [that you must always tell only the truth](#) when you say what [Yahweh has revealed](#) to you!"

1 Kings 22:17

I saw all Israel

Here “all Israel” refers to the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “I saw the entire army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

like sheep who have no shepherd

The people of the army are compared to sheep that have no one to lead them because their shepherd, the king, has died. (See: [Simile](#))

These have no shepherd

Yahweh speaks of the king as if he were a shepherd. Just like a shepherd is responsible to care for and protect his sheep, the king is responsible to lead and protect his people. Alternate translation: “These people no longer have a leader” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST

- master
- And Yahweh
- So tell them all to go home
- the troops of Israel
- So tell them all to go home

ULT

17 So Micaiah said, “I saw all Israel scattered to the mountains, like sheep who have no shepherd, and Yahweh said, ‘These have no shepherd. Let every man return to his house in peace.’”

UST

17 So Micaiah said to him, “The truth is that in a vision I saw all [the troops of Israel](#) scattered on the mountains. They seemed to be like sheep that did not have a shepherd. [And Yahweh](#) said, ‘Their [master](#) has been killed. [So tell them all to go home](#) peacefully.’”

1 Kings 22:18

Did I not tell you....but only disaster?

Ahab asks this question to emphasize that he had spoken the truth about Micaiah. Alternate translation: "I told you....but only disaster!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Ahab
- good
- bad things will happen to me
- Jehoshaphat
- I told you

ULT

18 So the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you that he would not prophesy good concerning me, but only disaster?"

UST

18 [Ahab](#) said to [Jehoshaphat](#), "[I told you](#) that he never predicts that anything [good](#) will happen to me! He always predicts that [bad things will happen to me](#)."

1 Kings 22:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of heaven surrounding him](#)
- [of heaven surrounding him](#)
- [to what Yahweh showed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [throne](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Then Micaiah said, “Therefore hear the word of Yahweh: I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven were standing by him on his right hand and on his left.

UST

¹⁹ But Micaiah continued, saying, “Listen [to what Yahweh showed](#) to me! In a vision I saw [Yahweh](#) sitting on his [throne](#), with all the armies [of heaven surrounding him](#), on his right side and on his left side.

1 Kings 22:20

fall at Ramoth Gilead

Ahab dying in battle is spoken of as if he will fall. Alternate translation: “die at Ramoth Gilead” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

One of them said...and another one said

“One...and another” refers to two or more angels in the heavenly host who were responding to Yahweh’s question in the previous verse.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [And Yahweh](#)
- [to fight against the people](#)

ULT

²⁰ Yahweh said, ‘Who will entice Ahab, so that he may go up and fall at Ramoth Gilead?’ One of them said this and another one said that.

UST

²⁰ [And Yahweh](#) said, ‘Who can persuade Ahab to go [to fight against the people](#) of Ramoth, in order that he may be killed there?’ Some suggested one thing, and others suggested something else.

1 Kings 22:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Finally one spirit came](#)
- [Yahweh and said...I will deceive him](#)
- [Yahweh and said...I will deceive him](#)

ULT

²¹ Then a spirit came forward, stood before Yahweh, and said, 'I will entice him.' Yahweh said to him, 'How?'

UST

²¹ [Finally one spirit came](#) to [Yahweh and said](#), '[I will deceive him!](#)'

1 Kings 22:22

be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets

Here the word “spirit” refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words “the mouth” represents what they will say. Alternate translation: “cause all his prophets to speak lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- prophets
- The spirit replied
- I will go
- Yahweh said...You...successful; go and do it

ULT

22 The spirit replied, ‘I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.’ Yahweh replied, ‘You will entice him, and you will also be successful. Go now and do so.’

UST

22 Yahweh asked him, ‘How will you do it?’ [The spirit replied](#), ‘[I will go](#) and inspire all of Ahab’s [prophets](#) to tell lies.’ [Yahweh said](#), ‘You will be [successful; go and do it!](#)’

1 Kings 22:23

see

“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these prophets of yours

Here the word “spirit” refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words “the mouth” represents what they will say. Alternate translation: “has caused all of your prophets to speak lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- has let all...your prophets lie
- has let all...your prophets lie
- Yahweh
- to you. Yahweh has decided that...will happen to you
- something terrible

ULT

23 Now see, Yahweh has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these prophets of yours, and Yahweh has decreed disaster for you.”

UST

23 So now I tell you that [Yahweh has let all of your prophets lie to you. Yahweh has decided that something terrible will happen to you.](#)”

1 Kings 22:24

Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?

Zedekiah asks this sarcastic question to insult and rebuke Micaiah. Alternate translation: "Do not think that Yahweh's Spirit left me to speak to you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Zedekiah
- Spirit
- Yahweh's

ULT

²⁴ Then Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, came up, slapped Micaiah on the cheek, and said, "Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?"

UST

²⁴ Then [Zedekiah](#) walked over to Micaiah and slapped him on his face. He said, "Do you think that [Yahweh's Spirit](#) left me in order to speak to you?"

1 Kings 22:25

Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

you will see

"you will know the answer to your question." If Zedekiah's rhetorical question is translated as a statement, this phrase may be translated to supply implicit information. Alternate translation: "you will know that the Spirit of Yahweh has spoken to me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁵ Micaiah said, "Look, you will see on that day when you will go to hide in an inner room."

UST

²⁵ Micaiah replied, "You will find out for yourself to which of us Yahweh's Spirit has truly spoken on the day when you go into a room of some house to hide from the Aramean troops!"

1 Kings 22:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- my son
- Ahab
- King
- his soldiers
- Seize Micaiah and
- the governor

ULT

²⁶ The king of Israel said to his servant, "Seize Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of the city, and to Joash, my son.

UST

²⁶ [King Ahab](#) commanded [his soldiers](#), "[Seize Micaiah and](#) take him to Amon, [the governor](#) of this city, and to [my son](#) Joash.

1 Kings 22:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- and give him only bread
- to eat
- I
- in prison

ULT

²⁷ Say to him, 'The king says, Put this man in prison and feed him with only a little bread and only a little water, until I come safely.'

UST

²⁷ Tell them that **I** have commanded that they should put this man in prison and give him only bread and water. Do not give him anything else to eat until I return safely from the battle!"

1 Kings 22:28

If you return safely

This describes something that would not happen. Yahweh had already told Micaiah that the king would not return safely. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- it was not Yahweh who told
- you return
- you return
- those who were standing there

ULT

²⁸ Then Micaiah said, "If you return safely, then Yahweh has not spoken by me." Then he added, "Listen to this, all you people."

UST

²⁸ Micaiah replied, "If [you return](#) safely, it will be clear that [it was not Yahweh who told](#) me what to say to you!" Then he said to all [those who were standing there](#), "Do not forget what I have said to King Ahab!"

1 Kings 22:29

Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up

Here the kings represent themselves accompanied by their armies.
Alternate translation: "Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah led their armies up" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)

Translation Words - UST

- the king of Israel and
- their armies to
- the king of Israel and
- So...the king of (2)

ULT

²⁹ So Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up to Ramoth Gilead.

UST

²⁹ [So the king of Israel and the king of Judah led their armies to](#) Ramoth in Gilead.

1 Kings 22:30

disguise

This means to change the usual appearance so as not to be identified.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [So Ahab disguised himself, and they both](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [King](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

³⁰ The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself and go into the battle, but you put on your royal robes." So the king of Israel disguised himself and went into the battle.

UST

³⁰ [King](#) Ahab said to [Jehoshaphat](#), "I will put on different clothes, in order that no one will recognize that I am [the king](#). But you should wear your royal robe." [So Ahab disguised himself, and they both](#) went into the battle.

1 Kings 22:31

thirty-two captains

"32 captains" (See: [Numbers](#))

Do not attack unimportant or important soldiers

By mentioning both "unimportant" and "important soldiers," the king meant all soldiers. Alternate translation: "Do not attack any of the soldiers" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Aram](#)
- [king of Israel](#)
- [king of Israel](#)
- [of Aram](#)

ULT

31 Now the king of Aram had commanded the thirty-two captains of his chariots, saying, "Do not attack unimportant or important soldiers. Instead, attack only the king of Israel."

UST

31 The King [of Aram](#) had said to his thirty-two men who were driving the chariots, "Attack only the [king of Israel](#)!"

1 Kings 22:32

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- cry, cry out, outcry
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- Jehoshaphat wearing the
- But when Jehoshaphat
- cried
- king
- royal robes

ULT

32 It came about that when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat they said, "Surely that is the king of Israel." They turned to attack him, so Jehoshaphat cried out.

UST

32 So when the men who were driving the Aramean chariots saw [Jehoshaphat wearing the royal robes](#), they pursued him. They shouted, "There is the [king](#) of [Israel](#)!" [But when Jehoshaphat cried](#) out,

1 Kings 22:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- the king of
- they stopped...him
- they realized that

ULT

³³ It came about that when the commanders of the chariots saw that it was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him.

UST

³³ they realized that he was not the king of Israel. So they stopped pursuing him.

1 Kings 22:34

drew his bow at random

Possible meanings are 1) he took aim to shoot a soldier without knowing that it was Ahab or 2) he drew his bow to shoot without any specific target in mind.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [take...here! I have been severely wounded](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Turn...around](#)
- [his](#)

ULT

34 But a certain man drew his bow at random and shot the king of Israel between the joints of his armor. Then Ahab said to the driver of his chariot, "Turn around and carry me out of the battle, for I am badly wounded."

UST

34 But one Aramean soldier shot an arrow at Ahab, without knowing that it was Ahab. The arrow struck [Ahab](#) between the places where the parts of [his](#) armor joined together. Ahab told the driver of his chariot, "[Turn](#) the chariot [around](#) and [take](#) me out of [here! I have been severely wounded!](#)"

1 Kings 22:35

the king was held up in his chariot

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone held the king up in his chariot" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- appoint, appointed
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- wound
- Ahab was sitting propped up in
- died
- his

ULT

³⁵ The battle grew worse that day and the king was held up in his chariot facing the Arameans. He died in the evening. The blood ran out from his wound into the bottom of the chariot.

UST

³⁵ The battle continued all the day. [Ahab was sitting propped up in](#) his chariot, facing the Aramean troops. The blood from [his wound](#) ran down to the floor of the chariot. And late in the afternoon he [died](#).

1 Kings 22:36

a cry went up

Here “a cry” represents the soldiers who were shouting. Alternate translation: “soldiers began to shout” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Every man should go back to his city; and every man should go back to his region

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [preach](#), [preaching](#), [preacher](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The battle is ended](#)
- [home](#)

ULT

³⁶ Then about the time the sun was going down, a cry went up throughout the army, saying, “Every man should go back to his city; and every man should go back to his region!”

UST

³⁶ Just as the sun was going down, someone among the Israelite troops shouted, “[The battle is ended!](#) Everyone should return [home!](#)”

1 Kings 22:37

was brought to Samaria

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “his soldiers brought his body to Samaria” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they buried him

“people buried him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samaria](#)
- [died](#)
- [King Ahab](#)
- [his](#)

ULT

³⁷ So King Ahab died and was brought to Samaria, and they buried him in Samaria.

UST

³⁷ So [King Ahab died](#), and they took his body in the chariot to [Samaria](#) and buried [his](#) body there.

1 Kings 22:38

just as the word of Yahweh had declared

Here “the word of Yahweh” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “just as Yahweh had declared” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [blood](#)
- [just like Yahweh](#)
- [They...his...the pool in Samaria](#)

ULT

³⁸ They washed the chariot by the pool of Samaria, and the dogs licked up his blood (this was where the prostitutes bathed), just as the word of Yahweh had declared.

UST

³⁸ [They](#) washed [his](#) chariot alongside [the pool in Samaria](#), a pool where the prostitutes bathed. And dogs came and licked the king's [blood, just like Yahweh](#) had predicted would happen.

1 Kings 22:39

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 15:31](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” or “you can read them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- the Kings of
- and about...palace decorated

ULT

³⁹ As for the other matters concerning Ahab, all that he did, the ivory house that he built, and all the cities that he built, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

³⁹ The account of the other things that happened while Ahab was ruling, [and about](#) the [palace decorated](#) with much ivory that they built for him, and the cities that were built for him, was written in Book of the Events of [the Kings of Israel](#).

1 Kings 22:40

slept with his ancestors

Ahab dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then his son](#)
- [his ancestors were buried](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ So Ahab slept with his ancestors, and Ahaziah his son became king in his place.

UST

⁴⁰ When Ahab died, his body was buried where [his ancestors were buried](#). [Then his son](#) Ahaziah became [king](#).

1 Kings 22:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel
- in Judah
- died, when he had been ruling

ULT

⁴¹ Then Jehoshaphat son of Asa began to reign over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab king of Israel.

UST

⁴¹ Before King Ahab died, when he had been ruling in Israel for four years, Asa's son Jehoshaphat started to rule in Judah.

1 Kings 22:42

thirty-five years old

"35 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty-five years

"25 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁴² Jehoshaphat was thirty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem twenty-five years. His mother's name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi.

UST

⁴² [Jehoshaphat](#) was thirty-five years old when he started to rule, and he ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for twenty-five years. His mother was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi.

1 Kings 22:43

He walked in the ways of Asa, his father

A person's behavior is spoken of as if that person walked along a path. Alternate translation: "He did the same things that Asa, his father, had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here "eyes" represents seeing and Yahweh's opinion is spoken of as if he were able to see something. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considered to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he did not take away the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

⁴³ He walked in the ways of Asa, his father; he did not turn away from them; he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. Yet the high places were not taken away. The people were still sacrificing and burning incense on the high places.

UST

⁴³ Jehoshaphat was a good king, just like his father Asa had been. He did things that pleased Yahweh. But while he was king, he did not remove all the pagan altars that had been built upon the hills. So the people continued to offer sacrifices to idols on those altars and burned incense there.

1 Kings 22:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁴⁴ Jehoshaphat made peace with the king of Israel.

UST

⁴⁴ Jehoshaphat also made a peace treaty with the king of Israel.

1 Kings 22:45

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 14:29](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” or “you can read them in the book of the events of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ As for the other matters concerning Jehoshaphat, and the might that he showed, and how he waged war, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

⁴⁵ All the other things that happened while Jehoshaphat was ruling, and the great things that he did and the victories his troops won, are written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.

1 Kings 22:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁴⁶ He removed from the land the rest of the cultic prostitutes who had remained in the days of his father Asa.

UST

⁴⁶ Jehoshaphat removed from the land the male prostitutes that still lived in that region. These were same the male prostitutes who had lived there in the time of his father Asa.

1 Kings 22:47

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁴⁷ There was no king in Edom, but a deputy ruled there.

UST

⁴⁷ At that time, there was no king in Edom. A ruler who had been appointed by Jehoshaphat ruled there.

1 Kings 22:48

the ships were wrecked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the ships wrecked” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ Jehoshaphat built oceangoing ships; they were to go to Ophir for gold, but they did not go because the ships were wrecked at Ezion Geber.

UST

⁴⁸ Jehoshaphat ordered some Israelite men to build a fleet of ships to sail south to the region of Ophir to get gold. But they were wrecked at Ezion Geber, so the ships never sailed.

1 Kings 22:49

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁴⁹ Then Ahaziah son of Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "Let my servants sail with your servants in the ships." But Jehoshaphat would not allow it.

UST

⁴⁹ Before the ships were wrecked, Ahab's son Ahaziah suggested to Jehoshaphat, "Allow my sailors to go with your sailors," but Jehoshaphat refused.

1 Kings 22:50

slept with his ancestors

Jehoshaphat dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [1 Kings 2:10](#). Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Jehoshaphat
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Jehoshaphat
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

ULT

⁵⁰ Jehoshaphat slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David, his ancestor; Jehoram his son became king in his place.

UST

⁵⁰ When Jehoshaphat died, his body was buried where his ancestors were buried in Jerusalem, the city where King David had ruled. Then Jehoshaphat's son Jehoram became king.

1 Kings 22:51

he reigned two years

“he reigned 2 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

51 Ahaziah son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria in the seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and he reigned two years over Israel.

UST

51 Before King Jehoshaphat died, when he had been ruling in Judah for seventeen years, Ahab's son Ahaziah began to rule in Israel. Ahaziah ruled in Samaria for two years.

1 Kings 22:52

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Yahweh's opinion regarding something is spoken of as if Yahweh were seeing that thing. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the way of his father, in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat

A person's behavior is spoken of as if that person were walking along a path. Alternate translation: "did the same things that his father, mother, and Jeroboam son of Nebat had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

led Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" refers to the ten northern tribes that made up the kingdom of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

52 He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of his father, in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he led Israel to sin.

UST

52 He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, doing the evil things that his father and mother had done and the evil things that Jeroboam had done—the king who had induced all the Israelite people to sin by worshiping idols.

1 Kings 22:53

He served Baal and worshiped him

The words “served” and “worshiped” mean basically the same thing.
(See: [Doublet](#))

the God of Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

53 He served Baal and worshiped him and so he provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger, just as his father had done.

UST

53 Ahaziah bowed in front of Baal's idol and worshiped it. That caused Yahweh, the God who is the true God of the Israelite people as well as all the world, to become very angry, just as Ahaziah's father had caused Yahweh to become angry.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:52](#); [3:6](#); [4:29](#); [8:23](#); [8:33](#); [9:7](#); [13:6](#); [14:5](#); [14:22](#); [15:30](#); [16:7](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:21; 1:52; 2:10; 2:12; 2:15; 2:19; 2:21; 2:29; 2:41; 3:2; 4:6; 5:7; 5:9; 5:14; 7:3; 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:14; 7:19; 7:21; 7:22; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 7:30; 7:33; 7:35; 7:36; 7:37; 7:47; 7:48; 7:50; 7:51; 8:5; 8:7; 8:15; 8:19; 8:31; 8:33; 8:43; 8:47; 8:51; 8:56; 9:8; 9:13; 10:7; 10:9; 10:10; 10:12; 10:28; 10:29; 11:17; 11:41; 11:43; 12:15; 12:24; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:17; 13:24; 13:34; 14:2; 14:6; 14:11; 14:13; 14:15; 14:18; 14:19; 14:29; 14:31; 15:7; 15:14; 15:23; 15:24; 15:31; 16:5; 16:6; 16:14; 16:16; 16:18; 16:20; 16:27; 18:13; 18:26; 18:27; 18:36; 19:6; 20:17; 20:27; 21:11; 21:14; 21:15; 22:11; 22:35; 22:37; 22:39; 22:43; 22:45; 22:48; 22:50)

Apostrophe

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: **"Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ...on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar

, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See,...on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. 'See,...they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

Mountains of Gilboa

, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **them**

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:2](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:25](#); [1:52](#); [3:19](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:19](#); [7:30](#); [Notes](#); [11:3](#); [12:20](#); [12:31](#); [13:1](#); [13:12](#); [13:20](#); [13:32](#); [14:25](#); [15:1](#); [15:3](#); [15:5](#); [15:9](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [15:25](#); [15:32](#); [16:2](#); [16:13](#); [16:20](#); [16:26](#); [16:31](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [19:19](#); [19:21](#); [21:3](#); [21:20](#); [21:26](#); [22:13](#); [22:25](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called

background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]
[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:2](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits** ; its width will be **one kubit and a half** ; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)** ; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:6](#); [6:10](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#); [7:2](#); [7:6](#); [7:10](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:19](#); [7:23](#); [7:27](#); [7:31](#); [7:32](#); [7:35](#); [7:38](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters ¹, and 220 liters ² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters ³."

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:22](#); [5:11](#); [7:26](#); [7:38](#); [18:32](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talent^{es} and 2,400 sekeles^{es}**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 shekels**.
1 "

The footnote would look like:

[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:14](#); [9:28](#); [10:10](#); [10:14](#); [10:16](#); [10:17](#); [10:29](#); [16:24](#); [20:39](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks:"".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...** "

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.** "
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

He instructed him, to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:24](#))

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could **distinguish this sister** of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
 - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about **how Mary’s sister responded** when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun **both** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item **and also** for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun **only** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause any problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33 ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

...for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, **who is ninety years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve worthless

idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

...for **your** righteous

judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

...for your judgments are good **because** they are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old

, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Can Sarah bear a son **even when** she is ninety years old?

I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised

(2 Samuel 22:4 ULT) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, **because** he is worthy to be praised

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, whom I love

. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. ***I love you*** and I am pleased with you.
Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[*Double Negatives*](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:26](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...**in order** not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

All things were made through him and without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:9](#); [18:10](#); [20:7](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:32](#); [7:14](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [8:38](#); [8:45](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [8:49](#); [8:54](#); [8:57](#); [8:66](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [12:24](#); [13:34](#); [20:22](#); [21:15](#); [22:53](#))

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort...***
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:2](#); [18:33](#); [20:14](#); [20:18](#); [20:30](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

they found Saul and his sons fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

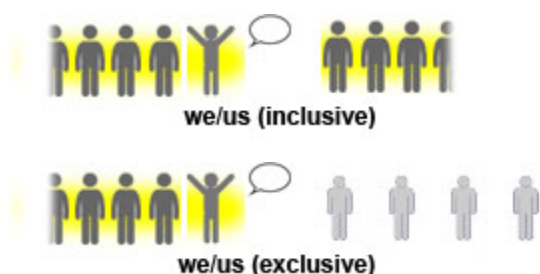
(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:21](#); [Notes](#); [2:2](#); [2:10](#); [11:21](#); [11:43](#); [14:20](#); [14:31](#); [15:8](#); [15:24](#); [16:6](#); [16:28](#); [17:17](#); [Notes](#); [18:27](#); [22:20](#); [22:40](#); [22:50](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:15](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[Pronouns](#)

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:27](#); [8:12](#); [8:27](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [16:3](#); [22:8](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:25](#))

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?

So is **the man who goes into his neighbor's wife**;

the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples from the Bible

The **one who does what is right** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell them grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man

, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans.**”
(Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) Use the word “any, as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 17:18](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in **the month of Abib**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib

, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,
you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work."

- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in ***the day I choose in early autumn***
¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:1](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [8:2](#); [12:32](#))

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

...his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples from the Bible

...for I will give you **words and wisdom**... (Luke 21:15 ULT)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *wise words*

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

. (Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *words of wisdom*.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

if you are willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

if you are *willingly obedient*

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

if you are willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you *obey willingly*

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory

of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

while we look forward to receiving ***what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing*** of ***Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior.***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Doublet](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:6](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Kings](#); [1 Kings 1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:33](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:39](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:31](#); [6:1](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [7:21](#); [7:46](#); [8:2](#); [10:28](#); [11:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:14](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:29](#); [11:33](#); [11:40](#); [12:2](#); [12:15](#); [12:18](#); [12:22](#); [14:17](#); [14:21](#); [14:25](#); [14:31](#); [15:27](#); [16:24](#); [17:1](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#); [17:9](#); [19:19](#); [20:1](#); [20:26](#); [20:30](#); [21:1](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:
Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:3](#); [1:9](#); [1:31](#); [1:39](#); [1:52](#); [2:15](#); [3:28](#); [4:20](#); [8:2](#); [8:5](#); [8:62](#); [8:63](#); [8:65](#); [10:2](#); [10:24](#); [10:27](#); [12:1](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [14:13](#); [14:18](#); [14:23](#); [14:26](#); [15:27](#); [16:16](#); [18:10](#); [18:19](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! ***If the mighty deeds had been done*** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, ***they would have repented*** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that ***if*** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:44](#); [8:46](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [22:28](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1 General Notes; 1:20; 1:25; 1:49; 1:50; 2:3; 2:4; 2:23; 2:32; 2:33; 2:40; 3:7; 4:29; 5:3; 6:11; Notes; 8:20; 8:48; 8:58; 10:5; 10:8; 11:2; 11:9; 11:26; 11:33; 11:38; 12:6; 12:15; 12:22; 12:32; 12:33; 13:2; 13:20; 13:21; 14:5; 14:25; 16:1; 16:7; 16:9; 16:12; 16:24; 16:31; 17:1; 17:2; 17:8; 17:14; 17:21; 18:1; 18:15; 18:20; 19:9; 19:11; 20:4; 20:7; 20:39; 20:40; 21:17; 21:28; 22:4)

Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

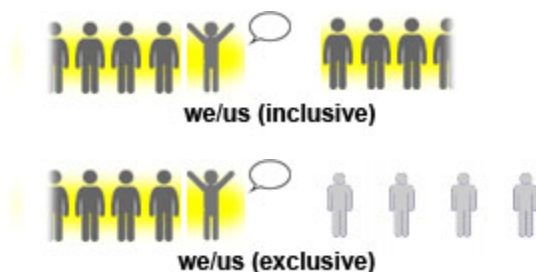
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:23](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:1](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [4:27](#); [8:56](#); [9:5](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:25; 4:33; 5:4; 8:29; 8:59; 22:31](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:52; 3:3; 3:6; 3:7; 3:14; 3:26; 5:3; 6:12; 7:14; 8:17; 8:18; 8:20; 8:23; 8:25; 8:35; 8:36; 8:38; 8:58; 8:61; 9:4; 9:7; 11:6; 11:11; 11:31; 11:38; 11:43; Notes; 12:4; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:14; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:20; 14:22; 14:31; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:8; 15:11; 15:19; 15:24; 15:26; 15:28; 15:30; 15:34; 16:2; 16:3; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 16:10; 16:13; 16:19; 16:21; 16:25; 16:26; 16:28; 16:30; 16:31; 16:34; 17:20; 20:10; 20:32; 21:3; 21:9; 21:12; 21:20; 21:21; 21:25; 22:11; 22:13; 22:17; 22:20; 22:40; 22:43; 22:50; 22:52](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:13; 1:17; 1:27; 1:30; 1:37; 1:46; 1:48; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:9; 2:12; 2:16; 2:17; 2:20; 2:24; 2:28; 2:31; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 2:37; 2:45; 2:46; 3:2; 3:6; 3:11; 3:12; 4:20; 4:25; 5:3; 5:5; 6:1; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:9; 6:10; 6:12; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 6:31; 6:32; 6:33; 6:35; 6:36; 6:38; 7:1; 7:2; 7:7; 7:8; 7:18; 7:21; 7:23; 7:27; 7:36; 7:37; 7:38; 7:39; 7:40; 7:42; 7:44; 7:45; 7:46; 7:47; 7:48; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:20; 8:21; 8:24; 8:25; 8:29; 8:38; 8:44; 8:48; 8:58; 9:3; 9:5; 9:7; 9:16; 9:25; 10:1; 10:7; 10:9; 10:24; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:9; 11:12; 11:26; 11:28; 11:31; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:36; 11:38; 12:16; 12:18; 12:19; 12:21; 12:23; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:31; 13:2; 14:8; 14:13; 14:21; 14:22; 14:23; 14:24; 14:26; 14:27; 15:13; 15:18; 15:21; 15:29; 16:9; 16:24; 16:34; 17:5; 17:16; 17:22; 17:24; 18:9; 18:19; 18:20; 18:24; 18:29; 18:32; 18:37; 18:46; 19:17; 19:18; 20:7; 20:11; 20:13; 20:22; 20:28; 20:33; 20:36; 20:42; 21:8; 22:3; 22:6; 22:12; 22:15; 22:16; 22:22; 22:23; 22:36; 22:38)

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:8](#); [21:11](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: 1 Kings 5:15; 5:16; 6:2; 7:20; 7:30; 7:42; 8:63; 8:65; 9:14; 9:23; 9:28; 10:10; 10:14; 10:16; 10:17; 10:26; 10:29; 11:3; 12:21; 14:20; 14:21; 15:1; 15:9; 15:10; 17:12; 18:4; 18:13; 18:19; 18:22; 18:31; 18:33; 18:43; 19:8; 19:18; 19:19; 20:1; 20:15; 20:29; 20:30; 22:1; 22:6; 22:31; 22:42; 22:51)

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:1](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [8:2](#); [8:66](#); [12:32](#); [14:25](#))

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(**Go back to:** [1 Kings 2 General Notes](#); [6:12](#); [8:47](#); [8:50](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [10:13](#); [12:27](#); [14:10](#); [15:29](#); [16:31](#); [17:22](#); [18:5](#); [18:26](#); [18:29](#); [19:18](#); [20:15](#); [22:36](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:2; 18:38](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
 - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself**

in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who

built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:13](#); [1:21](#); [1:33](#); [1:36](#); [1:37](#); [1:51](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:20](#); [8:28](#))

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer *general advice* to a person about how to live his life.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[r://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,
yet it prepares its food in the summer,
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for *a cold wind to blow in the hot season* or for it to rain in the harvest season;
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:11](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

■ **If I should testify about** myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

■ “If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

■ “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

■ He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

■ “**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

■ “**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

■ **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he** himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

■ **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain** by himself

. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:7](#); [14:23](#); [19:4](#); [19:18](#); [19:19](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:6; 1:11; 1:13; 2:22; 2:42; 2:43; 3:9; 8:27; 9:13; 11:41; 12:16; 14:6; 14:29; 15:7; 15:23; 15:31; 16:5; 16:14; 16:20; 16:27; 17:20; 18:9; 18:17; 18:21; 19:9; 20:13; 20:32; 21:7; 21:19; 21:20; 21:29; 22:3; 22:16; 22:18; 22:24; 22:39; 22:45)

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:29](#); [7:26](#); [7:41](#); [14:10](#); [14:15](#); [Notes](#); [20:27](#); [22:17](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [1 Kings 22:11](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:20](#); [2:9](#); [2:44](#); [8:32](#); [8:52](#); [9:3](#); [9:10](#); [9:17](#); [9:26](#); [10:12](#); [10:16](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [11:16](#); [11:24](#); [12:1](#); [12:16](#); [12:20](#); [13:31](#); [14:12](#); [14:25](#); [14:26](#); [14:30](#); [15:3](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:14](#); [15:27](#); [16:7](#); [16:16](#); [18:6](#); [18:20](#); [18:26](#); [20:6](#); [20:20](#); [20:21](#); [20:26](#); [21:1](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#); [22:17](#); [22:29](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:23](#); [4:33](#); [5:18](#); [6:15](#); [10:11](#); [10:18](#); [10:22](#); [17:4](#); [19:4](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 01:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

([Go back to: 1 Kings 14:24](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:36](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:11](#); [8:33](#); [8:37](#); [8:44](#); [8:46](#); [8:48](#); [21:20](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:12](#); [12:6](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:13](#); [12:28](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [1 Kings 17:20](#))

alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:41](#); [8:43](#); [11:1](#); [11:8](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:50](#); [1:51](#); [1:53](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [3:4](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#); [7:48](#); [8:22](#); [8:31](#); [8:54](#); [8:64](#); [9:25](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [13:32](#); [16:32](#); [18:26](#); [18:30](#); [18:32](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), sign)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:8](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:36](#))

Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:02
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:1](#); [11:5](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:19](#); [9:20](#); [21:26](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:6](#); [1:21](#); [2:10](#); [2:12](#); [2:24](#); [2:26](#); [2:31](#); [2:32](#); [2:44](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:14](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#); [6:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:51](#); [8:1](#); [8:15](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [8:20](#); [8:21](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:34](#); [8:40](#); [8:48](#); [8:53](#); [8:57](#); [8:58](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:9](#); [11:4](#); [11:6](#); [11:12](#); [11:17](#);

11:21; 11:27; 11:33; 11:43; 12:4; 12:6; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:14; 13:11; 13:12; 13:22; 14:15; 14:20; 14:22; 14:31; 15:3;
15:8; 15:11; 15:12; 15:15; 15:19; 15:24; 15:26; 16:6; 16:28; 18:18; 19:20; 20:34; 21:3; 21:4; 22:40; 22:43; 22:46; 22:50;
22:52; 22:53)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#); [2:19](#); [7:25](#); [8:14](#); [8:21](#); [10:9](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [11:28](#); [Notes](#); [12:6](#); [12:29](#); [13:1](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:28](#); [14:27](#); [17:1](#); [18:15](#); [18:23](#); [18:33](#); [18:42](#); [20:12](#); [20:15](#); [20:24](#); [20:26](#); [21:27](#); [22:19](#); [22:35](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:1](#); [8:14](#); [8:22](#); [8:55](#); [8:65](#); [12:3](#))

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:13
- Amos 04:01
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

([Go back to: 1 Kings 4:19](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#))

Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:8](#); [12:21](#); [12:23](#); [15:22](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:48](#); [2:45](#); [Notes](#); [5:7](#); [8:14](#); [8:15](#); [8:55](#); [8:56](#); [8:66](#); [10:9](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:5](#); [2:31](#); [2:32](#); [2:33](#); [2:37](#); [18:28](#); [21:19](#); [22:35](#); [22:38](#))

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Moab](#), [redeem](#), Ruth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 2 Chronicles 03:17
- Luke 03:30-32
- Matthew 01:05
- Ruth 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:21](#))

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:16](#); [1:31](#); [18:7](#); [18:38](#); [18:39](#); [19:18](#); [20:30](#); [22:20](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:22](#); [5:9](#); [7:48](#); [11:18](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [13:19](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [14:3](#); [17:6](#); [17:11](#); [18:4](#); [18:13](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#); [22:27](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:27](#); [7:30](#); [7:38](#); [7:45](#); [7:47](#); [8:64](#); [14:27](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [9:13](#); [12:24](#); [13:30](#); [20:32](#); [20:33](#))

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:10](#); [12:14](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:4](#); [3:15](#); [9:25](#); [10:5](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:31](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:10](#); [1:19](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:32](#); [8:43](#); [8:52](#); [13:4](#); [13:32](#); [18:24](#); [18:27](#); [21:9](#); [21:12](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:2](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:16](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:46](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [8:50](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [6:10](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:18](#); [6:20](#); [6:36](#); [7:2](#); [7:12](#); [9:11](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:29](#))

chief

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:2](#); [5:16](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:25](#); [12:8](#); [12:10](#); [12:14](#); [14:12](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [17:23](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:6](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:35](#); [2:1](#); [2:3](#); [2:43](#); [2:46](#); [3:14](#); [5:6](#); [5:17](#); [6:12](#); [8:58](#); [8:61](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [9:12](#); [10:29](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:34](#); [11:38](#); [12:25](#); [13:9](#); [13:21](#); [14:8](#); [15:5](#); [17:4](#); [17:9](#); [17:13](#); [18:18](#); [19:13](#); [20:15](#); [20:16](#); [20:17](#); [20:21](#); [20:27](#); [20:31](#); [20:33](#); [20:39](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#); [22:21](#); [22:31](#); [22:34](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:33; 8:35](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), trust)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:4](#))

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:64](#); [9:3](#); [9:7](#); [20:42](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:41](#); [3:1](#); [6:38](#); [17:14](#); [17:16](#); [22:11](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:15](#); [5:12](#); [6:19](#); [8:1](#); [8:6](#); [8:21](#); [8:23](#); [11:11](#); [15:19](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [20:34](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), people of God, [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:7](#); [3:6](#); [8:23](#); [20:31](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:23](#); [7:25](#); [7:29](#); [8:63](#); [18:23](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:39](#); [22:32](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2 General Notes](#))

cut off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [5:6](#); [5:12](#); [8:9](#); [8:21](#); [8:25](#); [9:5](#); [9:7](#); [11:16](#); [14:10](#); [14:14](#); [15:13](#); [18:5](#); [20:34](#); [21:21](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:1; 1:11; 1:13; 1:28; 1:31; 1:32; 1:37; 1:38; 1:43; 1:47; 2:1; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:24; 2:26; 2:32; 2:45; 3:1; 3:3; 3:6; 3:7; 3:14; 5:3; 5:5; 6:12; 7:51; 8:1; 8:15; 8:17; 8:18; 8:20; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 9:4; 9:5; 9:24; 11:4; 11:12; 11:13; 11:15; 11:21; 11:24; 11:27; 11:32; 11:34; 11:38; 11:39; 11:43; 12:16; 12:19; 12:20; 12:26; 13:2; 14:8; 14:31; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:8; 15:24; 22:50](#))

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:18](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), [decree](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [2:36](#); [2:42](#); [7:21](#); [9:13](#); [12:3](#); [12:20](#); [13:2](#); [13:21](#); [16:24](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:20](#); [17:21](#); [18:3](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:28](#); [20:7](#); [22:9](#))

decree, decreed

Definition:

The term "decree" means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a "decree."

- A "decree" is similar to a "law," but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term "decree" could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:25](#); [3:26](#))

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:1](#); [10:9](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** “The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:14](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:34](#); [9:18](#); [19:4](#))

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:25; 4:20; 13:8; 13:9; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 13:19; 13:22; 13:23; 13:28; 14:11; 16:4; 17:12; 17:15; 18:19; 18:38; 18:41; 19:5; 19:6; 19:7; 19:8; 19:21; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:23; 21:24; 22:27](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:52](#); [2:1](#); [2:25](#); [2:34](#); [2:46](#); [3:19](#); [3:20](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:26](#); [3:27](#); [9:16](#); [11:40](#); [12:18](#); [13:24](#); [13:26](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [15:28](#); [16:4](#); [16:10](#); [16:18](#); [16:22](#); [17:12](#); [17:20](#); [18:9](#); [19:1](#); [19:4](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:24](#); [22:35](#); [22:37](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:21](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:40](#); [13:13](#); [13:23](#); [13:27](#); [13:28](#); [13:29](#))

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:01
- Genesis 37:06
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13
- Matthew 02:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:15](#))

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:9](#); [20:16](#))

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:23](#); [1:31](#); [1:40](#); [1:52](#); [2:2](#); [4:10](#); [4:19](#); [4:21](#); [4:34](#); [8:23](#); [8:27](#); [8:36](#); [8:43](#); [8:46](#); [8:48](#); [8:53](#); [8:60](#); [9:13](#); [9:19](#); [10:15](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [11:18](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [15:12](#); [15:20](#); [18:6](#); [18:42](#); [20:7](#); [20:27](#); [22:36](#); [22:46](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:1](#); [4:21](#); [4:30](#); [6:1](#); [8:9](#); [8:16](#); [8:21](#); [8:51](#); [8:53](#); [8:65](#); [9:9](#); [9:16](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:21](#); [11:40](#); [12:2](#); [12:28](#); [14:25](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:1](#); [8:3](#); [12:6](#); [12:8](#); [12:13](#); [13:11](#); [13:25](#); [13:29](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [21:8](#); [21:11](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:8](#); [12:25](#))

Ephrath, Ephrathah

Facts:

The terms "Ephrath" and "Ephrathah" are probably derived from the name "Ephraim," who was one of the sons of Joseph and became the patriarch of one of the 12 tribes of Israel. Different

- "Ephrathah" is the name of the region where Rachel died, near the city of Bethel.
- There is a woman named "Ephrath" in the OT, who was the wife of Caleb.
- Both cities of Bethlehem and Kirjath-Jearim are also called "Ephrathah," even though both cities are in a different region than described above (near Bethel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Boaz](#), Caleb, [David](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H672, H673

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:26](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:52](#); [2:44](#); [5:4](#); [8:47](#); [9:9](#); [11:6](#); [11:25](#); [13:33](#); [Notes](#); [14:10](#); [14:22](#); [15:26](#); [15:34](#); [Notes](#); [16:7](#); [16:19](#); [16:25](#); [16:30](#); [20:7](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [21:29](#); [22:8](#); [22:18](#); [22:23](#); [22:52](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2 General Notes; 11:26](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:20](#); [6:3](#); [7:6](#); [7:42](#); [8:8](#); [8:14](#); [8:40](#); [9:7](#); [10:24](#); [11:7](#); [12:6](#); [13:6](#); [13:34](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#); [17:14](#); [18:1](#); [18:7](#); [18:39](#); [18:42](#); [19:13](#); [21:4](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [believe](#), disobey, faith, [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:26](#); [Notes](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [11:38](#); [17:24](#); [22:16](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:37](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:12](#); [21:27](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:47](#); [11:19](#))

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), power, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:50](#); [1:51](#); [3:28](#); [8:40](#); [8:43](#); [17:13](#); [18:12](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:15](#); [8:2](#); [8:4](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:25](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:16](#); [16:18](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:38](#); [19:12](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:34](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:27](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [4:23](#); [8:5](#); [8:63](#))

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:13](#); [8:57](#); [9:9](#); [11:33](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:37](#); [7:10](#); [16:34](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:31](#); [6:32](#); [6:34](#); [8:37](#); [16:34](#); [22:10](#))

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:08** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:4](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:7](#))

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:44](#); [20:11](#); [20:14](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:13](#); [8:11](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:17; 1:30; 1:36; 1:47; 1:48; 2:3; 2:23; 3:5; 3:7; 3:11; 3:28; 4:29; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 8:15; 8:17; 8:20; 8:23; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 8:57; 8:59; 8:60; 8:61; 8:65; 9:6; 9:9; 10:9; 10:24; 11:2; 11:4; 11:5; 11:8; 11:9; 11:10; 11:23; 11:31; 11:33; 12:22; 12:28; 13:1; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:11; 13:12; 13:14; 13:21; 13:26; 13:29; 13:31; 14:7; 14:9; 14:13; 15:3; 15:4; 15:30; 16:13; 16:26; 16:33; 17:1; 17:12; 17:14; 17:18; 17:20; 17:21; 17:24; 18:10; 18:21; 18:24; 18:25; 18:27; 18:36; 18:37; 18:39; 19:2; 19:8; 19:10; 19:14; 20:10; 20:23; 20:28; 21:10; 21:13; 22:53)

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:20](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#); [6:28](#); [6:30](#); [6:32](#); [6:35](#); [7:48](#); [7:49](#); [7:50](#); [7:51](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [9:28](#); [10:2](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:14](#); [10:16](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [12:28](#); [14:26](#); [15:15](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [22:48](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:6](#); [2:18](#); [2:38](#); [2:42](#); [3:9](#); [8:36](#); [8:56](#); [12:7](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [18:24](#); [19:4](#); [20:3](#); [21:2](#); [22:8](#); [22:13](#); [22:18](#))

govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), power, [province](#), Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:15](#); [20:24](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:28](#); [8:30](#); [8:38](#); [8:45](#); [8:49](#); [8:52](#); [9:3](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:21](#); [8:64](#); [10:25](#); [18:29](#); [18:36](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:22](#); [14:13](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: 1 Kings 2:25; 2:46; 5:3; 7:32; 7:33; 7:35; 7:36; 8:15; 8:22; 8:24; 8:38; 8:42; 8:53; 8:56; 10:13; 10:19; 10:29; 11:12; 11:26; 11:27; 11:31; 11:34; 11:35; 12:15; 13:4; 13:6; 13:33; 14:3; 14:18; 14:27; 15:18; 15:29; 16:7; 16:12; 16:34; 17:11; 17:12; 17:16; 18:9; 18:46; 20:6; 20:13; 20:28; 20:42; 22:3; 22:6; 22:12; 22:15; 22:34)

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:32](#); [2:33](#); [2:37](#); [2:44](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:22](#); [7:35](#); [7:41](#); [8:1](#); [8:8](#); [8:32](#); [10:19](#); [18:42](#); [20:31](#); [20:32](#); [21:9](#); [21:12](#))

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [2:23](#); [2:44](#); [3:6](#); [3:9](#); [3:12](#); [4:29](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [8:23](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [8:58](#); [8:61](#); [8:66](#); [9:4](#); [10:2](#); [10:24](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [14:8](#); [15:3](#); [15:14](#); [18:37](#); [21:7](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:22](#); [8:23](#); [8:27](#); [8:30](#); [8:32](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [8:36](#); [8:39](#); [8:43](#); [8:45](#); [8:49](#); [8:54](#); [14:11](#); [16:4](#); [21:24](#); [22:19](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#); [10:29](#); [15:5](#))

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 34:02
- Joshua 09:1-2
- Judges 03:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:16](#); [7:50](#); [7:51](#); [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [15:15](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:33](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [4:26](#); [10:25](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [13:13](#); [18:5](#); [18:45](#); [20:1](#); [20:20](#); [20:21](#); [20:25](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:5](#); [9:22](#); [10:26](#); [20:20](#))

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:53; 2:24; 2:27; 2:31; 2:36; 3:1; 3:2; 4:6; 4:7; 5:3; 5:5; 5:9; 5:11; 5:17; 5:18; 6:1; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:12; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:21; 6:22; 6:27; 6:29; 6:30; 6:37; 6:38; 7:1; 7:2; 7:8; 7:9; 7:12; 7:25; 7:31; 7:39; 7:40; 7:45; 7:48; 7:50; 7:51; 8:6; 8:10; 8:11; 8:13; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:27; 8:29; 8:38; 8:42; 8:43; 8:63; 8:64; 9:1; 9:3; 9:7; 9:10; 9:15; 9:24; 9:25; 10:5; 10:12; 10:17; 10:21; 11:18; 11:20; 11:28; 11:38; 12:16; 12:20; 12:21; 12:23; 12:24; 12:26; 12:31; 13:2; 13:7; 13:8; 13:15; 13:18; 13:32; 13:34; 14:4; 14:8; 14:10; 14:12; 14:14; 14:17; 14:26; 14:27; 14:28; 15:15; 15:18; 15:27; 15:29; 16:3; 16:7; 16:9; 16:11; 16:12; 16:18; 16:32; 17:15; 17:17; 17:23; 18:3; 18:18; 18:32; 20:6; 20:31; 20:43; 21:2; 21:4; 21:22; 21:29; 22:17; 22:27; 22:39](#))

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

([Go back to: 1 Kings 7 General Notes](#))

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:2](#); [6:7](#); [8:44](#); [8:48](#); [9:8](#); [10:4](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:51](#); [12:16](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [1 Kings 17:18](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, "blood" can represent "killing," so "innocent blood" refers to "killing people who did not deserve to die."

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- "To shed innocent blood" can be translated as "to kill people who did not deserve to die."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:22](#))

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:31](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Kings](#); [1 Kings 1:3](#); [1:20](#); [1:30](#); [1:34](#); [1:35](#); [1:48](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:11](#); [2:15](#); [2:32](#); [3:28](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#); [5:13](#); [6:1](#); [6:13](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:9](#); [8:14](#); [8:15](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [8:23](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:30](#); [8:33](#); [8:34](#); [8:36](#); [8:38](#); [8:41](#); [8:43](#); [8:52](#); [8:55](#); [8:56](#); [8:59](#); [8:62](#); [8:63](#); [8:65](#); [9:5](#); [9:7](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [10:9](#); [11:2](#); [11:9](#); [11:16](#); [11:25](#); [11:31](#); [11:32](#); [11:37](#); [11:38](#); [11:42](#); [12:1](#); [12:3](#); [12:16](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [12:24](#); [12:28](#); [12:33](#); [14:7](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [14:16](#); [14:18](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [14:24](#); [15:9](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:25](#); [15:26](#); [15:27](#); [15:30](#); [15:31](#); [15:32](#);

15:33; 15:34; 16:2; 16:5; 16:8; 16:13; 16:14; 16:16; 16:17; 16:19; 16:20; 16:21; 16:23; 16:26; 16:27; 16:29; 16:33; 17:1;
17:14; 18:17; 18:18; 18:19; 18:20; 18:31; 18:36; 19:10; 19:14; 19:16; 19:18; 20:2; 20:4; 20:7; 20:11; 20:13; 20:15; 20:20;
20:21; 20:22; 20:26; 20:27; 20:28; 20:29; 20:31; 20:32; 20:40; 20:41; 20:43; 21:7; 21:18; 21:21; 21:22; 21:26; 22:1; 22:2;
22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:17; 22:18; 22:26; 22:29; 22:30; 22:31; 22:32; 22:33; 22:34; 22:39; 22:41;
22:44; 22:51; 22:52; 22:53)

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Ham, [Jerusalem](#), Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:20](#))

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 04:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:01
- 2 Kings 01:17
- 2 Samuel 08:15-18
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G2498

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:3](#); [4:17](#); [15:24](#); [22:2](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:18](#); [22:30](#); [22:32](#); [22:42](#); [22:44](#); [22:45](#); [22:48](#); [22:49](#); [22:50](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:34](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, [David](#), [Jebusites](#), Jesus, [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:11](#); [2:36](#); [2:38](#); [2:41](#); [3:1](#); [3:15](#); [8:1](#); [9:15](#); [9:19](#); [10:2](#); [10:26](#); [10:27](#); [11:7](#); [11:13](#); [11:29](#); [11:32](#); [11:36](#); [11:42](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [12:27](#); [12:28](#); [14:21](#); [14:25](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:10](#); [22:42](#))

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Boaz](#), [descendant](#), Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

([Go back to: 1 Kings 12:16](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:8](#); [7:46](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:28](#))

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [1 Kings 16:34](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:40](#); [1:45](#); [5:7](#); [8:66](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, Judah, [Judea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:32](#); [13:1](#); [13:12](#); [13:14](#); [13:21](#); [14:21](#); [19:3](#))

Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:9](#); [1:35](#); [2:32](#); [4:20](#); [4:25](#); [12:17](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [12:23](#); [12:27](#); [14:22](#); [14:29](#); [15:1](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [15:17](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:33](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:29](#); [22:2](#); [22:10](#); [22:29](#); [22:41](#); [22:45](#); [22:51](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), judge, judgment day, just, law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:9](#); [3:11](#); [3:28](#); [6:12](#); [6:38](#); [8:32](#); [8:45](#); [8:49](#); [8:59](#); [10:9](#); [20:40](#))

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:9; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 1:16; 1:18; 1:19; 1:20; 1:21; 1:22; 1:23; 1:24; 1:25; 1:27; 1:28; 1:29; 1:31; 1:32; 1:33; 1:34; 1:36; 1:37; 1:38; 1:39; 1:43; 1:44; 1:45; 1:47; 1:48; 1:51; 1:53; 2:17; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:22; 2:23; 2:25; 2:26; 2:29; 2:30; 2:31; 2:35; 2:36; 2:38; 2:39; 2:42; 2:44; 2:45; 2:46; 3:1; 3:4; 3:13; 3:16; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 3:25; 3:26; 3:27; 3:28; 4:1; 4:5; 4:7; 4:19; 4:24; 4:27; 4:34; 5:1; 5:13; 5:17; 6:2; 7:13; 7:14; 7:40; 7:45; 7:46; 7:51; 8:1; 8:2; 8:5; 8:14; 8:62; 8:63; 8:64; 8:66; 9:1; 9:10; 9:11; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:26; 9:28; 10:3; 10:6; 10:9; 10:10; 10:12; 10:13; 10:15; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:21; 10:22; 10:23; 10:26; 10:27; 10:28; 10:29; 11:1; 11:14; 11:18; 11:23; 11:26; 11:27; 11:37; 11:40; 12:2; 12:6; 12:12; 12:13; 12:15; 12:16; 12:18; 12:23; 12:27; 12:28; 13:4; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:11; 14:2; 14:14;](#)

14:19; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:28; 14:29; 15:1; 15:7; 15:9; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:20; 15:22; 15:23; 15:25; 15:28;
15:31; 15:32; 15:33; 16:5; 16:8; 16:10; 16:14; 16:15; 16:16; 16:18; 16:20; 16:23; 16:27; 16:29; 16:31; 16:33; 19:15;
19:16; 20:1; 20:2; 20:4; 20:7; 20:9; 20:11; 20:12; 20:13; 20:16; 20:20; 20:21; 20:22; 20:23; 20:24; 20:28; 20:31; 20:32;
20:38; 20:39; 20:40; 20:41; 20:43; 21:1; 21:18; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:12; 22:13; 22:15; 22:16;
22:18; 22:26; 22:27; 22:29; 22:30; 22:31; 22:32; 22:33; 22:34; 22:35; 22:37; 22:39; 22:41; 22:44; 22:45; 22:47; 22:51)

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:12](#); [9:5](#); [10:20](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:4](#); [1:11](#); [1:18](#); [1:27](#); [2:5](#); [2:9](#); [2:15](#); [2:30](#); [2:32](#); [2:36](#); [2:37](#); [2:42](#); [2:44](#); [3:7](#); [4:33](#); [5:3](#); [5:6](#); [8:16](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [8:43](#); [8:44](#); [8:51](#); [8:60](#); [9:9](#); [9:27](#); [10:29](#); [11:29](#); [14:2](#); [15:17](#); [17:24](#); [18:12](#); [18:36](#); [18:37](#); [19:11](#); [20:7](#); [20:13](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [20:19](#); [20:22](#); [20:28](#); [20:39](#); [22:22](#))

law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
 - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [Notes](#))

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
- Deuteronomy 01:7-8
- Psalms 029:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:6](#); [5:9](#); [7:2](#); [10:17](#); [10:21](#))

Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:4](#); [12:31](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:12; 1:25; 1:29; 1:31; 1:34; 1:39; 2:4; 2:24; 3:11; 3:22; 3:23; 3:25; 3:26; 3:27; 8:40; 8:48; 11:37; 12:6; 17:1; 17:12; 17:21; 17:22; 17:23; 18:5; 18:10; 18:15; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:10; 19:14; 20:18; 20:31; 20:32; 20:39; 20:42; 21:15; 22:14](#))

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 017:12
- Revelation 05:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:24](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), Jesus, ruler, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [1:24](#); [1:27](#); [1:31](#); [1:33](#); [1:36](#); [1:37](#); [1:43](#); [1:47](#); [2:26](#); [2:38](#); [3:10](#); [3:15](#); [3:17](#); [3:26](#); [8:53](#); [11:23](#); [12:27](#); [16:24](#); [18:7](#); [18:10](#); [20:4](#); [22:6](#); [22:17](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
 - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
 - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
 - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
 - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
 - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:3](#); [5:1](#); [11:1](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:50](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [1 Kings 19:2](#); [19:5](#); [19:7](#); [20:2](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:10](#); [8:42](#); [11:28](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:3](#))

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:22](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [1 Kings 11:1](#); [11:7](#); [11:33](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [8:9](#); [8:53](#); [8:56](#))

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:47](#); [4:8](#); [4:31](#); [7:21](#); [8:16](#); [8:29](#); [8:33](#); [8:35](#); [8:41](#); [8:42](#); [8:43](#); [9:3](#); [11:36](#); [13:2](#); [14:21](#); [16:24](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:31](#); [18:32](#); [21:8](#); [22:16](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, [Canaan](#), Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:31](#); [11:2](#); [14:24](#); [18:10](#))

new moon

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: [1 Kings 6:1](#); [6:38](#); [8:2](#))

noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:8](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:29](#); [1:30](#); [1:51](#); [2:8](#); [2:23](#); [2:42](#); [2:43](#); [18:10](#); [22:16](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:11](#); [6:23](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [17:12](#))

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:28](#); [4:28](#); [7:7](#); [18:28](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:13](#); [2:33](#); [5:12](#))

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:39; 1:40; 3:2; 3:8; 3:9; 4:34; 5:7; 5:16; 6:13; 8:16; 8:30; 8:33; 8:34; 8:36; 8:38; 8:41; 8:43; 8:44; 8:50; 8:51; 8:52; 8:53; 8:56; 8:59; 8:60; 8:66; 9:7; 9:20; 9:23; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:9; 12:10; 12:12; 12:13; 12:15; 12:16; 12:23; 12:27; 12:30; 12:31; 13:33; 14:2; 14:7; 16:2; 16:15; 16:16; 16:21; 16:22; 18:21; 18:22; 18:24; 18:30; 18:37; 18:39; 19:21; 20:8; 20:10; 20:15; 20:42; 21:9; 21:12; 21:13; 22:4; 22:28; 22:43)

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan, false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:07
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

([Go back to: 1 Kings 9:20](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

([Go back to: 1 Kings 4:21](#))

pomegranate

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 08:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:42](#))

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:16](#); [21:18](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:2](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [8:28](#); [8:33](#); [8:35](#); [8:38](#); [8:42](#); [8:44](#); [8:45](#); [8:48](#); [8:49](#); [9:3](#); [13:6](#); [19:4](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:37](#); [6:21](#); [15:12](#); [19:19](#); [22:36](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:38](#); [1:39](#); [1:42](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [2:22](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [2:35](#); [4:2](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [13:2](#); [13:33](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:19](#); [2:5](#); [2:32](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [11:15](#); [11:21](#); [11:24](#); [14:27](#); [15:20](#); [16:9](#); [16:16](#); [20:14](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:19](#); [22:26](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:33](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:22](#); [1:23](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:38](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [11:29](#); [Notes](#); [13:18](#); [13:20](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [13:29](#); [Notes](#); [14:2](#); [14:18](#); [Notes](#); [16:7](#); [16:12](#); [Notes](#); [18:4](#); [18:13](#); [18:19](#); [18:20](#); [18:22](#); [18:29](#); [18:36](#); [18:40](#); [Notes](#); [19:1](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [20:13](#); [20:22](#); [20:35](#); [20:38](#); [Notes](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:22](#); [22:23](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), fruit, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:42](#); [1:52](#); [11:28](#); [20:1](#); [20:25](#); [22:12](#); [22:15](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:16](#); [1:23](#); [1:31](#); [1:47](#); [1:53](#); [2:19](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [11:33](#); [16:31](#); [22:53](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [1 Kings 12:8](#); [12:10](#))

province, provincial

Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: Asia, [Egypt](#), Esther, Galatia, Galilee, [Judea](#), Macedonia, Medes, Rome, [Samaria](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 03:02
- Daniel 06:02
- Ecclesiastes 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:14](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:19](#))

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

(Go back to: [1 Kings 15:17](#); [15:21](#); [15:22](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:21](#); [13:26](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:29](#); [16:11](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:15](#); [6:1](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:37](#); [11:43](#); [12:1](#); [12:17](#); [12:20](#); [14:20](#); [14:31](#); [15:8](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [16:6](#); [16:10](#); [16:16](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#); [22:40](#); [22:50](#); [22:51](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:4](#); [8:56](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:20](#); [8:35](#); [9:6](#); [12:6](#); [12:12](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [12:24](#); [12:26](#); [13:4](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [13:20](#); [13:23](#); [13:26](#); [13:33](#); [17:21](#); [18:43](#); [19:15](#); [19:20](#); [20:34](#); [22:17](#); [22:28](#))

return

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:30](#); [2:32](#); [2:33](#); [2:41](#); [2:44](#); [8:33](#); [8:34](#); [8:47](#); [8:48](#); [12:5](#); [12:9](#); [12:16](#); [12:24](#); [12:27](#); [13:6](#); [13:19](#); [13:22](#); [13:29](#); [13:33](#); [14:28](#); [17:22](#); [19:6](#); [19:7](#); [19:21](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [22:26](#); [22:33](#))

reward, prize, deserve,

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, just, law, [law](#), obey, pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:32](#); [8:32](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, [camel](#), goat, humble, mourn, [repent](#), sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: [1 Kings 20:31](#); [20:32](#); [21:27](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:62](#); [8:63](#); [12:27](#); [22:43](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13:32](#); [16:24](#); [20:1](#); [20:10](#); [20:43](#); [21:1](#); [22:10](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:40](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: [1 Kings 4:3](#))

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

To term "seal" means to close an object with something (usually called a "seal") that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 02:03
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 06:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 05:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

(Go back to: [1 Kings 21:8](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:33](#); [11:39](#); [18:32](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [2:40](#); [10:24](#); [11:22](#); [11:40](#); [14:5](#); [18:10](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [20:7](#); [22:5](#); [22:8](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, [household](#), [lord](#), obey, [righteous](#), [covenant](#), law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:2; 1:3; 1:9; 1:15; 1:19; 1:26; 1:27; 1:33; 1:47; 1:51; 2:38; 2:39; 2:40; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:15; 5:1; 5:6; 5:9; 8:23; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 8:32; 8:36; 8:52; 8:53; 8:56; 8:59; 8:66; 9:21; 9:22; 9:27; 10:5; 10:8; 10:13; 11:11; 11:13; 11:17; 11:26; 11:28; 11:32; 11:34; 11:36; 11:38; 12:7; 14:3; 14:18; 15:18; 15:29; 16:9; 18:9; 18:12; 18:36; 18:43; 19:3; 20:6; 20:9; 20:12; 20:15; 20:17; 20:19; 20:23; 20:31; 20:32; 20:39; 20:40; 22:3; 22:49)

shield

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 018:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:17](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [1 Kings 7:51](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [10:27](#); [10:29](#); [15:15](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [16:24](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:7](#); [20:39](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:15](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:31](#); [8:33](#); [8:35](#); [8:46](#); [8:47](#); [8:50](#); [Notes](#); [14:16](#); [14:22](#); [15:3](#); [15:26](#); [15:30](#); [15:34](#); [16:2](#); [16:13](#); [16:19](#); [16:26](#); [16:31](#); [18:9](#); [Notes](#); [21:22](#); [22:52](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [1 Kings 18:40](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:17; 1:21; 1:30; 1:33; 1:34; 1:37; 1:38; 1:39; 1:43; 1:46; 1:47; 1:50; 1:51; 1:52; 1:53; 2:1; 2:13; 2:19; 2:22; 2:23; 2:25; 2:27; 2:29; 2:45; 2:46; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:10; 3:15; 4:1; 4:11; 4:15; 4:21; 4:22; 4:25; 4:27; 4:30; 4:34; 5:1; 5:2; 5:7; 5:8; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:18; 6:1; 6:2; 6:11; 6:14; 6:21; 7:1; 7:8; 7:13; 7:14; 7:40; 7:45; 7:47; 7:48; 7:51; 8:1; 8:2; 8:5; 8:12; 8:22; 8:54; 8:63; 8:65; 9:1; 9:2; 9:10; 9:11; 9:12; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; 9:19; 9:21; 9:22; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 9:28; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:10; 10:13; 10:16; 10:21; 10:23; 10:24; 10:26; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:25; 11:27; 11:28; 11:31; 11:40; 11:41; 11:42; 11:43; 12:2; 12:6; 12:21; 12:23; 14:21; 14:26](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:5; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:17; 1:19; 1:21; 1:25; 1:26; 1:30; 1:32; 1:33; 1:36; 1:38; 1:42; 1:44; 1:52; 2:1; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:13; 2:22; 2:25; 2:29; 2:32; 2:34; 2:35; 2:39; 2:46; 3:6; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:26; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:12; 4:13; 4:14; 4:16; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:30; 4:31; 5:5; 5:7; 6:1; 6:13; 7:14; 8:1; 8:9; 8:19; 8:25; 8:39; 8:63; 9:6; 9:20; 9:21; 9:22; 11:2; 11:7; 11:12; 11:13; 11:20; 11:23; 11:26; 11:33; 11:35; 11:36; 11:43; 12:2; 12:15; 12:16; 12:17; 12:21; 12:23; 12:24; 12:31; 12:33; 13:2; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:27; 13:31; 14:1; 14:5; 14:20; 14:21; 14:24; 14:31; 15:1; 15:4; 15:8; 15:18; 15:24; 15:25; 15:27; 15:33; 16:1; 16:3; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:13; 16:21; 16:22; 16:26; 16:28; 16:29; 16:30; 16:31; 16:34; 17:12; 17:13; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:23; 18:20; 18:31; 19:10; 19:14; 19:16; 19:19; 20:3; 20:5; 20:7; 20:15; 20:27; 20:29; 20:35; 21:10; 21:13; 21:22; 21:26; 21:29; 22:8; 22:9; 22:11; 22:24; 22:26; 22:40; 22:41; 22:42; 22:49; 22:50; 22:51; 22:52)

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:5](#); [18:12](#); [18:45](#); [19:11](#); [21:5](#); [22:22](#); [22:23](#); [22:24](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [3:14](#); [8:58](#); [8:59](#); [9:4](#); [11:33](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), dedicate, [famine](#), [gold](#), grain, [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Psalms 033:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:26](#); [15:18](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [1 Kings 17:17](#); [18:2](#); [19:8](#); [20:22](#); [20:23](#); [20:25](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:51](#); [2:8](#); [2:32](#); [3:24](#); [18:28](#); [19:1](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#))

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, [ancestor](#), Amnon, [David](#), [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:04
- 2 Samuel 13:02
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(Go back to: [1 Kings 9:18](#))

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:34](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [Notes](#); [5:14](#); [Notes](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:17](#); [6:33](#); [Notes](#); [7:21](#); [7:50](#); [Notes](#); [8:31](#); [8:33](#); [Notes](#); [12:19](#); [12:27](#); [13:19](#); [14:13](#); [Notes](#); [21:1](#); [Notes](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:30](#); [2:42](#); [18:21](#); [18:24](#); [18:26](#); [18:29](#); [18:37](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [1:24](#); [1:27](#); [1:30](#); [1:35](#); [1:37](#); [1:46](#); [1:47](#); [1:48](#); [2:4](#); [2:12](#); [2:19](#); [2:24](#); [3:6](#); [5:5](#); [8:20](#); [8:25](#); [9:5](#); [10:9](#); [10:18](#); [16:11](#); [22:10](#); [22:19](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [1 Kings 10:8](#); [12:8](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:16](#); [11:13](#); [11:31](#); [11:32](#); [11:35](#); [11:36](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [14:21](#); [18:31](#))

tribute, contribution, fined

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), ruler, tax)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G5411

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:13](#))

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:29](#); [18:17](#); [18:18](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:34](#); [1:39](#); [1:41](#))

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:1](#); [9:11](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [1 Kings 3:11](#); [4:29](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(**Go back to:** [1 Kings 4:25](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(**Go back to:** [1 Kings 21:1](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:7](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:2](#))

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:40](#); [17:22](#); [18:27](#); [18:28](#); [20:36](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [1 Kings 1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:53](#); [2:2](#); [2:8](#); [2:26](#); [2:29](#); [2:41](#); [3:6](#); [3:14](#); [6:12](#); [8:25](#); [8:36](#); [Notes](#); [9:4](#); [11:10](#); [11:33](#); [12:5](#); [13:9](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [13:17](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [14:12](#); [15:19](#); [16:31](#); [17:3](#); [17:9](#); [18:1](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:8](#); [18:11](#); [18:12](#); [18:14](#); [18:21](#); [19:4](#); [19:15](#); [19:20](#); [20:22](#); [20:36](#); [22:13](#); [22:48](#); [22:49](#))

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:4](#); [2:43](#); [8:23](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [9:4](#); [9:6](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:34](#); [13:21](#); [14:8](#); [20:39](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: [1 Kings 5:11](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#))

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term "wise men" simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term "wise men" often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The "wise men" who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term "wise men" simply means people who are wise, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:9](#); [3:12](#); [5:7](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [1 Kings 2:3](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 1 Kings 1:17; 1:29; 1:30; 1:36; 1:37; 1:48; 2:3; 2:4; 2:8; 2:23; 2:24; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:32; 2:33; 2:42; 2:43; 2:44; 2:45; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:7; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:7; 5:12; 6:1; 6:2; 6:11; 6:19; 6:37; 7:12; 7:40; 7:45; 7:48; 7:51; 8:1; 8:4; 8:6; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:15; 8:17; 8:18; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:23; 8:25; 8:28; 8:44; 8:54; 8:56; 8:57; 8:59; 8:60; 8:61; 8:62; 8:63; 8:64; 8:65; 8:66; 9:1; 9:2; 9:3; 9:8; 9:9; 9:10; 9:15; 9:25; 10:1; 10:5; 10:9; 10:12; 11:2; 11:4; 11:6; 11:9; 11:10; 11:11; 11:14; 11:31; 12:15; 12:24; 12:27; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:5; 13:6; 13:9; 13:17; 13:18; 13:20; 13:21; 13:26; 13:32; 14:5; 14:7; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:18; 14:21; 14:22; 14:24; 14:26; 14:28; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:11; 15:14; 15:15; 15:18; 15:26; 15:29; 15:30; 15:34; 16:1; 16:7; 16:12; 16:13; 16:19; 16:25; 16:26; 16:30; 16:33; 16:34; 17:1; 17:2; 17:5; 17:8; 17:12; 17:14; 17:16; 17:20; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 18:1; 18:3; 18:4; 18:10; 18:12; 18:13; 18:15; 18:18; 18:21; 18:22; 18:24; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 18:36; 18:37; 18:38; 18:39; 18:46; 19:4; 19:7; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 20:13; 20:14; 20:28; 20:35; 20:36; 20:42; 21:17; 21:19; 21:20; 21:23; 21:25; 21:26; 21:28; 22:5; 22:7; 22:8; 22:11; 22:12; 22:14; 22:15; 22:16; 22:17; 22:19; 22:20; 22:21; 22:23; 22:24; 22:28; 22:38; 22:43; 22:52; 22:53)

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(Go back to: [1 Kings 14:22](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, [Jebusites](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:05
- Amos 01:02
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [1 Kings 8:1](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community